BELLINGHAM TECHNICAL COLLEGE CHEM 121

Spencer Berger
Bellingham Technical College

Bellingham Technical College

Bellingham Technical College CHEM 121

Spencer Berger

This text is disseminated via the Open Education Resource (OER) LibreTexts Project (https://LibreTexts.org) and like the hundreds of other texts available within this powerful platform, it is freely available for reading, printing and "consuming." Most, but not all, pages in the library have licenses that may allow individuals to make changes, save, and print this book. Carefully consult the applicable license(s) before pursuing such effects.

Instructors can adopt existing LibreTexts texts or Remix them to quickly build course-specific resources to meet the needs of their students. Unlike traditional textbooks, LibreTexts’ web based origins allow powerful integration of advanced features and new technologies to support learning.

The LibreTexts mission is to unite students, faculty and scholars in a cooperative effort to develop an easy-to-use online platform for the construction, customization, and dissemination of OER content to reduce the burdens of unreasonable textbook costs to our students and society. The LibreTexts project is a multi-institutional collaborative venture to develop the next generation of open-access texts to improve postsecondary education at all levels of higher learning by developing an Open Access Resource environment. The project currently consists of 14 independently operating and interconnected libraries that are constantly being optimized by students, faculty, and outside experts to supplant conventional paper-based books. These free textbook alternatives are organized within a central environment that is both vertically (from advance to basic level) and horizontally (across different fields) integrated.

The LibreTexts libraries are Powered by NICE CXOne and are supported by the Department of Education Open Textbook Pilot Project, the UC Davis Office of the Provost, the UC Davis Library, the California State University Affordable Learning Solutions Program, and Merlot. This material is based upon work supported by the National Science Foundation under Grant No. 1246120, 1525057, and 1413739.

Any opinions, findings, and conclusions or recommendations expressed in this material are those of the author(s) and do not necessarily reflect the views of the National Science Foundation nor the US Department of Education.

Have questions or comments? For information about adoptions or adaptions contact info@LibreTexts.org. More information on our activities can be found via Facebook (https://facebook.com/Libretexts), Twitter (https://twitter.com/libretexts), or our blog (http://Blog.Libretexts.org).

This text was compiled on 03/12/2025

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1: Module 1 - Matter and Measurement

2: Module 2 - Atoms and Bonding

3: Module 3 - Stoichiometry

Licensing

A detailed breakdown of this resource's licensing can be found in ***Back Matter/Detailed Licensing****.*

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

1: Module 1 - Matter and Measurement

1.1: Chemistry- The Study of Matter

Chemistry is the branch of science dealing with the structure, composition, properties, and the reactive characteristics of matter. **Matter** is defined as any substance that has mass and volume. Note that weight and mass are not the same. Weight is the result of the pull of gravity on an object. On the Moon, an object will weigh less than the same object on Earth because the pull of gravity is less on the Moon. The mass of an object, however, is an inherent property of that object and does not change, regardless of location, gravitational pull, or anything else. It is a property that is solely dependent on the quantity of matter within the object.

In this chapter, we will discuss some of the properties of matter and how chemists measure those properties.

Chemistry is also the study of the transformation of matter. In chemistry, we will look at transformations of matter on three levels: the macroscopic (observable) level, the sub-microscopic level (atoms and molecules) and the symbolic level (chemical symbols).

For example, consider ice melting. If you were to look at a block of ice melting, you would observe that it initially looks like a solid with a definite shape, and after it is melted, it looks like a puddle of water. On the sub-microscopic level, the molecules in ice are arranged differently than the molecules in water. And, on the symbolic level, this process can be represented by the chemical equation H_2O (s) → H_2O (l).

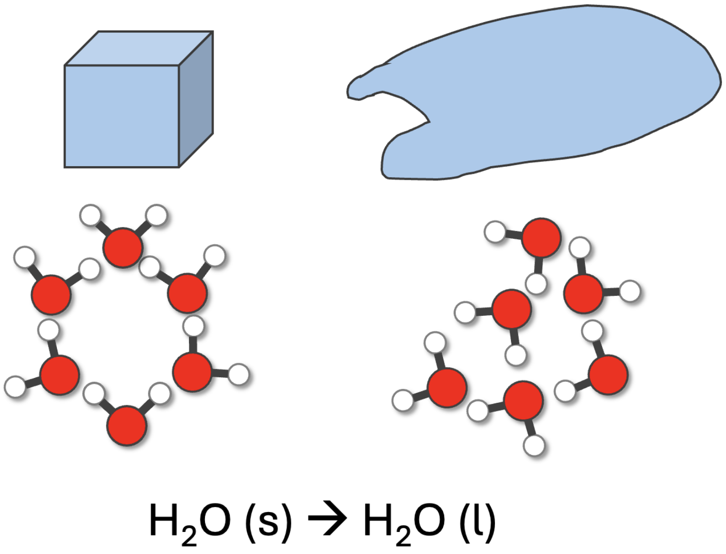


Figure 1.1.1: Ice melting represented on the macroscopic, sub-microscopic, and symbolic levels. (Spencer Berger)

Contributions & Attributions

- Paul R. Young, Professor of Chemistry, University of Illinois at Chicago, Wiki: AskTheNerd; PRY@askthenerd.com - pyoung@uic.edu; ChemistryOnline.com
- edited by Spencer Berger

- **1.2: Chemicals Compose Ordinary Things** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

1.2: Classifying Matter According to Its State—Solid, Liquid, and Gas

Learning Objectives

- To describe the solid, liquid and gas phases.

Matter typically exists in one of three states: **solid**, **liquid**, or **gas**. Water can take many forms. At low temperatures (below 0^oC), it is a solid. When at "normal" temperatures (between 0^oC and 100^oC), it is a liquid. While at temperatures above 100^oC, water is a gas (steam). The state that water is in depends upon the temperature. Each state has its own unique set of physical properties.

Figure $1.2.1$: Matter is usually classified into three classical states, with plasma sometimes added as a fourth state. From left to right: quartz (solid), water (liquid), nitrogen dioxide (gas).

Some substances exist as gases at room temperature (oxygen and carbon dioxide), while others, like water and mercury metal, exist as liquids. Most metals exist as solids at room temperature. All substances can exist in any of these three states. Figure $1.2.2$ shows the differences among solids, liquids, and gases at the molecular level. A solid has definite volume and shape, a liquid has a definite volume but no definite shape, and a gas has neither a definite volume nor shape.

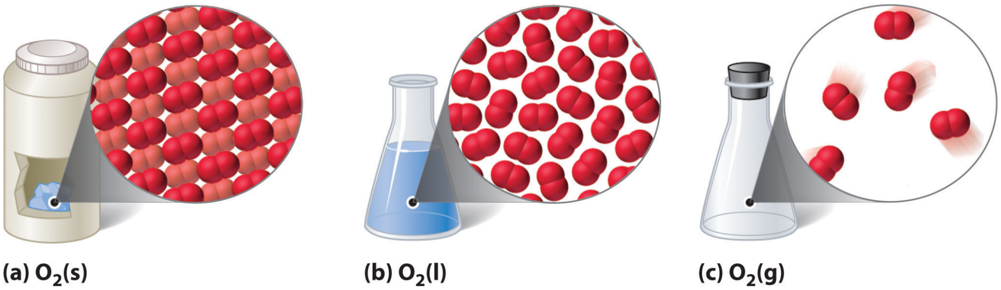
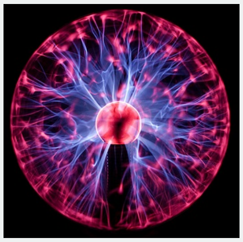


Figure $1.2.2$: A Representation of the Solid, Liquid, and Gas States. (a) Solid O_2 has a fixed volume and shape, and the molecules are packed tightly together. (b) Liquid O_2 conforms to the shape of its container but has a fixed volume; it contains relatively densely packed molecules. (c) Gaseous O_2 fills its container completely—regardless of the container's size or shape—and consists of widely separated molecules.

Plasma: A Fourth State of Matter

Technically speaking, a fourth state of matter called plasma exists, but it does not naturally occur on earth, so we will omit it from our study here.



A plasma globe operating in a darkened room. (CC BY-SA 3.0; Chocolateoak).

Solids

In the solid state, the individual particles of a substance are in fixed positions with respect to each other because there is not enough thermal energy to overcome the intermolecular interactions between the particles. As a result, solids have a definite shape and volume. Most solids are hard, but some (like waxes) are relatively soft. Many solids composed of ions can also be quite brittle.

Solids are defined by the following characteristics:

- Definite shape (rigid)
- Definite volume
- Particles vibrate around fixed axes

If we were to cool liquid mercury to its freezing point of $-39^{\circ}\mathrm{C}$, and under the right pressure conditions, we would notice all of the liquid particles would go into the solid state. Mercury can be solidified when its temperature is brought to its freezing point. However, when returned to room temperature conditions, mercury does not exist in solid state for long, and returns back to its more common liquid form.

Solids usually have their constituent particles arranged in a regular, three-dimensional array of alternating positive and negative ions called a **crystal**. The effect of this regular arrangement of particles is sometimes visible macroscopically, as shown in Figure $1.2.3$. Some solids, especially those composed of large molecules, cannot easily organize their particles in such regular crystals and exist as amorphous (literally, "without form") solids. Glass is one example of an amorphous solid.

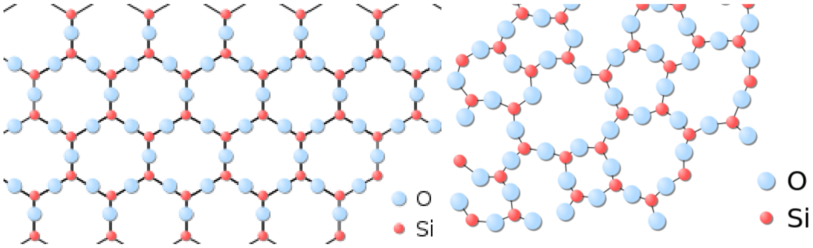


Figure $1.2.3$: (left) The periodic crystalline lattice structure of quartz SiO_2 in two-dimensions. (right) The random network structure of glassy SiO_2 in two-dimensions. Note that, as in the crystal, each Silicon atom is bonded to 4 oxygen atoms, where the fourth oxygen atom is obscured from view in this plane. Images used with permission (public domain).

Liquids

If the particles of a substance have enough energy to partially overcome intermolecular interactions, then the particles can move about each other while remaining in contact. This describes the liquid state. In a liquid, the particles are still in close contact, so liquids have a definite volume. However, because the particles can move about each other rather freely, a liquid has no definite shape and takes a shape dictated by its container.

Liquids have the following characteristics:

- No definite shape (takes the shape of its container).
- Has definite volume.
- Particles are free to move over each other, but are still attracted to each other.

A familiar liquid is mercury metal. Mercury is an anomaly. It is the only metal we know of that is liquid at room temperature. Mercury also has an ability to stick to itself (surface tension)—a property that all liquids exhibit. Mercury has a relatively high surface tension, which makes it very unique. Here you see mercury in its common liquid form.

***Video* $1.2.1$** *: Mercury boiling to become a gas.*

If we heat liquid mercury to its boiling point of $357^{\circ}\mathrm{C}$ under the right pressure conditions, we would notice all particles in the liquid state go into the gas state.

Gases

If the particles of a substance have enough energy to completely overcome intermolecular interactions, then the particles can separate from each other and move about randomly in space. This describes the gas state, which we will consider in more detail elsewhere. Like liquids, gases have no definite shape, but unlike solids and liquids, gases have no definite volume either. The change from solid to liquid usually does not significantly change the volume of a substance. However, the change from a liquid to a gas significantly increases the volume of a substance, by a factor of 1,000 or more. Gases have the following characteristics:

- No definite shape (takes the shape of its container)
- No definite volume
- Particles move in random motion with little or no attraction to each other
- Highly compressible

Table $1.2.1$: Characteristics of the Three States of Matter

Characteristics	Solids	Liquids	Gases
shape	definite	indefinite	indefinite
volume	definite	definite	indefinite
relative intermolecular interaction strength	strong	moderate	weak
relative particle positions	in contact and fixed in place	in contact but not fixed	not in contact, random positions

✓ Example $1.2.1$

What state or states of matter does each statement, describe?

a. This state has a definite volume, but no definite shape.
b. This state has no definite volume.
c. This state allows the individual particles to move about while remaining in contact.

Solution

a. This statement describes the liquid state.
b. This statement describes the gas state.
c. This statement describes the liquid state.

? Exercise 1.2.1

What state or states of matter does each statement describe?

a. This state has individual particles in a fixed position with regard to each other.
b. This state has individual particles far apart from each other in space.
c. This state has a definite shape.

Answer a:

solid

Answer b:

gas

Answer c:

solid

Summary

- Three states of matter exist—solid, liquid, and gas.
- Solids have a definite shape and volume.
- Liquids have a definite volume, but take the shape of the container.
- Gases have no definite shape or volume.

1.3: Classifying Matter According to Its Composition

Learning Objectives

- Explain the difference between a pure substance and a mixture.
- Explain the difference between an element and a compound.
- Explain the difference between a homogeneous mixture and a heterogeneous mixture.

One useful way of organizing our understanding of matter is to think of a hierarchy that extends down from the most general and complex to the simplest and most fundamental (Figure $1.3.1$). Matter can be classified into two broad categories: pure substances and mixtures. A **pure substance** is a form of matter that has a constant composition (meaning that it is the same everywhere) and properties that are constant throughout the sample (meaning that there is only one set of properties such as melting point, color, boiling point, etc. throughout the matter). A material composed of two or more substances is a **mixture**. Elements and compounds are both examples of pure substances. A substance that cannot be broken down into chemically simpler components is an **element**. Aluminum, which is used in soda cans, is an element. A substance that can be broken down into chemically simpler components (because it has more than one element) is a **compound**. For example, water is a compound composed of the elements hydrogen and oxygen. Today, there are about 118 elements in the known universe. In contrast, scientists have identified tens of millions of different compounds to date.

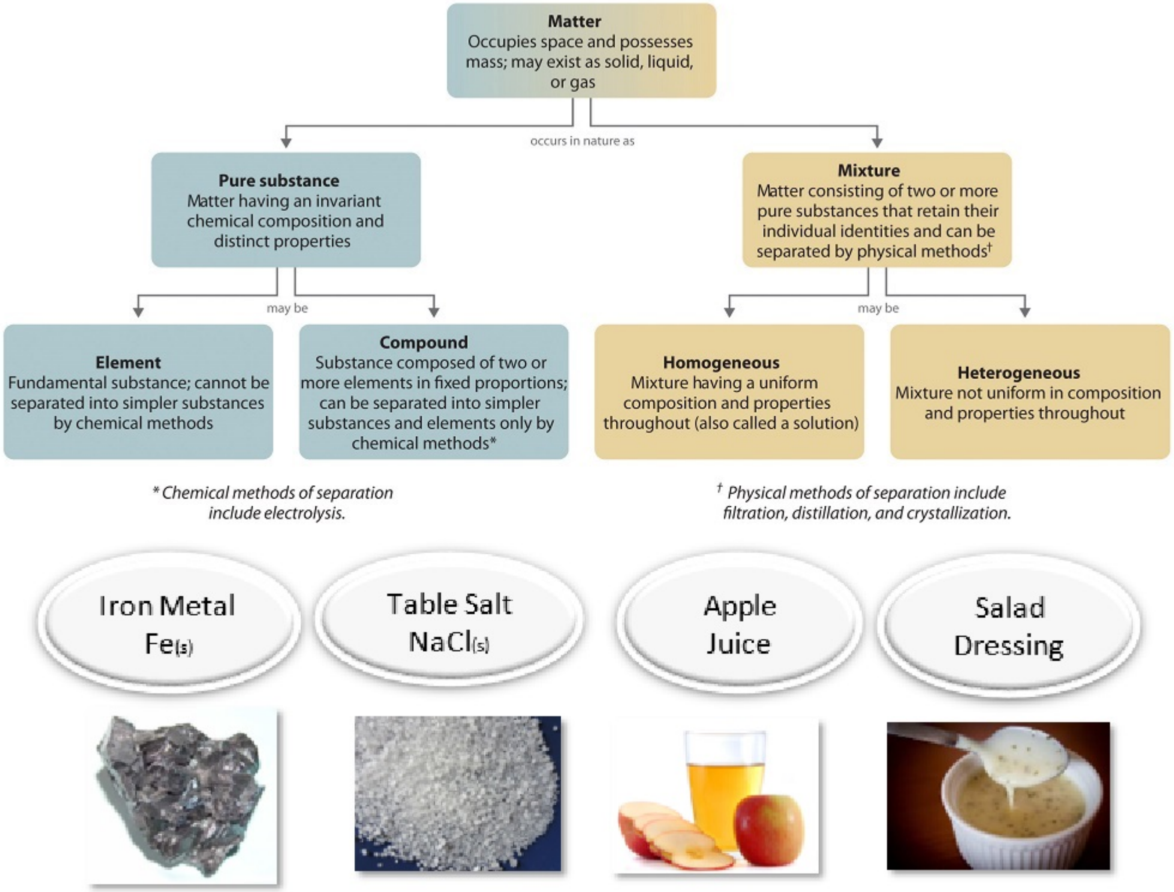


Figure $1.3.1$: Relationships between the Types of Matter and the Methods Used to Separate Mixtures

Ordinary table salt is called sodium chloride. It is considered a **substance** because it has a uniform and definite composition. All samples of sodium chloride are chemically identical. Water is also a pure substance. Salt easily dissolves in water, but salt water cannot be classified as a substance because its composition can vary. You may dissolve a small amount of salt or a large amount into a given amount of water. A mixture is a physical blend of two or more components, each of which retains its own identity and properties in the **mixture**. Only the form of the salt is changed when it is dissolved into water. It retains its composition and properties.

A **homogeneous** mixture is a mixture in which the composition is uniform throughout the mixture. The salt water described above is homogeneous because the dissolved salt is evenly distributed throughout the entire salt water sample. Often it is easy to confuse a homogeneous mixture with a pure substance because they are both uniform. The difference is that the composition of the substance is always the same. The amount of salt in the salt water can vary from one sample to another. All solutions are considered homogeneous because the dissolved material is present in the same amount throughout the solution.

A **heterogeneous mixture** is a mixture in which the composition is not uniform throughout the mixture. Vegetable soup is a heterogeneous mixture. Any given spoonful of soup will contain varying amounts of the different vegetables and other components of the soup.

Phase

A phase is any part of a sample that has a uniform composition and properties. By definition, a pure substance or a homogeneous mixture consists of a single phase. A heterogeneous mixture consists of two or more phases. When oil and water are combined, they do not mix evenly, but instead form two separate layers. Each of the layers is called a phase.

✓ Example 1.3.1

Identify each substance as a compound, an element, a heterogeneous mixture, or a homogeneous mixture (solution).

a. filtered tea
b. freshly squeezed orange juice
c. a compact disc
d. aluminum oxide, a white powder that contains a 2:3 ratio of aluminum and oxygen atoms
e. selenium

Given: a chemical substance

Asked for: its classification

Strategy:

A. Decide whether a substance is chemically pure. If it is pure, the substance is either an element or a compound. If a substance can be separated into its elements, it is a compound.
B. If a substance is not chemically pure, it is either a heterogeneous mixture or a homogeneous mixture. If its composition is uniform throughout, it is a homogeneous mixture.

Solution

a. **A)** Tea is a solution of compounds in water, so it is not chemically pure. It is usually separated from tea leaves by filtration.
B) Because the composition of the solution is uniform throughout, it is ***a homogeneous mixture***.
b. **A)** Orange juice contains particles of solid (pulp) as well as liquid; it is not chemically pure.
B) Because its composition is not uniform throughout, orange juice is ***a heterogeneous mixture***.
c. **A)** A compact disc is a solid material that contains more than one element, with regions of different compositions visible along its edge. Hence, a compact disc is not chemically pure.
B) The regions of different composition indicate that a compact disc is ***a heterogeneous mixture.***
d. **A)** Aluminum oxide is a single, chemically ***pure compound***.
e. **A)** Selenium is one of the known ***elements***.

? Exercise 1.3.1

Identify each substance as a compound, an element, a heterogeneous mixture, or a homogeneous mixture (solution).

a. white wine
b. mercury
c. ranch-style salad dressing
d. table sugar (sucrose)

Answer a:

homogeneous mixture (solution)

Answer b:

element

Answer c:

heterogeneous mixture

Answer d:

compound

✓ Example 1.3.2

How would a chemist categorize each example of matter?

a. saltwater
b. soil
c. water
d. oxygen

Solution

a. Saltwater acts as if it were a single substance even though it contains two substances—salt and water. Saltwater is a homogeneous mixture, or a solution.
b. Soil is composed of small pieces of a variety of materials, so it is a heterogeneous mixture.
c. Water is a substance. More specifically, because water is composed of hydrogen and oxygen, it is a compound.
d. Oxygen, a substance, is an element.

? Exercise 1.3.2

How would a chemist categorize each example of matter?

a. coffee
b. hydrogen
c. an egg

Answer a:

a homogeneous mixture (solution), assuming it is filtered coffee

Answer b:

element

Answer c:

heterogeneous mixture

Summary

Matter can be classified into two broad categories: pure substances and mixtures. A pure substance is a form of matter that has a constant composition and properties that are constant throughout the sample. Mixtures are physical combinations of two or more elements and/or compounds. Mixtures can be classified as homogeneous or heterogeneous. Elements and compounds are both examples of pure substances. Compounds are substances that are made up of more than one type of atom. Elements are the simplest substances made up of only one type of atom.

Vocabulary

- Element: a substance that is made up of only one type of atom.
- Compound:a substance that is made up of more than one type of atom bonded together.
- Mixture: a combination of two or more elements or compounds which have not reacted to bond together; each part in the mixture retains its own properties.

Contributions & Attributions

-
- Stephen Lower, Professor Emeritus (Simon Fraser U.) Chem1 Virtual Textbook

---

1.4: Differences in Matter- Physical and Chemical Properties

Learning Objectives

To separate physical from chemical properties.

All matter has physical and chemical properties. Physical properties are characteristics that scientists can measure without changing the composition of the sample under study, such as mass, color, and volume (the amount of space occupied by a sample). Chemical properties describe the characteristic ability of a substance to react to form new substances; they include its flammability and susceptibility to corrosion. All samples of a pure substance have the same chemical and physical properties. For example, pure copper is always a reddish-brown solid (a physical property) and always dissolves in dilute nitric acid to produce a blue solution and a brown gas (a chemical property).

Physical Property

A *physical property* is a characteristic of a substance that can be observed or measured without changing the identity of the substance. Silver is a shiny metal that conducts electricity very well. It can be molded into thin sheets, a property called malleability. Salt is dull and brittle and conducts electricity when it has been dissolved into water, which it does quite easily. Physical properties of matter include color, hardness, malleability, solubility, electrical conductivity, density, melting point, and boiling point.

For the elements, color does not vary much from one element to the next. The vast majority of elements are colorless, silver, or gray. Some elements do have distinctive colors: sulfur and chlorine are yellow, copper is (of course) copper-colored, and elemental bromine is red. However, density can be a very useful parameter for identifying an element. Of the materials that exist as solids at room temperature, iodine has a very low density compared to zinc, chromium, and tin. Gold has a very high density, as does platinum. Pure water, for example, has a density of 0.998 g/cm^3 at 25°C. The average densities of some common substances are in Table 1.4.1. Notice that corn oil has a lower mass to volume ratio than water. This means that when added to water, corn oil will “float.”

Table 1.4.1: Densities of Common Substances

Substance	Density at 25°C (g/cm3)
blood	1.035
body fat	0.918
whole milk	1.030
corn oil	0.922
mayonnaise	0.910
honey	1.420

Hardness helps determine how an element (especially a metal) might be used. Many elements are fairly soft (silver and gold, for example) while others (such as titanium, tungsten, and chromium) are much harder. Carbon is an interesting example of hardness. In graphite, (the "lead" found in pencils) the carbon is very soft, while the carbon in a diamond is roughly seven times as hard.

Figure 1.4.1: Pencil (left) and Diamond ring (right). Both are a form of carbon, but exhibit very different physical properties.

Melting and boiling points are somewhat unique identifiers, especially of compounds. In addition to giving some idea as to the identity of the compound, important information can be obtained about the purity of the material.

Chemical Properties

Chemical properties of matter describe its potential to undergo some chemical change or reaction by virtue of its composition. The elements, electrons, and bonds that are present give the matter potential for chemical change. It is quite difficult to define a chemical property without using the word "change". Eventually, after studying chemistry for some time, you should be able to look at the formula of a compound and state some chemical property. For example, hydrogen has the potential to ignite and explode given the right conditions—this is a chemical property. Metals in general have the chemical property of reacting with an acid. Zinc reacts with hydrochloric acid to produce hydrogen gas—this is a chemical property.

Figure 1.4.2: Heavy rust on the links of a chain near the Golden Gate Bridge in San Francisco; it was continuously exposed to moisture and salt spray, causing surface breakdown, cracking, and flaking of the metal. (CC BY-SA 3.0; Marlith).

A chemical property of iron is its capability of combining with oxygen to form iron oxide, the chemical name of rust (Figure 1.4.2). The more general term for rusting and other similar processes is corrosion. Other terms that are commonly used in descriptions of chemical changes are burn, rot, explode, decompose, and ferment. Chemical properties are very useful in identifying substances. However, unlike physical properties, chemical properties can only be observed as the substance is in the process of being changed into a different substance.

Table 1.4.2: Contrasting Physical and Chemical Properties

Physical Properties	Chemical Properties
Gallium metal melts at 30 ^{o}C.	Iron metal rusts.
Mercury is a very dense liquid.	A green banana turns yellow when it ripens.
Gold is shiny.	A dry piece of paper burns.

✓ Example 1.4.1

Which of the following is a chemical property of iron?

a. Iron corrodes in moist air.
b. Density = 7.874 g/cm^3
c. Iron is soft when pure.
d. Iron melts at 1808 K.

Solution

"Iron corrodes in moist air" is the only chemical property of iron from the list.

? Exercise 1.4.1A

Which of the following is a physical property of matter?

a. corrosiveness
b. pH (acidity)
c. density
d. flammability

Answer

c

? Exercise 1.4.1B

Which of the following is a chemical property?

a. flammability
b. melting point
c. boiling point
d. density

Answer

a

Summary

A physical property is a characteristic of a substance that can be observed or measured without changing the identity of the substance. Physical properties include color, density, hardness, and melting and boiling points. A chemical property describes the ability of a substance to undergo a specific chemical change. To identify a chemical property, we look for a chemical change. A chemical change always produces one or more types of matter that differ from the matter present before the change. The formation of rust is a chemical change because rust is a different kind of matter than the iron, oxygen, and water present before the rust formed.

1.5: Changes in Matter - Physical and Chemical Changes

Learning Objectives

- Label a change as chemical or physical.
- List evidence that can indicate a chemical change occurred.

Change is happening all around us all of the time. Just as chemists have classified elements and compounds, they have also classified types of changes. Changes are classified as either physical or chemical changes. Chemists learn a lot about the nature of matter by studying the changes that matter can undergo. Chemists make a distinction between two different types of changes that they study—physical changes and chemical changes.

Physical Change

Physical changes are changes in which no bonds are broken or formed. This means that the same types of compounds or elements that were there at the beginning of the change are there at the end of the change. Because the ending materials are the same as the beginning materials, the properties (such as color, boiling point, etc.) will also be the same. Physical changes involve moving molecules around, but not changing them. Some types of physical changes include:

- Changes of state (changes from a solid to a liquid or a gas and vice versa).
- Separation of a mixture.
- Physical deformation (cutting, denting, stretching).
- Making solutions (special kinds of mixtures).

As an ice cube melts, its shape changes as it acquires the ability to flow. However, its composition does not change. Melting is an example of a physical change. A physical change is a change to a sample of matter in which some properties of the material change, but the identity of the matter does not. When liquid water is heated, it changes to water vapor. However, even though the physical properties have changed, the molecules are exactly the same as before. We still have each water molecule containing two hydrogen atoms and one oxygen atom covalently bonded. When you have a jar containing a mixture of pennies and nickels and you sort the mixture so that you have one pile of pennies and another pile of nickels, you have not altered the identity of the pennies or the nickels—you've merely separated them into two groups. This would be an example of a physical change. Similarly, if you have a piece of paper, you don't change it into something other than a piece of paper by ripping it up. What was paper before you started tearing is still paper when you are done. Again, this is an example of a physical change.

Figure 1.5.1: Ice melting is a physical change. When liquid water (H_2O) freezes into a solid state (ice), it appears changed; however, this change is only physical, as the composition of the constituent molecules is the same: 11.19% hydrogen and 88.81% oxygen by mass. (Public Domain; Moussa).

Chemical Change

Chemical changes occur when bonds are broken and/or formed between molecules or atoms. This means that one substance with a certain set of properties (such as melting point, color, taste, etc) is turned into a different substance with different properties. Chemical changes are frequently harder to reverse than physical changes.

One good example of a chemical change is burning a candle. The act of burning paper actually results in the formation of new chemicals (carbon dioxide and water) from the burning of the wax. Another example of a chemical change is what occurs when natural gas is burned in your furnace. This time, on the left there is a molecule of methane, $\mathrm{CH_4}$, and two molecules of oxygen,

O_2; on the right are two molecules of water, H_2O, and one molecule of carbon dioxide, CO_2. In this case, not only has the appearance changed, but the structure of the molecules has also changed. The new substances do not have the same chemical properties as the original ones. Therefore, this is a chemical change.

Figure 1.5.2: Burning of wax to generate water and carbon dioxide is a chemical reaction. (CC-SA-BY-3.0; Andrikkos)

We can't actually see molecules breaking and forming bonds, although that's what defines chemical changes. We have to make other observations to indicate that a chemical change has happened. Some of the evidence for chemical change will involve the energy changes that occur in chemical changes, but some evidence involves the fact that new substances with different properties are formed in a chemical change.

Observations that help to indicate chemical change include:

- Temperature changes (either the temperature increases or decreases).
- Light given off.
- Unexpected color changes (a substance with a different color is made, rather than just mixing the original colors together).
- Bubbles are formed (but the substance is not boiling—you made a substance that is a gas at the temperature of the beginning materials, instead of a liquid).
- Different smell or taste (do not taste your chemistry experiments, though!).
- A solid forms if two clear liquids are mixed (look for *floaties*—technically called a precipitate).

✓ Example 1.5.1

Label each of the following changes as a physical or chemical change. Give evidence to support your answer.

a. Boiling water.
b. A nail rusting.
c. A green solution and colorless solution are mixed. The resulting mixture is a solution with a pale green color.
d. Two colorless solutions are mixed. The resulting mixture has a yellow precipitate.

Solution

a. Physical: boiling and melting are physical changes. When water boils, no bonds are broken or formed. The change could be written: $H_2O\,(l) \rightarrow H_2O\,(g)$
b. Chemical: The dark grey nail changes color to form an orange flaky substance (the rust); this must be a chemical change. Color changes indicate chemical change. The following reaction occurs: $Fe + O_2 \rightarrow Fe_2O_3$
c. Physical: because none of the properties changed, this is a physical change. The green mixture is still green and the colorless solution is still colorless. They have just been spread together. No color *change* occurred or other evidence of chemical change.
d. Chemical: the formation of a precipitate and the color change from colorless to yellow indicate a chemical change.

? Exercise 1.5.1

Label each of the following changes as a physical or chemical change.

a. A mirror is broken.
b. An iron nail corroded in moist air
c. Copper metal is melted.
d. A catalytic converter changes nitrogen dioxide to nitrogen gas and oxygen gas.

Answer a:

physical change

Answer b:

chemical change

Answer c:

physical change

Answer d:

chemical change

Summary

- Chemists make a distinction between two different types of changes that they study—physical changes and chemical changes.
- Physical changes are changes that do not alter the identity of a substance.
- Chemical changes are changes that occur when one substance is turned into another substance.
- Chemical changes are frequently harder to reverse than physical changes. Observations that indicate a chemical change has occurred include color change, temperature change, light given off, formation of bubbles, formation of a precipitate, etc.

Contributions & Attributions

-
- Boundless (www.boundless.com)
- edited by Spencer Berger

1.6: Conservation of Mass - There is No New Matter

It may seem as though burning destroys matter, but the same amount, or mass, of matter still exists after a campfire as before. Look at Figure 1.6.1 below. It shows that when wood burns, it combines with oxygen and changes not only to ashes, but also to carbon dioxide and water vapor. The gases float off into the air, leaving behind just the ashes. Suppose you had measured the mass of the wood before it burned and the mass of the ashes after it burned. Also suppose you had been able to measure the oxygen used by the fire and the gases produced by the fire. What would you find? The total mass of matter after the fire would be the same as the total mass of matter before the fire.

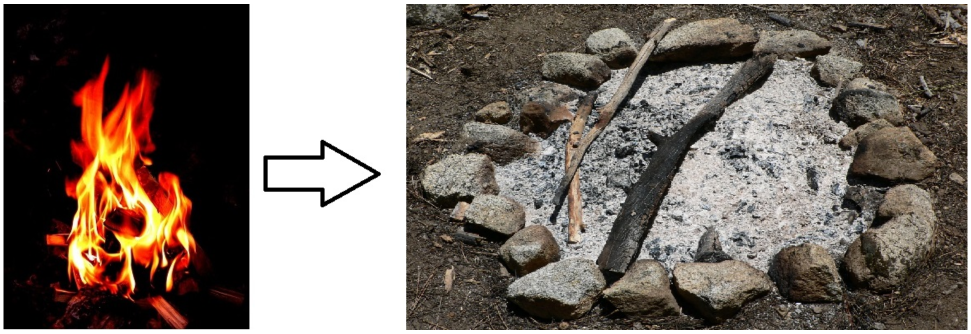


Figure 1.6.1: Burning is a chemical process. The flames are caused as a result of a fuel undergoing combustion (burning). (CC BY-SA 2.5; Einar Helland Berger for fire and Walter Siegmund for ash).

Law of Conservation of Mass

The **law of conservation of mass** states that matter cannot be created or destroyed in a chemical reaction. For example, when wood burns, the mass of the soot, ashes, and gases equals the original mass of the charcoal and the oxygen when it first reacted.

Another way to state this is that the total mass of the products is equal to the total mass of the reactants. In a chemical reaction, the reactants are represented on the left side of the arrow, and the products are represented on the right side of the arrow. For example, in the reaction $C + O_2 \rightarrow CO_2$, C and O_2 are the reactants, and CO_2 is the product.

(Video 1.6.1).

Video 1.6.1: This is a nice little demonstration showing the Conservation of Mass in action.

For example, let's say you witness a 300 kg tree burn to the ground. There are only ashes left after the burn, and all of them together weigh 10 kg. Where did the other 290 kg go? The 'missing' 290 kg was released into the atmosphere as smoke, so the only thing left that you can see is the 10 kg of ash. If you know the law of conservation of mass, then you know that the other 290 kg has to go somewhere, because the total mass of the products has to equal the mass of the tree before it burnt down.

Example 1.6.1

If heating 10.0 grams of calcium carbonate ($CaCO_3$) produces 4.4 g of carbon dioxide (CO_2) and 5.6 g of calcium oxide (CaO), show that these observations are in agreement with the law of conservation of mass.

Solution

$$\text{Mass of the reactants} = \text{Mass of the products}$$

$$10.0 \text{ g of } CaCO_3 = 4.4 \text{ g of } CO_2 + 5.6 \text{ g of } CaO$$

$$10.0 \text{ g of reactant} = 10.0 \text{ g of products}$$

Because the mass of the reactant is equal to the mass of the products, the observations are in agreement with the law of conservation of mass.

Exercise 1.6.1

Potassium hydroxide (KOH) readily reacts with carbon dioxide (CO_2) to produce potassium carbonate (K_2CO_3) and water (H_2O). How many grams of potassium carbonate are produced if 224.4 g of KOH reacts with 88.0 g of CO_2? The reaction also produces 36.0 g of water.

Answer

276.4 g of potassium carbonate

The Law is also applicable to both chemical and physical changes. For example, if you have an ice cube that melts into a liquid and you heat that liquid up, it becomes a gas. It will appear to have disappeared, but is still there.

Summary

- Burning and other changes in matter do not destroy matter.
- The mass of matter is always the same before and after the changes occur.
- The law of conservation of mass states that matter cannot be created or destroyed.

Contributions & Attributions

- Binod Shrestha (University of Lorraine)
- edited by Spencer Berger

1.7: Element Symbols and Chemical Formulas

Learning Objectives

- Determine the number of different atoms in a formula.

Element Symbols

All elements have a unique symbol that is either one or two letters. The first letter is always a capital letter, and the second letter (if there is a second letter) is lowercase. (Note: older versions of the periodic table may have some three letter symbols for the very last elements - these represent placeholder names and have been updated).

The first letter of the element symbol is often, but not always, the first letter of the element. For example, the symbol for oxygen is O, and the symbol for hydrogen is H. Helium also starts with the letter H, but is given the symbol He.

Some element symbols do not match the English names of the elements - the symbol for sodium is Na. If you are interested in reading more about the origins of these element symbols, the following website has more information: https://www.compoundchem.com/2016/02/02/confusing-elements/

Chemical Formulas

A **chemical formula** is an expression that shows the elements in a compound and the relative proportions of those elements. Water is composed of hydrogen and oxygen in a 2:1 ratio. The chemical formula for water is H_2O. Sulfuric acid is one of the most widely produced chemicals in the United States and is composed of the elements hydrogen, sulfur, and oxygen. The chemical formula for sulfuric acid is H_2SO_4. This formula means that one molecule of sulfuric acid has two hydrogen atoms, one sulfur atom, and four oxygen atoms. Note that if only one atom is present, no subscript is used.

Chemical formulas can contain parentheses. Consider the compound calcium phosphate, which has the formula $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$. The formula is written in this way to indicate that there are two phosphate, or PO_4^{3-} groups.

To count the total number of atoms for formulas with a group enclosed in parenthesis, use the subscript as a multiplier for each atom or number of atoms.

$$Ca_3(PO_4)_{\color{red}2}$$

$$3\text{ Ca} + {\color{red}2}\text{ x1 P} + {\color{red}2}\text{ x 4 O} = 3\text{ Ca atoms} + 2\text{ P atoms} + 8\text{ O atoms}$$

Exercise 1.7.1

How many Na, P, and O atoms are represented in the formula Na_3PO_4?

Answer

3 Na atoms, 1 P atom, and 4 O atoms

Exercise 1.7.2

How many Al, S, and O atoms are represented in the formula $Al_2(SO_4)_3$?

Answer

2 Al atoms, 3 S atoms, and 12 O atoms

Summary

- A chemical formula is an expression that shows the elements in a compound and the relative proportions of those elements.
- If only one atom of a specific type is present, no subscript is used.

- For atoms that have two or more of a specific type of atom present, a subscript is written after the symbol for that atom.]

Contributions & Attributions

- edited by Spencer Berger

1.8: Looking for Patterns - The Periodic Table

Learning Objectives

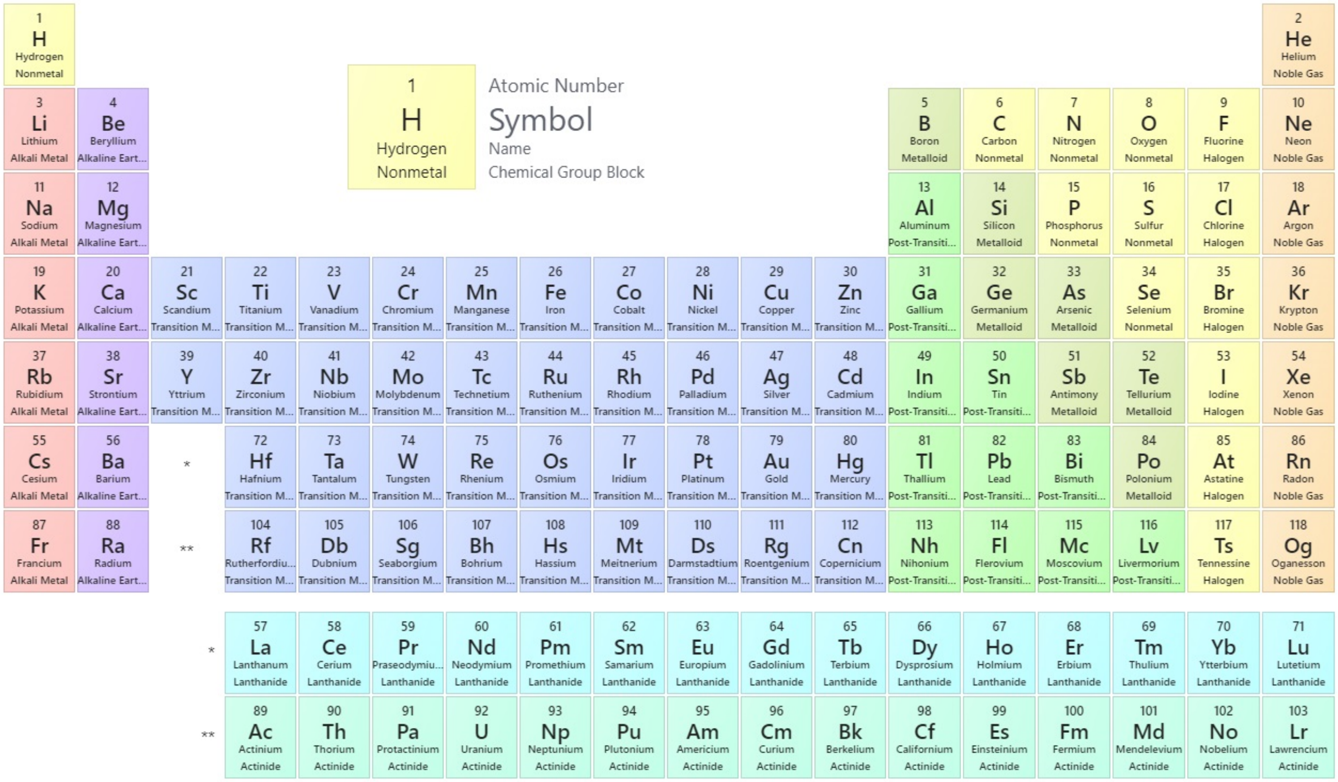
- Explain how elements are organized into the periodic table.
- Describe how some characteristics of elements relate to their positions on the periodic table.

In the 19th century, many previously unknown elements were discovered, and scientists noted that certain sets of elements had similar chemical properties. For example, chlorine, bromine, and iodine react with other elements (such as sodium) to make similar compounds. Likewise, lithium, sodium, and potassium react with other elements (such as oxygen) to make similar compounds. Why is this so?

In 1864, Julius Lothar Meyer, a German chemist, organized the elements by atomic mass and grouped them according to their chemical properties. Later that decade, Dmitri Mendeleev, a Russian chemist, organized all the known elements according to similar properties. He left gaps in his table for what he thought were undiscovered elements, and he made some bold predictions regarding the properties of those undiscovered elements. When elements were later discovered whose properties closely matched Mendeleev's predictions, his version of the table gained favor in the scientific community. Because certain properties of the elements repeat on a regular basis throughout the table (that is, they are periodic), it became known as the periodic table.

> *Mendeleev had to list some elements out of the order of their atomic masses to group them with other elements that had similar properties.*

The periodic table is one of the cornerstones of chemistry because it organizes all of the known elements on the basis of their chemical properties. A modern version is shown in Figure 1.8.1. Most periodic tables provide additional data (such as atomic mass) in a box that contains each element's symbol. The elements are listed in order of atomic number.



1 H Hydrogen Nonmetal	Atomic Number Symbol Name Chemical Group Block

1 H Hydrogen Nonmetal																	2 He Helium Noble Gas
3 Li Lithium Alkali Metal	4 Be Beryllium Alkaline Eart...											5 B Boron Metalloid	6 C Carbon Nonmetal	7 N Nitrogen Nonmetal	8 O Oxygen Nonmetal	9 F Fluorine Halogen	10 Ne Neon Noble Gas
11 Na Sodium Alkali Metal	12 Mg Magnesium Alkaline Eart...											13 Al Aluminum Post-Transiti...	14 Si Silicon Metalloid	15 P Phosphorus Nonmetal	16 S Sulfur Nonmetal	17 Cl Chlorine Halogen	18 Ar Argon Noble Gas
19 K Potassium Alkali Metal	20 Ca Calcium Alkaline Eart...	21 Sc Scandium Transition M...	22 Ti Titanium Transition M...	23 V Vanadium Transition M...	24 Cr Chromium Transition M...	25 Mn Manganese Transition M...	26 Fe Iron Transition M...	27 Co Cobalt Transition M...	28 Ni Nickel Transition M...	29 Cu Copper Transition M...	30 Zn Zinc Transition M...	31 Ga Gallium Post-Transiti...	32 Ge Germanium Metalloid	33 As Arsenic Metalloid	34 Se Selenium Nonmetal	35 Br Bromine Halogen	36 Kr Krypton Noble Gas
37 Rb Rubidium Alkali Metal	38 Sr Strontium Alkaline Eart...	39 Y Yttrium Transition M...	40 Zr Zirconium Transition M...	41 Nb Niobium Transition M...	42 Mo Molybdenum Transition M...	43 Tc Technetium Transition M...	44 Ru Ruthenium Transition M...	45 Rh Rhodium Transition M...	46 Pd Palladium Transition M...	47 Ag Silver Transition M...	48 Cd Cadmium Transition M...	49 In Indium Post-Transiti...	50 Sn Tin Post-Transiti...	51 Sb Antimony Metalloid	52 Te Tellurium Metalloid	53 I Iodine Halogen	54 Xe Xenon Noble Gas
55 Cs Cesium Alkali Metal	56 Ba Barium Alkaline Eart...	*	72 Hf Hafnium Transition M...	73 Ta Tantalum Transition M...	74 W Tungsten Transition M...	75 Re Rhenium Transition M...	76 Os Osmium Transition M...	77 Ir Iridium Transition M...	78 Pt Platinum Transition M...	79 Au Gold Transition M...	80 Hg Mercury Transition M...	81 Tl Thallium Post-Transiti...	82 Pb Lead Post-Transiti...	83 Bi Bismuth Post-Transiti...	84 Po Polonium Metalloid	85 At Astatine Halogen	86 Rn Radon Noble Gas
87 Fr Francium Alkali Metal	88 Ra Radium Alkaline Eart...	**	104 Rf Rutherfordiu... Transition M...	105 Db Dubnium Transition M...	106 Sg Seaborgium Transition M...	107 Bh Bohrium Transition M...	108 Hs Hassium Transition M...	109 Mt Meitnerium Transition M...	110 Ds Darmstadtium Transition M...	111 Rg Roentgenium Transition M...	112 Cn Copernicium Transition M...	113 Nh Nihonium Post-Transiti...	114 Fl Flerovium Post-Transiti...	115 Mc Moscovium Post-Transiti...	116 Lv Livermorium Post-Transiti...	117 Ts Tennessine Halogen	118 Og Oganesson Noble Gas
		*	57 La Lanthanum Lanthanide	58 Ce Cerium Lanthanide	59 Pr Praseodymiu... Lanthanide	60 Nd Neodymium Lanthanide	61 Pm Promethium Lanthanide	62 Sm Samarium Lanthanide	63 Eu Europium Lanthanide	64 Gd Gadolinium Lanthanide	65 Tb Terbium Lanthanide	66 Dy Dysprosium Lanthanide	67 Ho Holmium Lanthanide	68 Er Erbium Lanthanide	69 Tm Thulium Lanthanide	70 Yb Ytterbium Lanthanide	71 Lu Lutetium Lanthanide
		**	89 Ac Actinium Actinide	90 Th Thorium Actinide	91 Pa Protactinium Actinide	92 U Uranium Actinide	93 Np Neptunium Actinide	94 Pu Plutonium Actinide	95 Am Americium Actinide	96 Cm Curium Actinide	97 Bk Berkelium Actinide	98 Cf Californium Actinide	99 Es Einsteinium Actinide	100 Fm Fermium Actinide	101 Md Mendelevium Actinide	102 No Nobelium Actinide	103 Lr Lawrencium Actinide

Figure 1.8.1: A Modern Periodic Table. A modern periodic table lists elements left to right by atomic number. An interactive Periodic table can be found Periodic Table of Elements. (Public Domain; PubChem via NIH)

Features of the Periodic Table

Elements that have similar chemical properties are grouped in columns called groups (or families). As well as being numbered, some of these groups have names—for example, *alkali metals* (the first column of elements), *alkaline earth metals* (the second column of elements), *halogens* (the next-to-last column of elements), and *noble gases* (the last column of elements).

> *The word halogen comes from the Greek for "salt maker" because these elements combine with other elements to form a group of compounds called salts.*

To Your Health: Radon

Radon is an invisible, odorless noble gas that is slowly released from the ground, particularly from rocks and soils whose uranium content is high. Because it is a noble gas, radon is not chemically reactive. Unfortunately, it is radioactive, and increased exposure to it has been correlated with an increased lung cancer risk.

Because radon comes from the ground, we cannot avoid it entirely. Moreover, because it is denser than air, radon tends to accumulate in basements, which if improperly ventilated can be hazardous to a building's inhabitants. Fortunately, specialized ventilation minimizes the amount of radon that might collect. Special fan-and-vent systems are available that draw air from below the basement floor, before it can enter the living space, and vent it above the roof of a house.

After smoking, radon is thought to be the second-biggest *preventable* cause of lung cancer in the United States. The American Cancer Society estimates that 10% of all lung cancers are related to radon exposure. There is uncertainty regarding what levels of exposure cause cancer, as well as what the exact causal agent might be (either radon or one of its breakdown products, many of which are also radioactive and, unlike radon, not gases). The US Environmental Protection Agency recommends testing every floor below the third floor for radon levels to guard against long-term health effects.

Each row of elements on the periodic table is called a period. Periods have different lengths; the first period has only 2 elements (hydrogen and helium), while the second and third periods have 8 elements each. The fourth and fifth periods have 18 elements each, and later periods are so long that a segment from each is removed and placed beneath the main body of the table.

Certain elemental properties become apparent in a survey of the periodic table as a whole. Every element can be classified as either a metal, a nonmetal, or a metalloid (or semi metal), as shown in Figure 1.8.2. A **metal** is a substance that is shiny, typically (but not always) silvery in color, and an excellent conductor of electricity and heat. Metals are also malleable (they can be beaten into thin sheets) and ductile (they can be drawn into thin wires). A **nonmetal** is typically dull and a poor conductor of electricity and heat. Solid nonmetals are also very brittle. As shown in Figure 1.8.2, metals occupy the left three-fourths of the periodic table, while nonmetals (except for hydrogen) are clustered in the upper right-hand corner of the periodic table. The elements with properties intermediate between those of metals and nonmetals are called **metalloids** (or **semi-metals**). Elements adjacent to the bold line in the right-hand portion of the periodic table have semimetal properties.

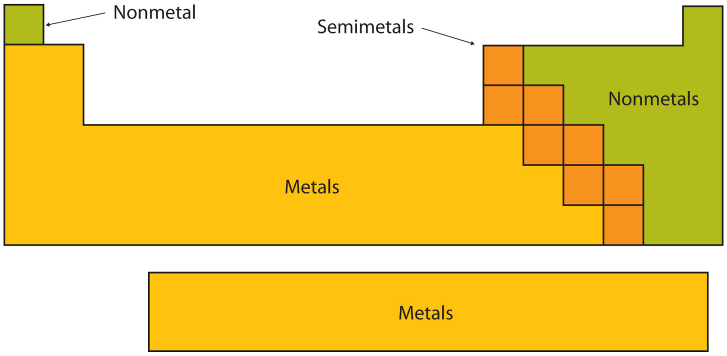


Figure 1.8.2: Types of Elements. Elements are either metals, nonmetals, or metalloids (or semi metals). Each group is located in a different part of the periodic table. (CC BY-NC-SA; Anonymous by request)

Example 1.8.1

Based on its position in the periodic table, classify each element below as metal, a nonmetal, or a metalloid.

a. Se

b. Mg
c. Ge

Solution

a. In Figure 1.8.1, selenium lies above and to the right of the diagonal line marking the boundary between metals and nonmetals, so it should be a nonmetal.
b. Magnesium lies to the left of the diagonal line marking the boundary between metals and nonmetals, so it should be a metal.
c. Germanium lies within the diagonal line marking the boundary between metals and nonmetals, so it should be a metalloid.

? Exercise 1.8.1

Based on its location in the periodic table, do you expect indium to be a nonmetal, a metal, or a metalloid?

Answer

Indium is a metal.

Another way to categorize the elements of the periodic table is shown in Figure 1.8.3. The first two columns on the left and the last six columns on the right are called the main group elements. The ten-column block between these columns contains the **transition metals**. The two rows beneath the main body of the periodic table contain the **inner transition metals**. The elements in these two rows are also referred to as, respectively, the **lanthanide metals** and the **actinide metals**.

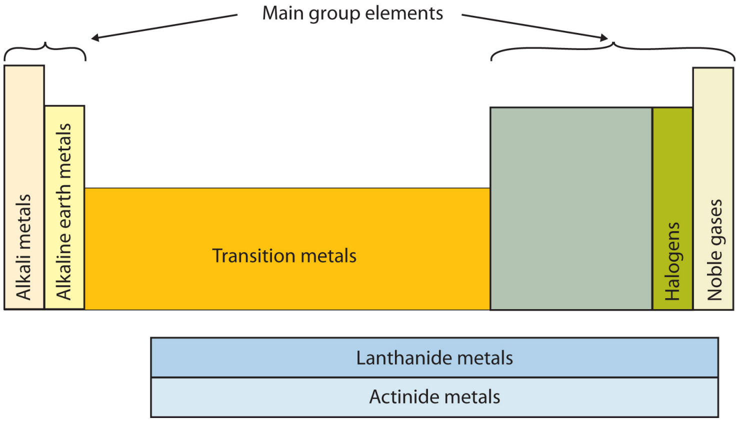


Figure 1.8.3: Special Names for Sections of the Periodic Table. (CC BY-NC-SA; Anonymous by request)

Sections of period table: Alkali metals, alkaline earth metals, transition metals, halogens, noble gases, lanthanide metals, actinide metals.

Descriptive Names

As previously noted, the periodic table is arranged so that elements with similar chemical behaviors are in the same group. Chemists often make general statements about the properties of the elements in a group using descriptive names with historical origins.

Group 1: The Alkali Metals

The alkali metals are lithium, sodium, potassium, rubidium, cesium, and francium. Hydrogen is unique in that it is generally placed in Group 1, but it is not a metal.

The compounds of the alkali metals are common in nature and daily life. One example is table salt (sodium chloride); lithium compounds are used in greases, in batteries, and as drugs to treat patients who exhibit manic-depressive, or bipolar, behavior. Although lithium, rubidium, and cesium are relatively rare in nature, and francium is so unstable and highly radioactive that it exists in only trace amounts, sodium and potassium are the seventh and eighth most abundant elements in Earth’s crust, respectively.

Video: Alkali metals in water - Chemical elements: properties and reactions. (The Open University via https://youtu.be/6ZY6d6jrq-0)

Group 2: The Alkaline Earth Metals

The alkaline earth metals are beryllium, magnesium, calcium, strontium, barium, and radium. Beryllium, strontium, and barium are rare, and radium is unstable and highly radioactive. In contrast, calcium and magnesium are the fifth and sixth most abundant elements on Earth, respectively; they are found in huge deposits of limestone and other minerals.

Group 17: The Halogens

The halogens are fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, and astatine. The name halogen is derived from the Greek words for “salt forming,” which reflects that all of the halogens react readily with metals to form compounds, such as sodium chloride and calcium chloride (used in some areas as road salt).

Compounds that contain the fluoride ion are added to toothpaste and the water supply to prevent dental cavities. Fluorine is also found in Teflon coatings on kitchen utensils. Although chlorofluorocarbon propellants and refrigerants are believed to lead to the depletion of Earth’s ozone layer and contain both fluorine and chlorine, the latter is responsible for the adverse effect on the ozone layer. Bromine and iodine are less abundant than chlorine, and astatine is so radioactive that it exists in only negligible amounts in nature.

Group 18: The Noble Gases

The noble gases are helium, neon, argon, krypton, xenon, and radon. Because the noble gases are composed of only single atoms, they are called monatomic. At room temperature and pressure, they are unreactive gases. Because of their lack of reactivity, for many years they were called inert gases or rare gases. However, the first chemical compounds containing the noble gases were prepared in 1962. Although the noble gases are relatively minor constituents of the atmosphere, natural gas contains substantial amounts of helium. Because of its low reactivity, argon is often used as an unreactive (inert) atmosphere for welding and in light bulbs. The red light emitted by neon in a gas discharge tube is used in neon lights.

✓ Example 1.8.2: Groups

Provide the family or group name of each element.

a. Li
b. Ar
c. Cl

Solution

a. Lithium is an alkali metal (Group 1)
b. Argon is a noble gas (Group 18)
c. Chlorine is a halogen (Group 17)

? Exercise 1.8.2: Groups

Provide the family or group name of each element.

a. F
b. Ca
c. Kr

Answer a:

Fluorine is a halogen (Group 17).

Answer b:

Calcium is a alkaline earth metal (Group 2).

Answer c:

Krypton is a noble gas (Group 18).

✓ Example 1.8.3: Classification of Elements

Classify each element as metal, non metal, transition metal or inner transition metal.

a. Li
b. Ar
c. Am
d. Fe

Solution

a. Lithium is a metal.
b. Argon is a non metal.
c. Americium is an inner transition metal.
d. Iron is a transition metal.

? Exercise 1.8.3: Classification of Elements

Classify each element as metal, non metal, transition metal or inner transition metal.

a. F
b. U
c. Cu

Answer a:

Fluorine is a nonmetal.

Answer b:

Uranium is a metal (and a inner transition metal too).

Answer c:

Copper is a metal (and a transition metal too).

Summary

The periodic table is an arrangement of the elements in order of increasing atomic number. Elements that exhibit similar chemistry appear in vertical columns called groups (numbered 1–18 from left to right); the seven horizontal rows are called periods. Some of the groups have widely-used common names, including the alkali metals (Group 1) and the alkaline earth metals (Group 2) on the far left, and the halogens (Group 17) and the noble gases (Group 18) on the far right.

The elements can be broadly divided into metals, nonmetals, and semi metals. Semi metals exhibit properties intermediate between those of metals and nonmetals. Metals are located on the left of the periodic table, and nonmetals are located on the upper right. They are separated by a diagonal band of semi metals. Metals are lustrous, good conductors of electricity, and readily shaped (they are ductile and malleable). Solid nonmetals are generally brittle and poor electrical conductors. Other important groupings of elements in the periodic table are the main group elements, the transition metals, and the inner transition metals (the lanthanides, and the actinides).

References

1. Petrucci, Ralph H., William S. Harwood, F. G. Herring, and Jeffrey D. Madura. General Chemistry: Principles and Modern Applications. 9th ed. Upper Saddle River: Pearson Education, Inc., 2007.
2. Sisler, Harry H. Electronic structure, properties, and the periodic law. New york; Reinhold publishing corporation, 1963.
3. Petrucci, Ralph H., Carey Bissonnette, F. G. Herring, and Jeffrey D. Madura. General Chemistry: Principles and Modern Applications. Custom Edition for CHEM 2. Pearson Learning Solutions, 2010.

Contributions & Attributions

1.8: Looking for Patterns - The Periodic Table is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **4.6: Looking for Patterns - The Periodic Table** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

1.9: Energy

Learning Objectives

- Define heat and work.
- Distinguish between kinetic energy and potential energy.
- State the law of conservation of matter and energy.

Just like matter, energy is a term that we are all familiar with and use on a daily basis. Before you go on a long hike, you eat an *energy* bar; every month, the *energy* bill is paid; on TV, politicians argue about the *energy* crisis. But what is energy? If you stop to think about it, energy is very complicated. When you plug a lamp into an electric socket, you see energy in the form of light, but when you plug a heating pad into that same socket, you only feel warmth. Without energy, we couldn't turn on lights, we couldn't brush our teeth, we couldn't make our lunch, and we couldn't travel to school. In fact, without energy, we couldn't even wake up because our bodies require energy to function. We use energy for every single thing that we do, whether we are awake or asleep.

Ability to Do Work or Produce Heat

When we speak of *using* energy, we are really referring to *transferring* energy from one place to another. When you use energy to throw a ball, you transfer energy from your body to the ball, and this causes the ball to fly through the air. When you use energy to warm your house, you transfer energy from the furnace to the air in your home, and this causes the temperature in your house to rise. Although energy is used in many kinds of different situations, all of these uses rely on energy being transferred in one of two ways. Energy can be transferred as *heat* or as *work*.

When scientists speak of ***heat***, they are referring to energy that is transferred from an object with a higher temperature to an object with a lower temperature, as a result of the temperature difference. Heat will "flow" from the hot object to the cold object until both end up at the same temperature. When you cook with a metal pot, you witness energy being transferred in the form of heat. Initially, only the stove element is hot—the pot and the food inside the pot are cold. As a result, heat moves from the hot stove element to the cold pot. After a while, enough heat is transferred from the stove to the pot, raising the temperature of the pot and all of its contents (Figure 1.9.1).

Figure 1.9.1: Energy is transferred as heat from the hot stove element to the cooler pot until the pot and its contents become just as hot as the element. The energy that is transferred into the pot as heat is then used to cook the food.

Heat is only one way in which energy can be transferred. Energy can also be transferred as **work**. The scientific definition of work is *force (any push or pull) applied over a distance*. When you push an object and cause it to move, you do work, and you transfer some of *your* energy to the object. At this point, it's important to warn you of a common misconception. Sometimes we think that the amount of work done can be measured by the amount of effort put in. This may be true in everyday life, but it is not true in science. By definition, scientific work requires that force be applied *over a distance*. It does not matter how hard you push or how hard you pull. If you have not moved the object, you haven't done any work.

So far, we've talked about the two ways in which energy can be transferred from one place, or object, to another. Energy can be transferred as heat, and energy can be transferred as work. But the question still remains—*what IS energy*?

Kinetic Energy

Machines use energy, our bodies use energy, energy comes from the sun, energy comes from volcanoes, energy causes forest fires, and energy helps us to grow food. With all of these seemingly different types of energy, it's hard to believe that there are really only two different *forms* of energy: kinetic energy and potential energy. **Kinetic energy** is energy associated with motion. When an object is moving, it has kinetic energy. When the object stops moving, it has no kinetic energy. While all moving objects have kinetic energy, not all moving objects have the same amount of kinetic energy. The amount of kinetic energy possessed by an object is determined by its mass and its speed. The heavier an object is and the faster it is moving, the more kinetic energy it has.

Kinetic energy is very common, and it's easy to spot examples of it in the world around you. Sometimes we even try to capture kinetic energy and use it to power things like our home appliances. If you are from California, you might have driven through the Tehachapi Pass near Mojave or the Montezuma Hills in Solano County and seen the windmills lining the slopes of the mountains (Figure $1.9.2$). These are two of the larger wind farms in North America. As wind rushes along the hills, the kinetic energy of the moving air particles turns the windmills, trapping the wind's kinetic energy so that people can use it in their houses and offices.

Figure $1.9.2$: A wind farm in Solano County harnesses the kinetic energy of the wind. (CC BY-SA 3.0 Unported; BDS2006 at Wikipedia)

Potential Energy

Potential energy is *stored* energy. It is energy that remains available until we choose to use it. Think of a battery in a flashlight. If left on, the flashlight battery will run out of energy within a couple of hours, and the flashlight will die. If, however, you only use the flashlight when you need it, and turn it off when you don’t, the battery will last for days or even months. The battery contains a certain amount of energy, and it will power the flashlight for a certain amount of time, but because the battery stores *potential* energy, you can choose to use the energy all at once, or you can save it and only use a small amount at a time.

Any stored energy is potential energy. There are a lot of different ways in which energy can be stored, and this can make potential energy very difficult to recognize. In general, an object has potential energy because of its *position relative to another object*. For example, when a rock is held above the earth, it has potential energy because of its position relative to the ground. This is *potential energy* because the energy is *stored* for as long as the rock is held in the air. Once the rock is dropped, though, the stored energy is released as kinetic energy as the rock falls.

Chemical Energy

There are other common examples of potential energy. A ball at the top of a hill stores potential energy until it is allowed to roll to the bottom. When two magnets are held next to one another, they store potential energy too. For some examples of potential energy, though, it's harder to see how "position" is involved. In chemistry, we are often interested in what is called **chemical potential energy**. Chemical potential energy is energy stored in the atoms, molecules, and chemical bonds that make up matter. How does this depend on position?

As you learned earlier, the world, and all of the chemicals in it are made up of atoms and molecules. These store potential energy that is dependent on their positions relative to one another. Of course, you can't see atoms and molecules. Nevertheless, scientists do know a lot about the ways in which atoms and molecules interact, and this allows them to figure out how much potential energy is stored in a specific quantity (like a cup or a gallon) of a particular chemical. *Different chemicals have different amounts of potential energy* because they are made up of different atoms, and those atoms have different positions relative to one another.

> Since different chemicals have different amounts of potential energy, scientists will sometimes say that potential energy depends not only on ***position***, but also on ***composition***. Composition affects potential energy because it determines which

> molecules and atoms end up next to one another. For example, the total potential energy in a cup of pure water is different than the total potential energy in a cup of apple juice, because the cup of water and the cup of apple juice are *composed* of different amounts of different chemicals.

At this point, you may wonder just how useful chemical potential energy is. If you want to release the potential energy stored in an object held above the ground, you just drop it. But how do you get potential energy out of chemicals? It's actually not difficult. Use the fact that different chemicals have *different amounts of potential energy*. If you start with chemicals that have a lot of potential energy and allow them to react and form chemicals with less potential energy, all the extra energy that was in the chemicals at the beginning, but not at the end, is released.

Summary

- Any time we use energy, we transfer energy from one object to another.
- Energy can be transferred in one of two ways: as heat, or as work.
- Energy comes in two fundamentally different forms: kinetic energy and potential energy.
- Kinetic energy is the energy of motion.
- Potential energy is stored energy that depends on the position of an object relative to another object.
- Chemical potential energy is a special type of potential energy that depends on the positions of different atoms and molecules relative to one another.
- Chemical potential energy can also be thought of according to its dependence on chemical composition.
- Energy can be converted from one form to another. The total amount of mass and energy in the universe is conserved.

Contributions & Attributions

- Wikibooks
- edited by Spencer Berger

1.10: Scientific Notation - Writing Large and Small Numbers

Learning Objectives

- Express a large number or a small number in scientific notation.

Chemists often work with numbers that are exceedingly large or small. For example, entering the mass in grams of a hydrogen atom into a calculator would require a display with at least 24 decimal places. A system called **scientific notation** avoids much of the tedium and awkwardness of manipulating numbers with large or small magnitudes. In scientific notation, these numbers are expressed in the form

$$N \times 10^n$$

where N is greater than or equal to 1 and less than 10 ($1 \leq N < 10$), and n is a positive or negative integer ($10^0 = 1$). The number 10 is called the base because it is this number that is raised to the power n. Although a base number may have values other than 10, the base number in scientific notation is always 10.

A simple way to convert numbers to scientific notation is to move the decimal point as many places to the left or right as needed to give a number from 1 to 10 (N). The magnitude of n is then determined as follows:

- If the decimal point is moved to the left n places, n is positive.
- If the decimal point is moved to the right n places, n is negative.

Another way to remember this is to recognize that as the number N decreases in magnitude, the exponent increases and vice versa. The application of this rule is illustrated in Example 1.10.1.

Example 1.10.1: Expressing Numbers in Scientific Notation

Convert each number to scientific notation.

a. 637.8
b. 0.0479
c. 7.86
d. 12,378
e. 0.00032
f. 61.06700
g. 2002.080
h. 0.01020

Solution

Solutions to Example 2.2.1

	Explanation	Answer
a	To convert 637.8 to a number from 1 to 10, we move the decimal point two places to the left: 637.8 Because the decimal point was moved two places to the left, n = 2.	6.3
b	To convert 0.0479 to a number from 1 to 10, we move the decimal point two places to the right: 0.0479 Because the decimal point was moved two places to the right, n = −2.	4.7
c	This is usually expressed simply as 7.86. (Recall that $10^0 = 1$.)	7.8
d	Because the decimal point was moved four places to the left, n = 4.	1.2
e	Because the decimal point was moved four places to the right, n = −4.	3.2
f	Because the decimal point was moved one place to the left, n = 1.	6.1
g	Because the decimal point was moved three places to the left, n = 3.	2.0

	Explanation	Answer
h	Because the decimal point was moved two places to the right, n = -2.	1.0

Contributions

- edited by Spencer Berger

1.11: Significant Figures - Writing Numbers to Reflect Precision

Learning Objectives

- Identify the number of significant figures in a reported value.

In chemistry, many numbers come from measurements. How precisely we know the value of the number depends on the instrument used to take the measurement. The concept of **significant figures** is used to convey precision in numbers. The significant figures in a measurement consist of all the certain digits in that measurement plus one uncertain or estimated digit.

In the ruler illustration below, the top ruler gives a length with 3 significant figures and the bottom ruler gives a length with 2 significant figures. Each measurement is reported with one estimated digit (one in between the markings)

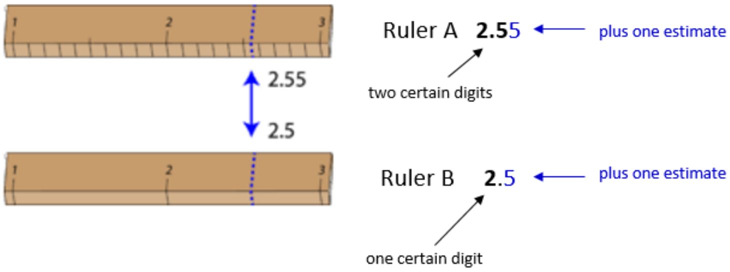


Figure 1.11.1: Measurement with two different rulers.
Ruler A's measurement is reported as 2.55 cm, while Ruler B's measurement is reported as 2.5 cm.

Measurement Uncertainty

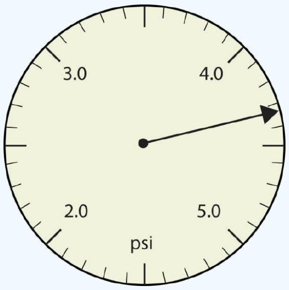
Some error or **uncertainty** always exists in any measurement. The amount of uncertainty depends both upon the skill of the measurer and upon the quality of the measuring tool. While some balances are capable of measuring masses only to the nearest 0.1 g, other highly sensitive balances are capable of measuring to the nearest 0.001 g or even better. Many measuring tools such as rulers and graduated cylinders have small lines which need to be carefully read in order to make a measurement. Figure $1.11.1$ shows two rulers making the same measurement of an object (indicated by the blue arrow).

With either ruler, it is clear that the length of the object is between 2 and 3 cm. The bottom ruler contains no millimeter markings. With that ruler, the tenths digit can be estimated and the length may be reported as 2.5 cm. However, another person may judge that the measurement is 2.4 cm or perhaps 2.6 cm. While the 2 is known for certain, the value of the tenths digit is uncertain.

The top ruler contains marks for tenths of a centimeter (millimeters). Now the same object may be measured as 2.55 cm. The measurer is capable of estimating the hundredths digit because he can be certain that the tenths digit is a 5. Again, another measurer may report the length to be 2.54 cm or 2.56 cm. In this case, there are two certain digits (the 2 and the 5), with the hundredths digit being uncertain. Clearly, the top ruler is a superior ruler for measuring lengths as precisely as possible.

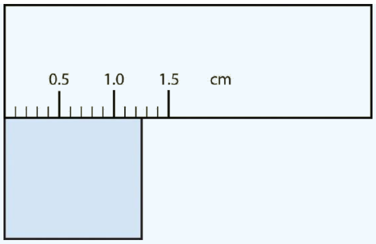
✓ Example 1.11.1: Reporting Measurements to the Proper Number of Significant Figures

Use each diagram to report a measurement to the proper number of significant figures.



a.

b.



Ruler measuring a rectangle in units of centimeters, with the rectangle's edge between 1.2 and 1.3 cm marks

Solutions

Solutions to Example 2.3.1

	Explanation	**Answer**
a.	The arrow is between 4.0 and 5.0, so the measurement is at least 4.0. The arrow is between the third and fourth small tick marks, so it's at least 0.3. We will have to estimate the last place. It looks like about one-third of the way across the space, so let us estimate the hundredths place as 3. The symbol psi stands for "pounds per square inch" and is a unit of pressure, like air in a tire. The measurement is reported to three significant figures.	4.33 psi
b.	The rectangle is at least 1.0 cm wide but certainly not 2.0 cm wide, so the first significant digit is 1. The rectangle's width is past the second tick mark but not the third; if each tick mark represents 0.1, then the rectangle is at least 0.2 in the next significant digit. We have to estimate the next place because there are no markings to guide us. It appears to be about halfway between 0.2 and 0.3, so we will estimate the next place to be a 5. Thus, the measured width of the rectangle is 1.25 cm. The measurement is reported to three significant figures.	1.25 cm

The table below shows the rules for determining the number of significant figures in a reported measurement.

Table 1.11.1: Significant Figure Rules

Rule	**Examples**
1. All nonzero digits in a measurement are significant.	• 237 has three significant figures. • 1.897 has four significant figures.
2. Zeros that appear between other nonzero digits (middle zeros) are always significant.	• 39,004 has five significant figures. • 5.02 has three significant figures.
3. Zeros that appear in front of all of the nonzero digits are called leading zeros. Leading zeros are never significant.	• 0.008 has one significant figure. • 0.000416 has three significant figures.
4. Zeros that appear after all nonzero digits are called trailing zeros. A number with trailing zeros that lacks a decimal point may or may not be significant. **Use scientific notation to indicate the appropriate number of significant figures.**	• 1400 is ambiguous. ∘ 1.4×10^3 has two significant figures. ∘ 1.40×10^3 three significant figures. ∘ 1.400×10^3 has four significant figures.

Rule	Examples
5. Trailing zeros in a number with a decimal point are significant. This is true whether the zeros occur before or after the decimal point.	- 620.0 has four significant figures. - 19.000 has five significant figures.

Exact Numbers

Integers obtained either by counting objects or from definitions are exact numbers, which are considered to have infinitely many significant figures. If we have counted four objects, for example, then the number 4 has an infinite number of significant figures (i.e., it represents 4.000…). Similarly, 1 foot (ft) is defined to contain 12 inches (in), so the number 12 in the following equation has infinitely many significant figures:

✓ Example 1.11.2

Give the number of significant figures in each. Identify the rule for each.

a. 5.87
b. 0.031
c. 52.90
d. 0.2001

Solution

Solution to Example 2.3.2

Explanation	Answer

	Explanation	Answer
a	All three numbers are significant (rule 1).	5.87, three significant figures

	Explanation	**Answer**
b	The leading zeros are not significant (rule 3). The 3 and the 1 are significant (rule 1).	0.031, two significant figures

	Explanation	Answer
c	The 5, the 2 and the 9 are significant (rule 1). The trailing zero is also significant (rule 5).	52.90, four significant figures

	Explanation	Answer
d	The leading zeros are not significant (rule 3). The 2 and the 1 are significant (rule 1) and the middle zeros are also significant (rule 2).	0.2001, four significant figures

Exercise 1.11.2

Give the number of significant figures in each.

a. 36.7 m
b. 0.006606 s
c. 2,002 kg

Answer a

three significant figures

Answer b

four significant figures

Answer c

four significant figures

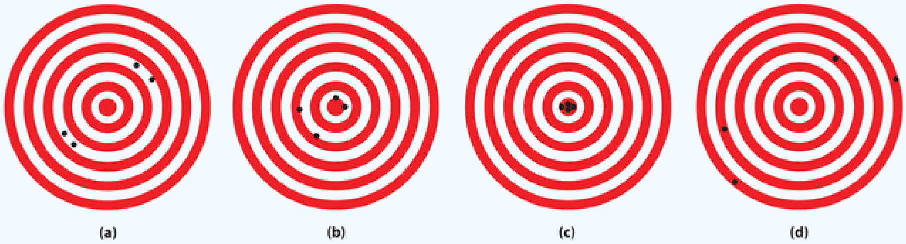
Accuracy and Precision

Measurements may be accurate, meaning that the measured value is the same as the true value; they may be precise, meaning that multiple measurements give nearly identical values (i.e., reproducible results); they may be both accurate and precise; or they may be neither accurate nor precise. The goal of scientists is to obtain measured values that are both accurate and precise. The video below demonstrates the concepts of accuracy and precision.

Video 1.11.1: Difference between precision and accuracy.

Example 1.11.3

The following archery targets show marks that represent the results of four sets of measurements.



Which target shows

a. a set of measurements that is both precise and accurate?
b. a set of measurements that is neither precise nor accurate?

Solution

a. Set c is both precise and accurate.
b. Set d is neither precise nor accurate.

Summary

Uncertainty exists in all measurements. The degree of uncertainty is affected in part by the quality of the measuring tool. Significant figures give an indication of the certainty of a measurement. Rules allow decisions to be made about how many digits to use in any given situation.

Contributions

- edited by Spencer Berger

1.12: Significant Figures in Calculations

Learning Objectives

- Use significant figures correctly in arithmetical operations.

Rounding

Before dealing with the specifics of the rules for determining the significant figures in a calculated result, we need to be able to round numbers correctly. To **round** a number, first decide how many significant figures the number should have. Once you know that, round to that many digits, starting from the left. If the number immediately to the right of the last significant digit is less than 5, it is dropped and the value of the last significant digit remains the same. If the number immediately to the right of the last significant digit is greater than or equal to 5, the last significant digit is increased by 1.

Consider the measurement 207.518 m Right now, the measurement contains six significant figures. How would we successively round it to fewer and fewer significant figures? Follow the process as outlined in Table $1.12.1$.

Table 1.12.1: Rounding examples

Number of Significant Figures	Rounded Value	Reasoning
6	207.518	All digits are significant
5	207.52	8 rounds the 1 up to 2
4	207.5	2 is dropped
3	208	5 rounds the 7 up to 8
2	210	8 is replaced by a 0 and rounds the 0 up to 1
1	200	1 is replaced by a 0

Notice that the more rounding that is done, the less reliable the figure is. An approximate value may be sufficient for some purposes, but scientific work requires a much higher level of detail.

It is important to be aware of significant figures when you are mathematically manipulating numbers. For example, dividing 125 by 307 on a calculator gives 0.4071661238… to an infinite number of digits. But do the digits in this answer have any practical meaning, especially when you are starting with numbers that have only three significant figures each? When performing mathematical operations, there are two rules for limiting the number of significant figures in an answer—one rule is for addition and subtraction, and one rule is for multiplication and division.

> *In operations involving significant figures, the answer is reported in such a way that it reflects the reliability of the* ***least precise*** *operation. An answer is no more precise than the least precise number used to get the answer.*

Multiplication and Division

For multiplication or division, the rule is to count the number of significant figures in each number being multiplied or divided and then limit the significant figures in the answer to the lowest count. An example is as follows:

$$\underbrace{38.65}_{\text{4 sig figs}} \times \underbrace{105.93}_{\text{5 sig figs}} = \underbrace{4{,}094.1945}_{\text{reduce to 4 sig figs}}$$

The final answer, limited to four significant figures, is 4,094. The first digit dropped is 1, so we do not round up.

Scientific notation provides a way of communicating significant figures without ambiguity. You simply include all the significant figures in the leading number. For example, the number 450 has two significant figures and would be written in scientific notation as 4.5 × 10^2, whereas 450.0 has four significant figures and would be written as 4.500 × 10^2. In scientific notation, all significant figures are listed explicitly.

✓ Example 1.12.1

Write the answer for each expression using scientific notation with the appropriate number of significant figures.

a. 23.096 × 90.300
b. 125 × 9.000

Solution

a

Explanation	Answer
The calculator answer is 2,085.5688, but we need to round it to five significant figures. Because the first digit to be dropped (in the tenths place) is greater than 5, we round up to 2,085.6.	2.0856×10^3

b

Explanation	Answer
The calculator gives 1,125 as the answer, but we limit it to three significant figures.	1.13×10^3

Addition and Subtraction

How are significant figures handled in calculations? It depends on what type of calculation is being performed. If the calculation is an addition or a subtraction, the rule is as follows: limit the reported answer to the rightmost column that all numbers have significant figures in common. For example, if you were to add 1.2 and 4.71, we note that the first number stops its significant figures in the tenths column, while the second number stops its significant figures in the hundredths column. We therefore limit our answer to the tenths column.

$$\begin{array}{l} 1.2 \\ \underline{4.41} \\ 5.61 \\ \quad\uparrow \text{ limit final answer to the tenths column: 5.6} \end{array}$$

We drop the last digit—the 1—because it is not significant to the final answer.

The dropping of positions in sums and differences brings up the topic of rounding. Although there are several conventions, in this text we will adopt the following rule: the final answer should be rounded up if the first dropped digit is 5 or greater, and rounded down if the first dropped digit is less than 5.

$$\begin{array}{l} 77.2 \\ \underline{10.46} \\ 87.66 \\ \quad\uparrow \text{ limit final answer to the tenths column and round up: 87.7} \end{array}$$

✓ Example 1.12.2

a. 13.77 + 908.226
b. 1,027 + 611 + 363.06

Solution

a

Explanation	Answer
The calculator answer is 921.996, but because 13.77 has its farthest-right significant figure in the hundredths place, we need to round the final answer to the hundredths position. Because the first digit to be dropped (in the thousandths place) is greater than 5, we round up to 922.00	$922.00 = 9.2200 \times 10^2$

b

Explanation	Answer
The calculator gives 2,001.06 as the answer, but because 611 and 1027 has its farthest-right significant figure in the ones place, the final answer must be limited to the ones position.	$2,001.06 = 2.001 \times 10^3$

? Exercise 1.12.2

Write the answer for each expression using scientific notation with the appropriate number of significant figures.

a. 217 ÷ 903
b. 13.77 + 908.226 + 515
c. 255.0 − 99
d. 0.00666 × 321

Answer a:

$$0.240 = 2.40 \times 10^{-1}$$

Answer b:

$$1,437 = 1.437 \times 10^3$$

Answer c:

$$156 = 1.56 \times 10^2$$

Answer d:

$$2.14 = 2.14 \times 10^0$$

Remember that calculators do not understand significant figures. *You* are the one who must apply the rules of significant figures to a result from your calculator.

Calculations Involving Multiplication/Division and Addition/Subtraction

In practice, chemists generally work with a calculator and carry all digits forward through subsequent calculations. When working on paper, however, we often want to minimize the number of digits we have to write out. Because successive rounding can compound inaccuracies, intermediate rounding needs to be handled correctly. When working on paper, always round an intermediate result so as to retain at least one more digit than can be justified and carry this number into the next step in the calculation. The final answer is then rounded to the correct number of significant figures at the very end.

Video 1.12.1: Significant figures in mixed operations (https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=yBntMndXQWA).

Video 1.12.2: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=__csP0NtlGI

In the worked examples in this text, we will often show the results of intermediate steps in a calculation. In doing so, we will show the results to only the correct number of significant figures allowed for that step, in effect treating each step as a separate calculation. This procedure is intended to reinforce the rules for determining the number of significant figures, but in some cases it may give a final answer that differs in the last digit from that obtained using a calculator, where all digits are carried through to the last step.

✓ Example 1.12.3

a. 2(1.008 g) + 15.99 g
b. 137.3 s + 2(35.45 s)
c. $\frac{118.7g}{2} - 35.5g$

Solution

a.

Explanation	Answer

2(1.008 g) + 15.99 g = **Perform multiplication first.** 2 (1.008 g *4 sig figs*) = **2.016 g** *4 sig figs* The number with the least number of significant figures is 1.008 g; *the number 2 is an exact number and therefore has an infinite number of significant figures*. **Then, perform the addition.** **2.016 g** *thousandths place* + 15.99 g *hundredths place (least precise)* = 18.006 g **Round the final answer.** Round the final answer to the hundredths place since 15.99 has its farthest right significant figure in the hundredths place (least precise).	18.01 g (rounding up)

b.

Explanation	Answer
137.3 s + 2(35.45 s) = **Perform multiplication first.** 2(35.45 s *4 sig figs*) = **70.90 s** *4 sig figs* The number with the least number of significant figures is 35.45; *the number 2 is an exact number and therefore has an infinite number of significant figures.* **Then, perform the addition.** 137.3 s *tenths place (least precise)* + **70.90 s** *hundredths place* = 208.20 s **Round the final answer.** Round the final answer to the tenths place based on 137.3 s.	208.2 s

c.

Explanation	**Answer**
$\frac{118.7g}{2} - 35.5g =$ **Perform division first.** $\frac{118.7g}{2}$ *4 sig figs* = **59.35 g** *4 sig figs* The number with the least number of significant figures is 118.7 g; *the number 2 is an exact number and therefore has an infinite number of significant figures.* **Perform subtraction next.** **59.35 g** *hundredths place* − 35.5 g *tenths place (least precise)* = 23.85 g **Round the final answer.** Round the final answer to the tenths place based on 35.5 g.	23.9 g (rounding up)

Exercise 1.12.3

Complete the calculations and report your answers using the correct number of significant figures.

a. 5(1.008s) - 10.66 s
b. 99.0 cm+ 2(5.56 cm)

Answer a

-5.62 s

Answer b

110.2 cm

Summary

- Rounding
  - If the number to be dropped is greater than or equal to 5, increase the number to its left by 1 (e.g. 2.9699 rounded to three significant figures is 2.97).
  - If the number to be dropped is less than 5, there is no change (e.g. 4.00443 rounded to four significant figures is 4.004).
- The rule in multiplication and division is that the final answer should have the same number of significant figures as there are in the number with the fewest significant figures.
- The rule in addition and subtraction is that the answer is given the same number of decimal places as the term with the fewest decimal places.

1.13: The Basic Units of Measurement

Learning Objectives

- State the different measurement systems used in chemistry.
- Describe how prefixes are used in the metric system and identify how the prefixes milli-, centi-, and kilo- compare to the base unit.

How long is a yard? It depends on whom you ask and when you asked the question. Today we have a standard definition of the yard, which you can see marked on every football field. If you move the ball ten yards, you get a first down and it does not matter whether you are playing in Los Angeles, Dallas, or Green Bay. But at one time that yard was arbitrarily defined as the distance from the tip of the king's nose to the end of his outstretched hand. Of course, the problem there is simple: new king, new distance (and then you have to re-mark all of those football fields).

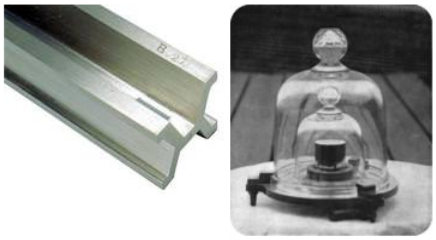


Figure 1.13.1: Meter standard (left) and Kilogram standard (right).

SI Base Units

All measurements depend on the use of units that are well known and understood. The **English system** of measurement units (inches, feet, ounces, etc.) are not used in science because of the difficulty in converting from one unit to another. The **metric system** is used because all metric units are based on multiples of 10, making conversions very simple. The metric system was originally established in France in 1795. **The International System of Units** is a system of measurement based on the metric system. The acronym **SI** is commonly used to refer to this system and stands for the French term, *Le Système International d'Unités*. The SI was adopted by international agreement in 1960 and is composed of seven base units in Table 1.13.1.

Table 1.13.1: SI Base Units of Measurement

Quantity	SI Base Unit	Symbol
Length	meter	m
Mass	kilogram	kg
Temperature	kelvin	K
Time	second	s
Amount of a Substance	mole	mol
Electric Current	ampere	A
Luminous Intensity	candela	cd

The first units are frequently encountered in chemistry. All other measurement quantities, such as volume, force, and energy, can be derived from these seven base units.

Unfortunately, the Metric System is Not Ubiquitous

The map below shows the adoption of the SI units in countries around the world. The United States has legally adopted the metric system for measurements, but does not use it in everyday practice. Great Britain and much of Canada use a combination of metric and imperial units.

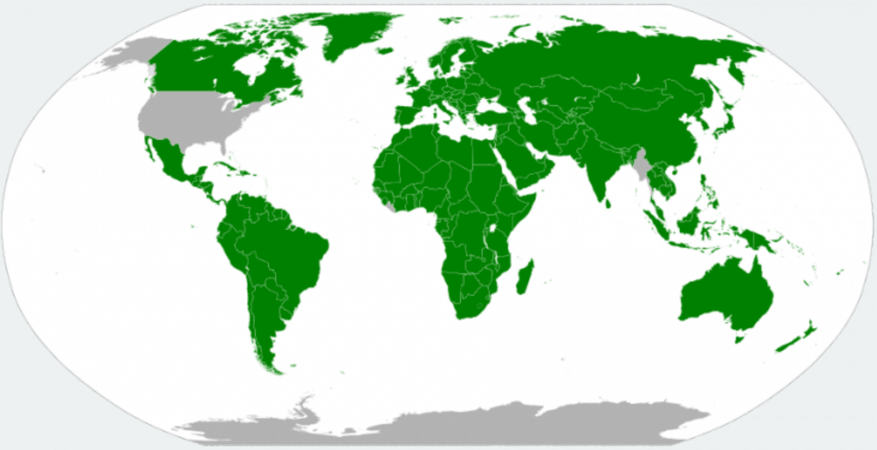


Figure 1.13.1: Areas of world using metric system (in green). Only a few countries are slow or resistant to adoption including the United States.

Prefix Multipliers

Conversions between metric system units are straightforward because the system is based on powers of ten. For example, meters, centimeters, and millimeters are all metric units of length. There are 10 millimeters in 1 centimeter and 100 centimeters in 1 meter. **Metric prefixes** are used to distinguish between units of different size. These prefixes all derive from either Latin or Greek terms. For example, *mega* comes from the Greek word $\mu\varepsilon\gamma\alpha\varsigma$, meaning "great". Table $1.13.2$ lists the most common metric prefixes and their relationship to the central unit that has no prefix. Length is used as an example to demonstrate the relative size of each prefixed unit.

Table 1.13.2: SI Prefixes

Prefix	Unit Abbreviation	Meaning	Example
giga	G	1,000,000,000	1 gigameter $(\mathrm{Gm}) = 10^9\ \mathrm{m}$
mega	M	1,000,000	1 megameter $(\mathrm{Mm}) = 10^6\ \mathrm{m}$
kilo	k	1,000	1 kilometer $(\mathrm{km}) = 1,000\ \mathrm{m}$
hecto	h	100	1 hectometer $(\mathrm{hm}) = 100\ \mathrm{m}$
deka	da	10	1 dekameter $(\mathrm{dam}) = 10\ \mathrm{m}$
		1	1 meter (m)
deci	d	1/10	1 decimeter $(\mathrm{dm}) = 0.1\ \mathrm{m}$
centi	c	1/100	1 centimeter $(\mathrm{cm}) = 0.01\ \mathrm{m}$
milli	m	1/1,000	1 millimeter $(\mathrm{mm}) = 0.001\ \mathrm{m}$
micro	μ	1/1,000,000	1 micrometer $(\mu\mathrm{m}) = 10^{-6}\ \mathrm{m}$
nano	n	1/1,000,000,000	1 nanometer $(\mathrm{nm}) = 10^{-9}\ \mathrm{m}$
pico	p	1/1,000,000,000,000	1 picometer $(\mathrm{pm}) = 10^{-12}\ \mathrm{m}$

There are a couple of odd little practices with the use of metric abbreviations. Most abbreviations are lowercase. We use "m" for meter and not "M". However, when it comes to volume, the base unit "liter" is abbreviated as "L" and not "l". So we would write 3.5 milliliters as $3.5\ \mathrm{mL}$.

As a practical matter, whenever possible you should express the units in a small and manageable number. If you are measuring the weight of a material that weighs $6.5\ \mathrm{kg}$, this is easier than saying it weighs $6500\ \mathrm{g}$ or $0.65\ \mathrm{dag}$. All three are correct, but the kg units in this case make for a small and easily managed number. However, if a specific problem needs grams instead of kilograms, go with the grams for consistency.

✓ Example 1.13.1: Unit Abbreviations

Give the abbreviation for each unit and define the abbreviation in terms of the base unit.

a. kiloliter
b. microsecond
c. decimeter
d. nanogram

Solutions

Solutions to Example 2.5.1

	Explanation	**Answer**
a	The prefix kilo means “1,000 ×,” so 1 kL equals 1,000 L.	kL
b	The prefix micro implies 1/1,000,000th of a unit, so 1 µs equals 0.000001 s.	µs
c	The prefix deci means 1/10th, so 1 dm equals 0.1 m.	dm
d	The prefix nano means 1/1000000000, so a nanogram is equal to 0.000000001 g.	ng

? Exercise 1.13.1

Give the abbreviation for each unit and define the abbreviation in terms of the base unit.

a. kilometer
b. milligram
c. nanosecond
d. centiliter

Answer a:

km

Answer b:

mg

Answer c:

ns

Answer d:

cL

Summary

- Metric prefixes derive from Latin or Greek terms. The prefixes are used to make the units manageable.
- The SI system is based on multiples of ten. There are seven basic units in the SI system. Five of these units are commonly used in chemistry.

- **2.5: The Basic Units of Measurement** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

1.14: PROBLEM SOLVING AND UNIT CONVERSIONS

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- To convert a value reported in one unit to a corresponding value in a different unit using conversion factors.

During your studies of chemistry (and physics also), you will note that mathematical equations are used in many different applications. Many of these equations have a number of different variables with which you will need to work. You should also note that these equations will often require you to use measurements with their units. Algebra skills become very important here!

CONVERTING BETWEEN UNITS WITH CONVERSION FACTORS

A **conversion factor** is a factor used to convert one unit of measurement into another. A simple conversion factor can convert meters into centimeters, or a more complex one can convert miles per hour into meters per second. Since most calculations require measurements to be in certain units, you will find many uses for conversion factors. Always remember that a conversion factor has to represent a fact; this fact can either be simple or more complex. For instance, you already know that 12 eggs equal 1 dozen. A more complex fact is that the speed of light is 1.86×10^5 miles/sec. Either one of these can be used as a conversion factor depending on what type of calculation you are working with (Table 1.14.1).

Table 1.14.1: Conversion Factors from SI units to English Units

English Units	Metric Units	Quantity
1 ounce (oz)	28.35 grams (g)	*mass
1 fluid once (oz)	29.6 mL	volume
2.205 pounds (lb)	1 kilogram (kg)	*mass
1 inch (in)	2.54 centimeters (cm)	length
0.6214 miles (mi)	1 kilometer (km)	length
1 quarter (qt)	0.95 liters (L)	volume

*Pounds and ounces are technically units of force, not mass, but this fact is often ignored by the non-scientific community.

Of course, there are other ratios which are not listed in Table 1.14.1. They may include:

- Ratios embedded in the text of the problem (using words such as *per* or *in each*, or using symbols such as / or %).
- Conversions in the metric system, as covered earlier in this chapter.
- Common knowledge ratios (such as 60 seconds = 1 minute).

If you learned the SI units and prefixes described, then you know that 1 cm is 1/100th of a meter.

$$1 \text{ cm} = \frac{1}{100} \text{ m} = 10^{-2} \text{m}$$

or

$$100 \text{ cm} = 1 \text{ m}$$

Suppose we divide both sides of the equation by 1m (both the number *and* the unit):

$$\frac{100 \text{ cm}}{1 \text{ m}} = \frac{1 \text{ m}}{1 \text{ m}}$$

As long as we perform the same operation on both sides of the equals sign, the expression remains an equality. Look at the right side of the equation; it now has the same quantity in the numerator (the top) as it has in the denominator (the bottom). Any fraction that has the same quantity in the numerator and the denominator has a value of 1:

$$\frac{100 \text{ cm}}{1 \text{ m}} = \frac{1000 \text{ mm}}{1 \text{ m}} = \frac{1 \times 10^6 \mu\text{m}}{1 \text{ m}} = 1$$

We know that 100 cm *is* 1 m, so we have the same quantity on the top and the bottom of our fraction, although it is expressed in different units.

PERFORMING DIMENSIONAL ANALYSIS

Dimensional analysis is amongst the most valuable tools that physical scientists use. Simply put, it is the conversion between an amount in one unit to the corresponding amount in a desired unit using various conversion factors. This is valuable because certain measurements are more accurate or easier to find than others. The use of units in a calculation to ensure that we obtain the final proper units is called *dimensional analysis*.

Here is a simple example. How many centimeters are there in 3.55 m? Perhaps you can determine the answer in your head. If there are 100 cm in every meter, then 3.55 m equals 355 cm. To solve the problem more formally with a conversion factor, we first write the quantity we are given, 3.55 m. Then we multiply this quantity by a conversion factor, which is the same as multiplying it by 1. We can write 1 as $\frac{100\ \mathrm{cm}}{1\ \mathrm{m}}$ and multiply:

$$3.55\ \mathrm{m}\times\frac{100\ \mathrm{cm}}{1\ \mathrm{m}}$$

The 3.55 m can be thought of as a fraction with a 1 in the denominator. Because m, the abbreviation for meters, occurs in both the numerator *and* the denominator of our expression, they cancel out:

$$\frac{3.55\ \cancel{\mathrm{m}}}{1}\times\frac{100\ \mathrm{cm}}{1\ \cancel{\mathrm{m}}}$$

The final step is to perform the calculation that remains once the units have been canceled:

$$\frac{3.55}{1}\times\frac{100\ \mathrm{cm}}{1}=355\ \mathrm{cm}$$

In the final answer, we omit the 1 in the denominator. Thus, by a more formal procedure, we find that 3.55 m equals 355 cm. A generalized description of this process is as follows:

quantity (in old units) × conversion factor = quantity (in new units)

You may be wondering why we use a seemingly complicated procedure for a straightforward conversion. In later studies, the conversion problems you encounter *will not always be so simple*. If you master the technique of applying conversion factors, you will be able to solve a large variety of problems.

In the previous example, we used the fraction $\frac{100\ \mathrm{cm}}{1\ \mathrm{m}}$ as a conversion factor. Does the conversion factor $\frac{1\ \mathrm{m}}{100\ \mathrm{cm}}$ also equal 1? Yes, it does; it has the same quantity in the numerator as in the denominator (except that they are expressed in different units). Why did we not use *that* conversion factor? If we had used the second conversion factor, the original unit would not have canceled, and the result would have been meaningless. Here is what we would have gotten:

$$3.55\ \mathrm{m}\times\frac{1\ \mathrm{m}}{100\ \mathrm{cm}}=0.0355\frac{\mathrm{m}^2}{\mathrm{cm}}$$

For the answer to be meaningful, we have to *construct the conversion factor in a form that causes the original unit to cancel out*. Figure 1.14.1 shows a concept map for constructing a proper conversion.

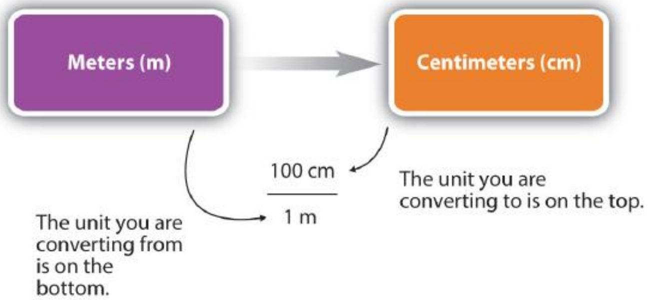


Figure 1.14.1: A Concept Map for Conversions. This is how you construct a conversion factor to convert from one unit to another. Converting meters to centimeters: the unit you are converting is on the bottom of the fraction, and the unit to convert to is on top

GENERAL STEPS IN PERFORMING DIMENSIONAL ANALYSIS

1. Identify the "**given**" information in the problem. Look for a number with units to start this problem with.
2. What is the problem asking you to "**find**"? In other words, what unit will your answer have?
3. Use **ratios** and conversion factors to cancel out the units that aren't part of your answer, and leave you with units that are part of your answer.
4. When your units cancel out correctly, you are ready to do the **math**. You are multiplying fractions, so you multiply the top numbers and divide by the bottom numbers in the fractions.

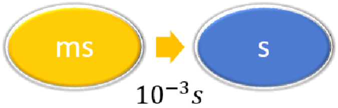
SIGNIFICANT FIGURES IN CONVERSIONS

How do conversion factors affect the determination of significant figures?

- Numbers in conversion factors based on prefix changes, such as kilograms to grams, are *not* considered in the determination of significant figures in a calculation because the numbers in such conversion factors are exact.
- Exact numbers are defined or counted numbers, not measured numbers, and can be considered as having an infinite number of significant figures. (In other words, 1 kg is exactly 1,000 g, by the definition of kilo-.)
- Counted numbers are also exact. If there are 16 students in a classroom, the number 16 is exact.
- In contrast, conversion factors that come from measurements (such as density, as we will see shortly) or that are approximations have a limited number of significant figures and should be considered in determining the significant figures of the final answer.

✓ EXAMPLE 1.14.1

Steps for Problem Solving for Example 2.6.1 and 2.6.2

	Example 1.14.1	**Example 1.14.2**
Steps for Problem Solving	The average volume of blood in an adult male is 4.7 L. What is this volume in milliliters?	A hummingbird can flap its wings once in 18 ms. How many seconds are in 18 ms?
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 4.7 L Find: mL	Given: 18 ms Find: s
List other known quantities.	$1\,mL = 10^{-3}L$	$1\,ms = 10^{-3}s$
Prepare a concept map and use the proper conversion factor.	 $\frac{1mL}{10^{-3}L}$	 $\frac{10^{-3}s}{1ms}$
Cancel units and calculate.	$4.7\ \cancel{L} \times \frac{1\ \text{mL}}{10^{-3}\ \cancel{L}} = 4,700\ \text{mL}$ or $4.7\ \cancel{L} \times \frac{1,000\ \text{mL}}{1\ \cancel{L}} = 4,700\ \text{mL}$ or 4.7 x 10^3 2SF, not ambiguous	$18\ \cancel{\text{ms}} \times \frac{10^{-3}\ \text{s}}{1\ \cancel{\text{ms}}} = 0.018\ \text{s}$ or $18\ \cancel{\text{ms}} \times \frac{1\ \text{s}}{1,000\ \cancel{\text{ms}}} = 0.018\ \text{s}$
Think about your result.	The amount in mL should be 1000 times larger than the given amount in L.	The amount in s should be 1/1000 the given amount in ms.

? EXERCISE 1.14.1

Perform each conversion.

a. 101,000 ns to seconds
b. 32.08 kg to grams
c. 1.53 grams to cg

Answer a:

$1.01000x10^{-4}s$

Answer b:

$3.208x10^{4}g$

Answer c:

$1.53x10^{2}cg$

SUMMARY

- Conversion factors are used to convert one unit of measurement into another.
- Dimensional analysis (unit conversions) involves the use of conversion factors that will cancel unwanted units and produce the appropriate units.

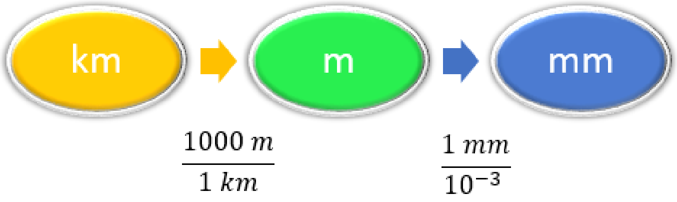
1.15: SOLVING MULTI-STEP CONVERSION PROBLEMS

MULTIPLE CONVERSIONS

Sometimes you will have to perform more than one conversion to obtain the desired unit. For example, suppose you want to convert 54.7 km into millimeters. We will set up a series of conversion factors so that each conversion factor produces the next unit in the sequence. We first convert the given amount in km to the base unit, which is meters. We know that 1,000 m =1 km.

Then we convert meters to mm, remembering that 1 mm = 10^{-3} m.

CONCEPT MAP



Convert kilometers to meters to millimeters: use conversion factors 1000 meters per 1 kilometer and 1 millimeter per 0.001 meter

CALCULATION

$$54.7\ \cancel{km} \times \frac{1{,}000\ \cancel{m}}{1\ \cancel{km}} \times \frac{1\ \cancel{mm}}{10^{-3}\cancel{m}} = 54{,}700{,}000\ \text{mm}$$

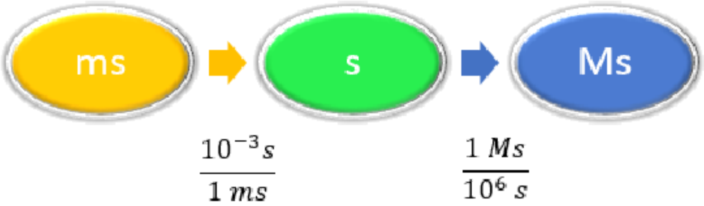
$$= 5.47 \times 10^{7}\ \text{mm}$$

> *In each step, the previous unit is canceled and the next unit in the sequence is produced, each successive unit canceling out until only the unit needed in the answer is left.*

✓ EXAMPLE 1.15.1: UNIT CONVERSION

Convert 58.2 ms to megaseconds in one multi-step calculation.

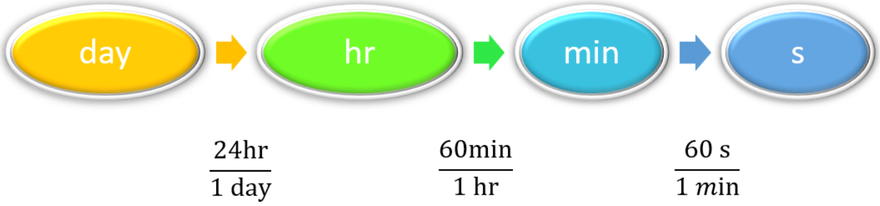
SOLUTION

Steps for Problem Solving	Unit Conversion
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 58.2 ms Find: Ms
List other known quantities	$1ms = 10^{-3}s$ $1Ms = 10^{6}s$
Prepare a concept map.	 Convert milliseconds to seconds to microseconds: use conversion factors 0.001 second per millisecond and 1 microsecond per 1 million seconds
Calculate.	$58.2\ \cancel{ms} \times \frac{10^{-3}\ \cancel{s}}{1\ \cancel{ms}} \times \frac{1\ \text{Ms}}{1{,}000{,}000\ \cancel{s}} = 0.0000000582\ \text{Ms}$ $= 5.82 \times 10^{-8}\ \text{Ms}$ Neither conversion factor affects the number of significant figures in the final answer.

EXAMPLE 1.15.2: UNIT CONVERSION

How many seconds are in a day?

Solution

Steps for Problem Solving	Unit Conversion
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 1 day Find: s
List other known quantities.	1 day = 24 hours 1 hour = 60 minutes 1 minute = 60 seconds
Prepare a concept map.	 Convert day to hour to minute to second: use conversion factors 24 hours per day, 60 minutes per hour, and 60 seconds per minute
Calculate.	$1\text{ d} \times \frac{24\text{ hr}}{1\text{ d}} \times \frac{60\text{ min}}{1\text{ hr}} \times \frac{60\text{ s}}{1\text{ min}} = 86,400\text{ s}$

EXERCISE 1.15.1

Perform each conversion in one multi-step calculation.

a. 43.007 ng to kg
b. 1005 in to ft
c. 12 mi to km

Answer a

$4.3007 \times 10^{-11} kg$

Answer b

$83.75\, ft$

Answer c

$19\, km$

SUMMARY

In multi-step conversion problems, the previous unit is canceled for each step and the next unit in the sequence is produced, each successive unit canceling out until only the unit needed in the answer is left.

1.16: Units Raised to a Power

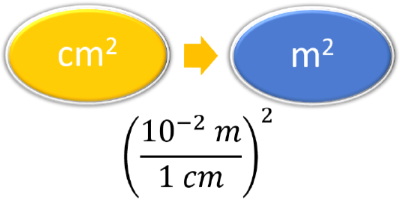
Learning Objectives

- To convert a value reported in one unit raised to a power of 10, to a corresponding value in a different unit raised to the same power of 10, using conversion factors.

Conversion factors for area and volume can also be produced by the dimensional analysis method. Just remember that if a quantity is raised to a power of 10, both the number and the unit must be raised to the same power of 10. For example, to convert 1500 cm^2 to m^2, we need to start with the relationship between centimeter and meter. We know that 1 cm = 10^{-2} m or 100 cm =1 m, but since we are given the quantity in 1500 cm^2, then we have to use the relationship:

$$1\ cm^2 = (10^{-2}\ m)^2 = 10^{-4}\ m^2$$

CONCEPT MAP



To convert centimeters squared to meters squared, use the conversion factor 0.01 meters per 1 centimeter, squared overall

CALCULATION

$$1500\ \cancel{cm}^2 \times \left(\frac{10^{-2}\ m}{1\ \cancel{cm}}\right)^2 = 0.15\ m^2$$

or

$$1500\ \cancel{cm}^2 \times \left(\frac{1\ m}{100\ \cancel{cm}}\right)^2 = 0.15\ m^2$$

or

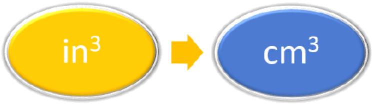
$$1500\ \cancel{cm}^2 \times \frac{1\ m^2}{10,000\ \cancel{cm^2}} = 0.15\ m^2$$

✓ Example 1.16.1: Unit Conversions

An object has a volume of 432 cubic inches (in^3). What is this volume in cubic cm (cm^3)?

Solution

Steps for Problem Solving	**An object has a volume of 432 cubic inches (in^3). What is this volume in cubic cm (cm^3)?**
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: volume = 432 in^3 Find: cm^3 (volume)
Identify necessary conversion factors.	1 inch = 2.54 cm (exact)

Steps for Problem Solving	**An object has a volume of 432 cubic inches (in^3). What is this volume in cubic cm (cm^3)?**
Prepare a concept map.	 $\left(\frac{2.54\ cm}{1\ in}\right)^3$ To convert inches cubed to centimeters cubed, use conversion factor 2.54 centimeters per 1 inch, cubed overall Alternatively, write out conversion factor (2.54 cm/1 in) three times.
Calculate.	$432\ \cancel{in^3}\left(\frac{2.54cm}{1\ \cancel{in}}\right)^3 = 7080 \times 10^3 cm^3$ or $432in^3 x \frac{2.52cm}{1in} x \frac{2.52cm}{1in} x \frac{2.52cm}{1in} = 7080 \times 10^3 cm^3$ (answer is reported with three significant figures)
Think about your result.	A centimeter is a smaller unit than an inch, so the answer in cubic centimeters is larger than the given value in cubic inches.

? Exercise 1.16.1

Lake Tahoe has a surface area of 191 square miles. What is the area in square km (km^2)?

Answer

495 km^2

Contributions & Attributions

- edited by Spencer Berger

1.16: Units Raised to a Power is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **2.8: Units Raised to a Power** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

1.17: Density

Learning Objectives

- Define density.
- Use density as a conversion factor.

Density is a physical property found by dividing the mass of an object by its volume. Regardless of the sample size, density is always constant. For example, the density of a pure sample of tungsten is always 19.25 grams per cubic centimeter. This means that whether you have one gram or one kilogram of the sample, the density will never vary. The equation for density is:

$$\text{Density} = \frac{\text{Mass}}{\text{Volume}}$$

Different substances have different densities. Pure water, for example, has a density of 0.998 g/cm^3 at 25° C. The average densities of some common substances are in Table $1.17.1$. Notice that corn oil has a lower mass to volume ratio than water. This means that when added to water, corn oil will "float."

Table 1.17.1: Densities of Common Substances

Substance	Density at 25°C (g/cm3)
blood	1.035
body fat	0.918
whole milk	1.030
corn oil	0.922
mayonnaise	0.910
honey	1.420

Density can be measured for all substances—solids, liquids and gases. For solids and liquids, density is often reported using the units of g/cm^3. Densities of gases, which are significantly lower than the densities of solids and liquids, are often given using units of g/L.

✓ Example 1.17.1: Ethyl Alcohol

Calculate the density of a 30.2 mL sample of ethyl alcohol with a mass of 23.71002 g

Solution

Solve for the density by dividing the mass by the volume:

$$density = \frac{23.71002\, g}{30.2\, mL} = 0.785\, g/mL$$

? Exercise 1.17.1

a. Find the density (in kg/L) of a sample that has a volume of 36.5 L and a mass of 10.0 kg.
b. If you have a 2.130 mL sample of acetic acid with mass 0.002234 kg, what is the density in kg/L?

Answer a

$0.274\, kg/L$

Answer b

$1.049\, kg/L$

Density as a Conversion Factor

Conversion factors can also be constructed for converting between different kinds of units. For example, density can be used to convert between the mass and the volume of a substance. Consider mercury, which is a liquid at room temperature and has a density of 13.6 g/mL. The density tells us that 13.6 g of mercury have a volume of 1 mL. We can write that relationship as follows:

13.6 g mercury = 1 mL mercury

This relationship can be used to construct two conversion factors:

$$\frac{13.6\ g}{1\ mL} = 1$$

and

$$\frac{1\ mL}{13.6\ g} = 1$$

Which one do we use? It depends, as usual, on the units we need to cancel and introduce. For example, suppose we want to know the mass of 2.0 mL of mercury. We would use the conversion factor that has milliliters on the bottom (so that the milliliter unit cancels) and grams on top, so that our final answer has a unit of mass:

$$2.0\ \cancel{\text{mL}} \times \frac{13.6\ \text{g}}{1\ \cancel{\text{mL}}} = 27.2\ \text{g} = 27\ \text{g}$$

In the last step, we limit our final answer to two significant figures because the volume quantity has only two significant figures; the 1 in the volume unit is considered an exact number, so it does not affect the number of significant figures. The other conversion factor would be useful if we were given a mass and asked to find volume, as the following example illustrates.

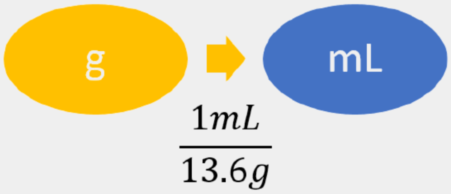
> *Density can be used as a conversion factor between mass and volume.*

✓ Example 1.17.2: Mercury Thermometer Steps for Problem Solving

A mercury thermometer for measuring a patient's temperature contains 0.750 g of mercury. What is the volume of this mass of mercury?

Solution

Solution to Example 2.9.2

Steps for Problem Solving	**Unit Conversion**
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 0.750 g Find: mL
List other known quantities.	13.6 g/mL (density of mercury)
Prepare a concept map.	
Calculate.	$0.750\ \cancel{\text{g}} \times \frac{1\ \text{mL}}{13.6\ \cancel{\text{g}}} = 0.055147\ldots\ \text{mL} \approx 0.0551\ \text{mL}$ We have limited the final answer to three significant figures.

? Exercise 1.17.2

What is the volume of 100.0 g of air if its density is 1.3 g/L?

Answer

$77\ L$

Summary

- Density is defined as the mass of an object divided by its volume.
- Density can be used as a conversion factor between mass and volume.

Contributions & Attributions

- edited by Spencer Berger

1.17: Density is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **2.9: Density** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

2: Module 2 - Atoms and Bonding

2.1: Indivisible - The Atomic Theory

Learning Objectives

- Summarize Dalton's atomic theory and explain its historical development.

Dalton's Atomic Theory

The modern atomic theory, proposed about 1803 by the English chemist John Dalton (Figure $2.1.1$), is a fundamental concept that states that all elements are composed of atoms. Individual atoms are extremely small; even the largest atom has an approximate diameter of only 5.4×10^{-10} m. With that size, it takes over 18 million of these atoms, lined up side by side, to equal the width of your little finger (about 1 cm).

Dalton studied the weights of various elements and compounds. He noticed that matter always combined in fixed ratios based on weight, or volume in the case of gases. Chemical compounds always contain the same proportion of elements by mass, regardless of amount. Dalton also observed that there could be more than one combination of two elements.

From his experiments and observations, as well as the work from peers of his time, Dalton proposed a new theory of the **atom**. This later became known as Dalton's **atomic theory**. The four parts of Dalton's theory are as follows:

- All matter is composed of extremely small particles called atoms.
- Atoms of a given element are identical in size, mass, and other properties.
- Atoms cannot be subdivided, created, or destroyed.
- In chemical reactions, atoms are combined, separated, or rearranged.

Dalton's atomic theory has been largely accepted by the scientific community, with the exception of three changes. We know now that (1) an atom can be further subdivided, (2) all atoms of an element are not identical in mass, and (3) using nuclear fission and fusion techniques, we can create or destroy atoms by changing them into other atoms.

Contributions and Attributions

- edited by Spencer Berger

2.2: The Nuclear Atom

Learning Objectives

- Explain the observations that led to Thomson's discovery of the electron.
- Describe Thomson's "plum pudding" model of the atom and the evidence for it.
- Describe Rutherford's gold foil experiment and explain how this experiment altered the "plum pudding" model.
- Draw a diagram of the Rutherford model of the atom and label the nucleus and the electron cloud.

Dalton's atomic theory stated that atoms were the smallest particles of matter and could not be subdivided. However, in 1897, a scientist named J. J. Thomson conducted some research that suggested that Dalton's Atomic Theory was not the entire story. He conducted experiments with a cathode ray tube and found that the cathode rays bent towards a positively charged plate, meaning that the cathode ray had a negative charge. The cathode rays also had a mass that was much smaller than the mass of the lightest element.

Thomson suggested that the small, negatively charged particles making up the cathode ray were actually pieces of atoms. He called these pieces "corpuscles," although today we know them as **electrons**. Thanks to his clever experiments and careful reasoning, J. J. Thomson is credited with the discovery of the electron.

Figure 2.2.1: J. J. Thomson (center) concluded experiments that suggested that Dalton's (left) atomic theory was not telling the entire story. Ernest Rutherford (right) later built on Thomson's work to argue for the model nuclear atom.

Electrons and Plums

Following the discovery of the electron, J.J. Thomson developed what became known as the "**plum pudding**" model in 1904. Plum pudding is an English dessert similar to a blueberry muffin. In Thomson's plum pudding model of the atom, the electrons were embedded in a uniform sphere of positive charge like blueberries stuck into a muffin. The positive matter was thought to be jelly-like or similar to a thick soup. The electrons were somewhat mobile. As they got closer to the outer portion of the atom, the positive charge in the region was greater than the neighboring negative charges, and the electron would be pulled back more toward the center region of the atom.

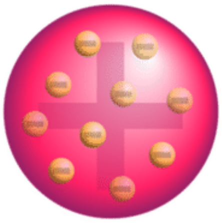


Figure 2.2.2: The "plum pudding" model.

However, this model of the atom soon gave way to a new model developed by New Zealander Ernest Rutherford (1871-1937) about five years later. Thomson did still receive many honors during his lifetime, including being awarded the Nobel Prize in Physics in 1906 and a knighthood in 1908.

Atoms and Gold

In 1911, Rutherford and coworkers Hans Geiger and Ernest Marsden initiated a series of groundbreaking experiments that would completely change the accepted model of the atom. They bombarded very thin sheets of gold foil with fast moving **alpha particles**. Alpha particles, a type of natural radioactive particle, are positively charged particles with a mass about four times that of a hydrogen atom.

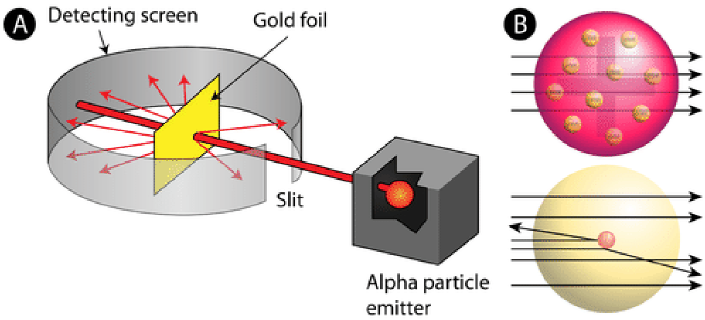


Figure $2.2.3$: (A) The experimental setup for Rutherford's gold foil experiment: A radioactive element that emitted alpha particles was directed toward a thin sheet of gold foil that was surrounded by a screen which would allow detection of the deflected particles. (B) According to the plum pudding model (top), all of the alpha particles should have passed through the gold foil with little or no deflection. Rutherford found that a small percentage of alpha particles were deflected at large angles, which could be explained by an atom with a very small, dense, positively-charged nucleus at its center (bottom).

According to the accepted atomic model, in which an atom's mass and charge are uniformly distributed throughout the atom, the scientists expected that all of the alpha particles would pass through the gold foil with only a slight deflection or none at all. Surprisingly, while most of the alpha particles were indeed not deflected, a very small percentage (about 1 in 8000 particles) bounced off the gold foil at very large angles. Some were even redirected back toward the source. No prior knowledge had prepared them for this discovery. In a famous quote, Rutherford exclaimed that it was "as if you had fired a 15-inch [artillery] shell at a piece of tissue and it came back and hit you."

Rutherford needed to come up with an entirely new model of the atom in order to explain his results. Because the vast majority of the alpha particles had passed through the gold, he reasoned that most of the atom was empty space. In contrast, the particles that were highly deflected must have experienced a tremendously powerful force within the atom. He concluded that all of the positive charge and the majority of the mass of the atom must be concentrated in a very small space in the atom's interior, which he called the nucleus. The **nucleus** is the tiny, dense, central core of the atom and is composed of protons and neutrons.

Rutherford's atomic model became known as the **nuclear model**. In the nuclear atom, the protons and neutrons, which comprise nearly all of the mass of the atom, are located in the nucleus at the center of the atom. The electrons are distributed around the nucleus and occupy most of the volume of the atom. It is worth emphasizing just how small the nucleus is compared to the rest of the atom. If we could blow up an atom to be the size of a large professional football stadium, the nucleus would be about the size of a marble.

Rutherford's model proved to be an important step towards a full understanding of the atom. However, it did not completely address the nature of the electrons and the way in which they occupy the vast space around the nucleus. It was not until some years later that a full understanding of the electron was achieved. This proved to be the key to understanding the chemical properties of elements.

Atomic Nucleus

The **nucleus** (plural, nuclei) is a positively charged region at the center of the atom. It consists of two types of subatomic particles packed tightly together. The particles are protons, which have a positive electric charge, and neutrons, which are neutral in electric charge. Outside of the nucleus, an atom is mostly empty space, with orbiting negative particles called electrons whizzing through it. The figure below shows these parts of the atom.

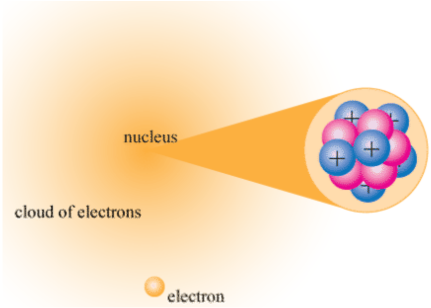


Figure 2.2.4: The nuclear atom.

The nucleus of the atom is extremely small. Its radius is only about 1/100,000 of the total radius of the atom. Electrons have virtually no mass, but protons and neutrons have a lot of mass for their size. As a result, the nucleus has virtually all the mass of an atom. Given its great mass and tiny size, the nucleus is very dense. If an object the size of a penny had the same density as the nucleus of an atom, its mass would be greater than 30 million tons!

Summary

- Thomson's cathode ray tube experiment showed that all atoms contain negatively charged particles. This led to the development of the plum pudding model of the atom.
- Rutherford's gold foil experiment showed that some of the alpha particles were deflected. This suggested that most of the mass of the atom was in the center and led to the nuclear model of the atom.
- The nuclear model of the atom consists of a small and dense positively charged interior surrounded by a cloud of electrons.

Contributions and Attributions

- edited by Spencer Berger

2.3: The Properties of Protons, Neutrons, and Electrons

Learning Objectives

- Describe the locations, charges, and masses of the three main subatomic particles (electrons, protons, and neutrons).
- Define atomic mass unit (amu).

Atoms contain three types of subatomic particles: electrons, protons, and neutrons.

Electrons

Electrons are one of three main types of particles that make up atoms. Electrons are extremely small. The mass of an electron is only about 1/2000 the mass of a proton or neutron, so electrons contribute virtually nothing to the total mass of an atom. Electrons have an electric charge of -1, which is equal but opposite to the charge of a proton, which is $+1$. All atoms have the same number of electrons as protons, so the positive and negative charges "cancel out", making atoms electrically neutral.

Protons and neutrons are located inside the nucleus at the center of the atom and electrons are found outside the nucleus. Because opposite electric charges attract one another, negative electrons are attracted to the positive nucleus. This force of attraction keeps electrons constantly moving through the otherwise empty space around the nucleus.

Figure $2.3.1$: Electrons are much smaller than protons or neutrons. If an electron was the mass of a penny, a proton or a neutron would have the mass of a large bowling ball!

Protons

Protons are found in the nucleus of the atom. This is a tiny, dense region at the center of the atom. Protons have a positive electrical charge of one $(+1)$ and a mass of 1 atomic mass unit (amu), which is about 1.67×10^{-27} kilograms. Together with neutrons, they make up virtually all of the mass of an atom.

Neutrons

Atoms of all elements—except for most atoms of hydrogen—have neutrons in their nucleus. Unlike protons and electrons, which are electrically charged, neutrons have no charge—they are electrically neutral. The mass of a neutron is slightly greater than the mass of a proton, which is 1 atomic mass unit (amu). (An atomic mass unit equals about 1.67×10^{-27} kilograms.) A neutron also has about the same diameter as a proton, or 1.7×10^{-15} meters.

Electrons have an extremely small mass compared to protons and neutrons. Because protons and neutrons are so much more massive than electrons, almost all of the mass of any atom comes from the nucleus, which contains all of the neutrons and protons. Table $2.3.1$ below gives the properties and locations of electrons, protons, and neutrons. The third column shows the masses of the three subatomic particles in "atomic mass units." An **atomic mass unit (amu)** is defined as one-twelfth of the mass of a carbon-12 atom. Protons and neutrons each have a mass of approximately 1 amu.

Table $2.3.1$: Properties of Subatomic Particles

Particle	Symbol	Mass (amu)	Mass Number	Relative Charge	Location
proton	p^+	1	1	+1	inside the nucleus
electron	e^-	5.45×10^{-4}	0	−1	outside the nucleus

Particle	Symbol	Mass (amu)	Mass Number	Relative Charge	Location
neutron	n^0	1	1	0	inside the nucleus

Summary

- Electrons are a type of subatomic particle with a negative charge.
- Protons are a type of subatomic particle with a positive charge. Protons are located in the nucleus of the atom.
- Neutrons are a type of subatomic particle with no charge (they are neutral). Neutrons are located in the nucleus of the atom.
- Most of the mass of the atom (over 99%) comes from the protons and neutrons.

Contributions and Attributions

- edited by Spencer Berger

- **4.4: The Properties of Protons, Neutrons, and Electrons** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

2.4: Elements- Defined by Their Number of Protons

Learning Objectives

- Define atomic number.
- Define mass number.
- Determine the number of protons, neutrons, and electrons in an atom.

Atomic Number

Each atom has a unique number of protons. All hydrogen atoms have one proton, all helium atoms have two protons, and all carbon atoms have six protons. The number of protons in an atom is called its **atomic number** (Z).

Table $2.4.1$: Atoms of the First Six Elements

Name	Protons	Neutrons	Electrons	Atomic Number (Z)	Mass Number (A)
Hydrogen	1	0	1	1	1
Helium	2	2	2	2	4
Lithium	3	4	3	3	7
Beryllium	4	5	4	4	9
Boron	5	6	5	5	11
Carbon	6	6	6	6	12

Since neutral atoms have to have one electron for every proton, an element's atomic number also tells you how many electrons are in a neutral atom of that element. For example, hydrogen has an atomic number of 1. This means that an atom of hydrogen has one proton, and, if it's neutral, one electron as well. Gold, on the other hand, has an atomic number of 79, which means that an atom of gold has 79 protons, and, if it's neutral, 79 electrons as well.

Neutral Atoms

Atoms are neutral in electrical charge because they have the same number of negative electrons as positive protons (Table $2.4.1$). Therefore, the atomic number of an atom also tells you how many electrons the atom has. This, in turn, determines many of the atom's chemical properties.

Mass Number

The **mass number** (A) of an atom is the total number of protons and neutrons in its nucleus. The mass of the atom is a unit called the atomic mass unit (amu). One atomic mass unit is the mass of a proton, or about 1.67×10^{-27} kilograms, which is an extremely small mass. A neutron has just a tiny bit more mass than a proton, but its mass is often assumed to be one atomic mass unit as well. Because electrons have virtually no mass, just about all the mass of an atom is in its protons and neutrons. Therefore, the total number of protons and neutrons in an atom determines its mass in atomic mass units (Table $2.4.1$).

Consider helium again. Most helium atoms have two neutrons in addition to two protons. Therefore the mass of most helium atoms is 4 atomic mass units ($2\ \mathrm{amu}$ for the protons + $2\ \mathrm{amu}$ for the neutrons). However, some helium atoms have more or less than two neutrons. Atoms with the same number of protons but different numbers of neutrons are called isotopes. Because the number of neutrons can vary for a given element, the mass numbers of different atoms of an element may also vary. For example, some helium atoms have three neutrons instead of two (these are called isotopes and are discussed in detail later on).

$$\text{mass number } A = (\text{number of protons}) + (\text{number of neutrons})$$

Example 2.5.1

What is the mass number of an atom of helium that contains 2 neutrons?

Solution

$(\text{number of protons}) = 2$ (Remember that an atom of helium always has 2 protons.)

$(\text{number of neutrons}) = 2$

$\text{mass number} = (\text{number of protons}) + (\text{number of neutrons})$

$$\text{mass number} = \mathbf{2+2=4}$$

Summary

- Each element has a unique number of protons. An element's atomic number is equal to the number of protons in the nuclei of any of its atoms.
- The mass number of an atom is the sum of the protons and neutrons in the atom.

Contributions and Attributions

- edited by Spencer Berger

2.5: Ions - Losing and Gaining Electrons

Learning Objectives

- Define cations and anions.
- Determine the charge on an ion using the number of protons or electrons.
- Predict ion charges of main group elements.

Ions are atoms (or groups of atoms) that have a charge due to losing or gaining electrons.

Main group atoms with one, two, or three valence electrons can lose those valence electrons to obtain an octet, or noble gas electron configuration. Losing electrons results in a positive charge as a result because there are fewer negatively charged electrons to balance the positive charges of the protons in the nucleus. Positively charged ions are called **cations**. Metal atoms typically form cations.

Cations

A neutral sodium atom is likely to achieve an octet in its outermost shell by losing its one valence electron.

$$\mathrm{Na} \rightarrow \mathrm{Na}^{+} + \mathrm{e}^{-}$$

The cation produced in this way, Na^+, is called the sodium ion to distinguish it from the element. The outermost shell of the sodium ion is the second electron shell, which has eight electrons in it. The octet rule has been satisfied. Figure $2.5.1$ is a graphical depiction of this process.

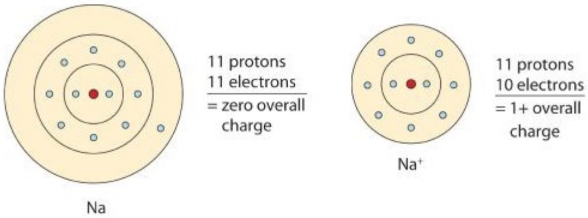


Figure $2.5.1$: The Formation of a Sodium Ion. On the left, a sodium atom has 11 electrons. On the right, the sodium ion only has 10 electrons and a 1+ charge.

Neutral sodium atom on left has 11 protons and 11 electrons. Sodium ion on right has 11 protons and 10 electrons, with a +1 overall charge.

Anions

Main group atoms with five, six, or seven valence electrons can gain additional valence electrons until they have an octet. When these atoms gain electrons, they acquire a negative charge because they now possess more electrons than protons. Negatively charged ions are called **anions**. Most nonmetal atoms form ions.

For example, neutral chlorine atom has seven electrons in its outermost shell. Only one more electron is needed to achieve an octet in chlorine’s valence shell. (In table salt, this electron comes from the sodium atom.)

$$\mathrm{e}^{-} + \mathrm{Cl} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Cl}^{-}$$

In this case, the ion has the same outermost shell as the original atom, but now that shell has eight electrons in it. Once again, the octet rule has been satisfied. The resulting anion, Cl^-, is called the chloride ion; note the change in the suffix (-*ide* instead of -*ine*) to create the name of this anion. Figure $2.5.2$ is a graphical depiction of this process.

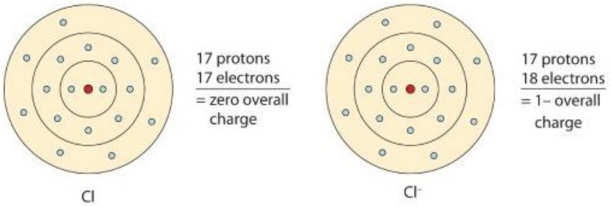


Figure 2.5.2: The Formation of a Chlorine Ion. On the left, the chlorine atom has 17 electrons. On the right, the chloride ion has 18 electrons and has a 1− charge.

Neutral chlorine atom on left has 17 protons and 17 electrons. Sodium ion on right has 17 protons and 18 electrons, with a -1 overall charge.

> *The names for positive and negative ions are pronounced CAT-eye-ons and AN-eye-ons, respectively.*

Elements that belong to the same group (vertical column) on the periodic table often form ions with the same charge because they have the same number of valence electrons. Thus, the periodic table becomes a tool for remembering the charges on many main-group ions. For example, all ions made from alkali metals, the first column on the periodic table, have a 1+ charge. Ions made from alkaline earth metals, the second group on the periodic table, have a 2+ charge. On the other side of the periodic table, the next-to-last column, the halogens, form ions having a 1− charge. Figure 2.5.3 shows how the charge on many ions can be predicted by the location of an element on the periodic table. Note the convention of first writing the number and then the sign on a ion with multiple charges (example: barium cation is written Ba^{2+}, not Ba^{+2}).

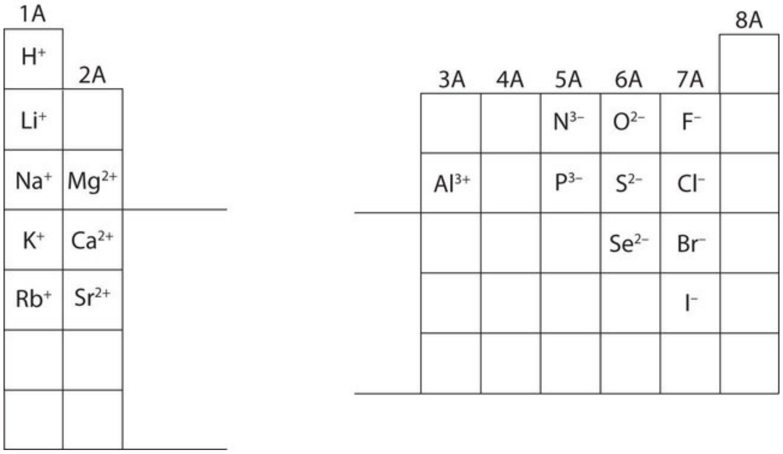


Figure 2.5.3: Predicting Ionic Charges. The charge that an atom acquires when it becomes an ion is related to the structure of the periodic table. Within a group (family) of elements, atoms form ions of a certain charge.

Contributions & Attributions

- edited by Spencer Berger

2.5: Ions - Losing and Gaining Electrons is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **4.7: Ions - Losing and Gaining Electrons** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

2.6: Isotopes - When the Number of Neutrons Varies

Learning Objectives

- Explain what isotopes are and how an isotope affects an element's atomic mass.
- Determine the number of protons, electrons, and neutrons of an element with a given mass number.

All atoms of the same element have the same number of protons, but some may have different numbers of neutrons. For example, all carbon atoms have six protons, and most have six neutrons as well. But some carbon atoms have seven or eight neutrons instead of the usual six. Atoms of the same element that differ in their numbers of neutrons are called **isotopes**. Many isotopes occur naturally. Usually one or two isotopes of an element are the most stable and common. Different isotopes of an element generally have the same physical and chemical properties because they have the same numbers of protons and electrons.

An Example: Hydrogen Isotopes

Hydrogen is an example of an element that has isotopes. Three isotopes of hydrogen are modeled in Figure $2.6.1$. Most hydrogen atoms have just one proton, one electron, and lack a neutron. These atoms are just called hydrogen. Some hydrogen atoms have one neutron as well. These atoms are the isotope named deuterium. Other hydrogen atoms have two neutrons. These atoms are the isotope named tritium.

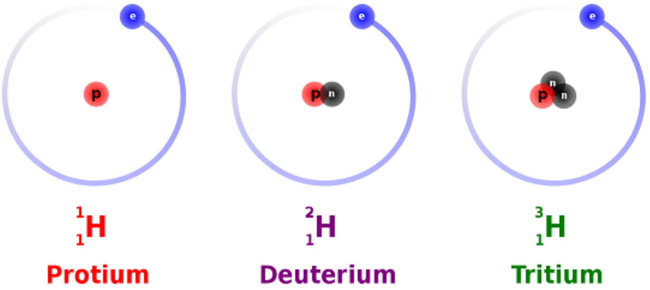


Figure $2.6.1$: The three most stable isotopes of hydrogen: protium (A = 1), deuterium (A = 2), and tritium (A = 3). (CC SA-BY 3.0; Balajijagadesh via Wikipedia).

For most elements other than hydrogen, isotopes are named for their mass number. For example, carbon atoms with the usual 6 neutrons have a mass number of 12 (6 protons + 6 neutrons = 12), so they are called carbon-12. Carbon atoms with 7 neutrons have an atomic mass of 13 (6 protons + 7 neutrons = 13). These atoms are the isotope called carbon-13.

Example $2.6.1$: Lithium Isotopes

a. What is the atomic number and the mass number of an isotope of lithium containing 3 neutrons?
b. What is the atomic number and the mass number of an isotope of lithium containing 4 neutrons?

Solution

A lithium atom contains 3 protons in its nucleus irrespective of the number of neutrons or electrons.

a.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{atomic number} = (\text{number of protons}) &= 3 \\ (\text{number of neutrons}) &= 3\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{mass number} &= (\text{number of protons}) + (\text{number of neutrons}) \\ \text{mass number} &= 3 + 3 \\ &= 6\end{aligned}$$

b.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{atomic number} = (\text{number of protons}) &= 3 \\ (\text{number of neutrons}) &= 4\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{mass number } &= (\text{number of protons}) + (\text{number of neutrons}) \\ \text{mass number } &= 3 + 4 \\ &= 7 \end{aligned}$$

Notice that because the lithium atom always has 3 protons, the atomic number for lithium is always 3. The mass number, however, is 6 in the isotope with 3 neutrons, and 7 in the isotope with 4 neutrons. In nature, only certain isotopes exist. For instance, lithium exists as an isotope with 3 neutrons, and as an isotope with 4 neutrons, but it doesn't exist as an isotope with 2 neutrons or as an isotope with 5 neutrons.

Stability of Isotopes

Atoms need a certain ratio of neutrons to protons to have a stable nucleus. Having too many or too few neutrons relative to protons results in an unstable, or radioactive, nucleus that will sooner or later break down to a more stable form. This process is called radioactive decay. Many isotopes have radioactive nuclei, and these isotopes are referred to as radioisotopes. When they decay, they release particles that may be harmful. This is why radioactive isotopes are dangerous and why working with them requires special suits for protection. The isotope of carbon known as carbon-14 is an example of a radioisotope. In contrast, the carbon isotopes called carbon-12 and carbon-13 are stable.

This whole discussion of isotopes brings us back to Dalton's Atomic Theory. According to Dalton, atoms of a given element are identical. But if atoms of a given element can have different numbers of neutrons, then they can have different masses as well! How did Dalton miss this? It turns out that elements found in nature exist as constant uniform mixtures of their naturally occurring isotopes. In other words, a piece of lithium always contains both types of naturally occurring lithium (the type with 3 neutrons and the type with 4 neutrons). Moreover, it always contains the two in the same relative amounts (or "relative abundance"). In a chunk of lithium, 93% will always be lithium with 4 neutrons, while the remaining 7% will always be lithium with 3 neutrons.

Dalton always experimented with large chunks of an element—chunks that contained all of the naturally occurring isotopes of that element. As a result, when he performed his measurements, he was actually observing the averaged properties of all the different isotopes in the sample. For most of our purposes in chemistry, we will do the same thing and deal with the average mass of the atoms. Luckily, aside from having different masses, most other properties of different isotopes are similar.

There are two main ways in which scientists frequently show the mass number of an atom they are interested in. It is important to note that the mass number is *not* given on the periodic table. These two ways include writing a nuclear symbol or by giving the name of the element with the mass number written.

To write a **nuclear symbol**, the mass number is placed at the upper left (superscript) of the chemical symbol and the atomic number is placed at the lower left (subscript) of the symbol. The complete nuclear symbol for helium-4 is drawn below:

Nuclear symbol for helium-4: The element symbol is He, the mass number to the top left is 4, and the atomic number to the bottom left is 2

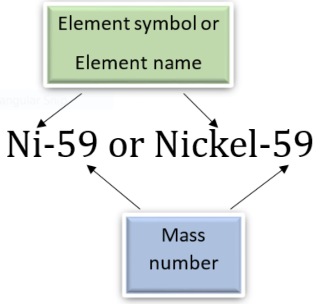
The following nuclear symbols are for a nickel nucleus with 31 neutrons and a uranium nucleus with 146 neutrons.

$$^{59}_{28}\text{Ni}$$

$$^{238}_{92}\text{U}$$

In the nickel nucleus represented above, the atomic number 28 indicates that the nucleus contains 28 protons, and therefore, it must contain 31 neutrons in order to have a mass number of 59. The uranium nucleus has 92 protons, as all uranium nuclei do; and this particular uranium nucleus has 146 neutrons.

Another way of representing isotopes is by adding a hyphen and the mass number to the chemical name or symbol. Thus the two nuclei would be Nickel-59 or Ni-59 and Uranium-238 or U-238, where 59 and 238 are the mass numbers of the two atoms, respectively. Note that the mass numbers (not the number of neutrons) are given to the side of the name.



✓ Example 2.6.2: Potassium-40

How many protons, electrons, and neutrons are in an atom of $^{40}_{19}\text{K}$?

Solution

$$\text{atomic number} = (\text{number of protons}) = 19$$

For all atoms with no charge, the number of electrons is equal to the number of protons.

$$\text{number of electrons} = 19$$

The mass number, 40, is the sum of the protons and the neutrons.

To find the number of neutrons, subtract the number of protons from the mass number.

$$\text{number of neutrons} = 40 - 19 = 21.$$

✓ Example 2.6.3: Zinc-65

How many protons, electrons, and neutrons are in an atom of zinc-65?

Solution

$$\text{number of protons} = 30$$

For all atoms with no charge, the number of electrons is equal to the number of protons.

$$\text{number of electrons} = 30$$

The mass number, 65, is the sum of the protons and the neutrons.

To find the number of neutrons, subtract the number of protons from the mass number.

$$\text{number of neutrons} = 65 - 30 = 35$$

? Exercise 2.6.3

How many protons, electrons, and neutrons are in each atom?

a. $^{60}_{27}\text{Co}$
b. Na-24
c. $^{45}_{20}\text{Ca}$
d. Sr-90

Answer a:

27 protons, 27 electrons, 33 neutrons

Answer b:

11 protons, 11 electrons, 13 neutrons

Answer c:

20 protons, 20 electrons, 25 neutrons

Answer d:

38 protons, 38 electrons, 52 neutrons

Summary

- The number of protons is always the same in atoms of the same element.
- The number of neutrons can be different, even in atoms of the same element.
- Atoms of the same element that contain the same number of protons, but different numbers of neutrons, are known as **isotopes**.
- Isotopes of any given element all contain the same number of protons, so they have the same atomic number (for example, the atomic number of helium is always 2).
- Isotopes of a given element contain different numbers of neutrons, therefore, different isotopes have different mass numbers.

2.7: Atomic Mass - The Average Mass of an Element’s Atoms

Learning Objectives

- Explain what is meant by the atomic mass of an element.
- Calculate the atomic mass of an element from the masses and relative percentages of the isotopes of the element.

In chemistry we very rarely deal with only one isotope of an element. We use a mixture of the isotopes of an element in chemical reactions and other aspects of chemistry, because all of the isotopes of an element react in the same manner. That means that we rarely need to worry about the mass of a specific isotope, but instead we need to know the average mass of the atoms of an element. Using the masses of the different isotopes and how abundant each isotope is, we can find the average mass of the atoms of an element. The **atomic mass** of an element is the weighted average mass of the atoms in a naturally occurring sample of the element. Atomic mass is typically reported in atomic mass units.

Calculating Atomic Mass

You can calculate the atomic mass (or average mass) of an element provided you know the **relative abundance** (the fraction of an element that is a given isotope), the element's naturally occurring isotopes, and the masses of those different isotopes. We can calculate this by the following equation:

$$\text{Atomic mass} = \left(\%_1\right)\left(\text{mass}_1\right) + \left(\%_2\right)\left(\text{mass}_2\right) + \cdots$$

Look carefully to see how this equation is used in the following examples.

Example 2.7.1: Boron Isotopes

Boron has two naturally occurring isotopes. In a sample of boron, 20% of the atoms are B-10, which is an isotope of boron with 5 neutrons and mass of 10 amu. The other 80% of the atoms are B-11, which is an isotope of boron with 6 neutrons and a mass of 11 amu. What is the atomic mass of boron?

Solution

Boron has two isotopes. We will use the equation:

$$\text{Atomic mass} = \left(\%_1\right)\left(\text{mass}_1\right) + \left(\%_2\right)\left(\text{mass}_2\right) + \cdots$$

- Isotope 1: $\%_1 = 0.20$ (Write all percentages as decimals), $\text{mass}_1 = 10$
- Isotope 2: $\%_2 = 0.80$, $\text{mass}_2 = 11$

Substitute these into the equation, and we get:

$$\text{Atomic mass} = \left(0.20\right)\left(10\right) + \left(0.80\right)\left(11\right)$$

$$\text{Atomic mass} = 10.8 \text{ amu}$$

The mass of an average boron atom, and thus boron's atomic mass, is 10.8 amu

Example 2.7.2: Neon Isotopes

Neon has three naturally occurring isotopes. In a sample of neon, 90.92% of the atoms are Ne-20, which is an isotope of neon with 10 neutrons and a mass of 19.99 amu Another 0.3% of the atoms are Ne-21, which is an isotope of neon with 11 neutrons and a mass of 20.99 amu The final 8.85% of the atoms are Ne-22, which is an isotope of neon with 12 neutrons and a mass of 21.99 amu What is the atomic mass of neon?

Solution

Neon has three isotopes. We will use the equation:

$$\text{Atomic mass} = \left(\%_1\right)\left(\text{mass}_1\right) + \left(\%_2\right)\left(\text{mass}_2\right) + \cdots$$

- Isotope 1: $\%_1 = 0.9092$ (write all percentages as decimals), $\text{mass}_1 = 19.99$

- Isotope 2: $\%_2 = 0.003$, $\text{mass}_2 = 20.99$
- Isotope 3: $\%_3 = 0.0885$, $\text{mass}_3 = 21.99$

Substitute these into the equation, and we get:

$$\text{Atomic mass} = (0.9092)(19.99) + (0.003)(20.99) + (0.0885)(21.99)$$

$$\text{Atomic mass} = 20.17 \text{ amu}$$

The mass of an average neon atom is $\mathbf{20.17}$ amu

The periodic table gives the atomic mass of each element. The atomic mass is a number that usually appears below the element's symbol in each square. Notice that the atomic mass of boron (symbol B) is 10.8, which is what we calculated in Example $2.7.1$, and the atomic mass of neon (symbol Ne) is 20.8, which is what we calculated in Example $2.7.2$. Take time to notice that not all periodic tables have the atomic number above the element's symbol and the mass number below it. If you are ever confused, remember that the atomic number should always be the smaller of the two and will be a whole number, while the atomic mass should always be the larger of the two and will be a decimal number.

? Exercise 2.7.1

Chlorine has two naturally occurring isotopes. In a sample of chlorine, 75.77% of the atoms are Cl-35, with a mass of 34.97 amu Another 24.23% of the atoms are Cl-37, with a mass of 36.97 amu What is the atomic mass of chlorine?

Answer

35.45 amu

Summary

- An element's atomic mass is the weighted average of the masses of the isotopes of an element
- An element's atomic mass can be calculated provided the relative abundance of the element's naturally occurring isotopes and the masses of those isotopes are known.
- The periodic table is a convenient way to summarize information about the different elements. In addition to the element's symbol, most periodic tables will also contain the element's atomic number and the element's atomic mass.

2.8: The Bohr Model - Atoms with Orbits

Learning Objectives

- Define an energy level in terms of the Bohr model.
- Discuss how the Bohr model can be used to explain atomic spectra.

In our previous model of the atom, protons and neutrons are in the nucleus, and electrons are somewhere outside the nucleus. Rutherford proposed that the electrons circled the nucleus in a planetary type motion. The solar system or planetary model of the atom was attractive to scientists because it was similar to something with which they were already familiar, namely the solar system. However, this model is not entirely correct and does not explain why each element has a unique emission spectrum.

Each Element Has a Unique Spectrum

When hydrogen gas is placed into a tube and electric current passed through it, the color of emitted light is pink. But when the color is spread out, we see that the hydrogen spectrum is composed of four individual frequencies. The pink color of the tube is the result of our eyes blending the four colors. Every atom has its own characteristic spectrum; no two atomic spectra are alike. The **emission spectrum** (or **atomic spectrum**) of a chemical element is the unique pattern of light obtained when the element is subjected to heat or electricity.

Figure 2.8.2: Atomic Emission Spectrum of Hydrogen.

The image below shows the emission spectrum of iron. Each element has a unique emission spectrum.

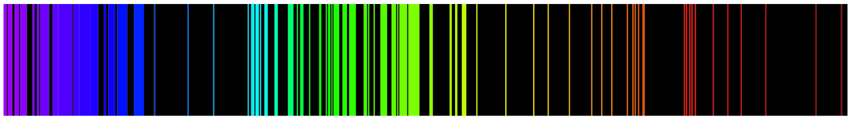


Figure 2.8.3: Atomic Emission Spectrum of Iron.

Bohr's Model of the Atom

By 1913, the concept of the atom had evolved from Dalton's indivisible spheres idea, to J. J. Thomson's plum pudding model, and then to Rutherford's nuclear model.

Figure 2.8.3: Niels Bohr with Albert Einstein at Paul Ehrenfest's home in Leiden (December 1925)

In 1913, the Danish physicist Niels Bohr proposed a model of the electron cloud of an atom in which electrons orbit the nucleus and were able to produce atomic spectra. Understanding Bohr's model requires some knowledge of electromagnetic radiation (or light).

Energy Levels

Bohr's key idea in his model of the atom is that electrons occupy definite orbitals that require the electron to have a specific amount of energy. In order for an electron to be in the electron cloud of an atom, it must be in one of the allowable orbitals and it must have the precise energy required for that orbit. Orbits closer to the nucleus would require smaller amounts of energy for an electron, and orbits farther from the nucleus would require the electron to have a greater amount of energy. Remember that the electron has a negative charge, so it is attracted to the positive charged nucleus. Moving the electron farther away from the positively charged nucleus requires an input of energy. The possible orbits are known as **energy levels**.

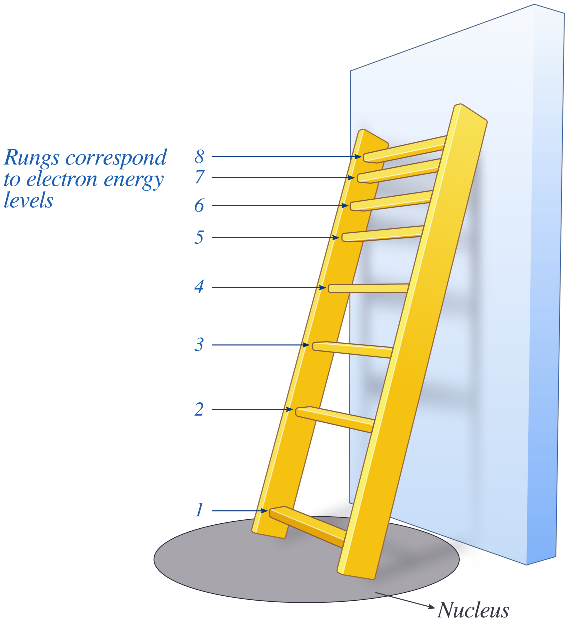


Figure 2.8.4: The energy levels of the electrons can be viewed as rungs on a ladder. Note that the spacing between rungs gets smaller at higher energies (CC BY-NC; Ümit Kaya)

Bohr hypothesized that the only way electrons could gain or lose energy would be to move from one energy level to another, thus gaining or losing precise amounts of energy. The energy levels are **quantized**, meaning that only specific amounts are possible. It would be like a ladder that had rungs only at certain heights. The only way you can be on that ladder is to be on one of the rungs, and the only way you could move up or down would be to move to one of the other rungs. Bohr worked out rules for the maximum number of electrons that could be in each energy level in his model, and required that an atom in its normal state (ground state) had all electrons in the lowest energy levels available.

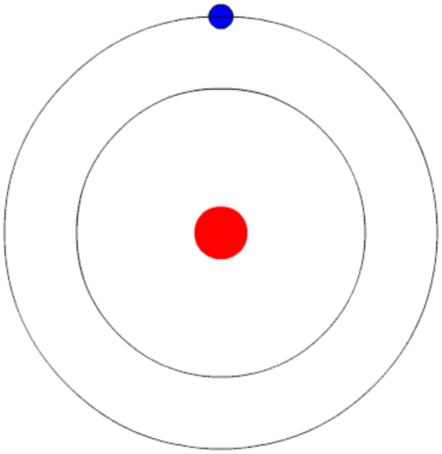


Figure 2.8.5: In Bohr's Model of the atom, electrons absorb energy to move to a higher level and release energy to move to lower levels. (CC BY-SA 3.0; Kurzon).

Bohr's Model and Atomic Spectra

The evidence used to support Bohr's model came from the atomic spectra. He suggested that an atomic spectrum is made by the electrons in an atom moving energy levels. The electrons typically have the lowest energy possible, called the **ground state**. If the electrons are given energy (through heat, electricity, light, etc.) the electrons in an atom could absorb energy by jumping to a higher energy level, or **excited state**. The electrons then give off the energy in the form of a piece of light—called a **photon**—that they had absorbed, to fall back to a lower energy level. The energy emitted by electrons dropping back to lower energy levels will always be precise amounts of energy, because the differences in energy levels are precise. This explains why you see specific lines of light when looking at an atomic spectrum—each line of light matches a specific "step down" that an electron can take in that atom. This also explains why each element produces a different atomic spectrum. Because each element has different acceptable energy levels for its electrons, the possible steps each element's electrons can take differ from all other elements.

Summary

- Bohr's model suggests each atom has a set of unchangeable energy levels, and electrons in the electron cloud of that atom must be in one of those energy levels.
- Bohr's model suggests that the atomic spectra of atoms is produced by electrons gaining energy from some source, jumping up to a higher energy level, then immediately dropping back to a lower energy level and emitting the energy difference between the two energy levels.
- The existence of the atomic spectra is support for Bohr's model of the atom.

Contributions and Attributions

- edited by Spencer Berger

2.8: The Bohr Model - Atoms with Orbits is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **9.4: The Bohr Model - Atoms with Orbits** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

2.9: Quantum-Mechanical Orbitals and Electron Configurations

Learning Objectives

- Write electron configurations for the first 18 elements.

Orbitals

Bohr's model of the atom said that electrons exists in specific orbits with specific energies. However, this model is not entirely correct. The quantum mechanical model of the atom tells us that we can only know the location of the electron in terms of its probability. Orbitals are 'probability maps' that describe the probability of finding an electron in a given region. In this class, we will focus on three types of orbitals: *s*, *p*, and *d* orbitals.

s Orbitals

s orbitals are spherical in shape. The diagram below shows the 1*s*, 2*s*, and 3*s* orbitals. As the principal quantum number, n, increases, the size and energy of the orbital increases (the 3*s* orbital is larger and higher in energy than the 1*s* orbital).

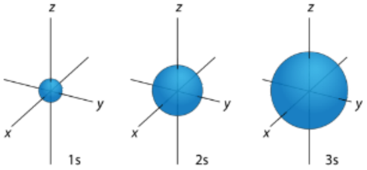


Figure 2.9.1: s orbitals are spherical.

p Orbitals

There are three *p*-orbitals. These orbitals have a dumbbell shape.

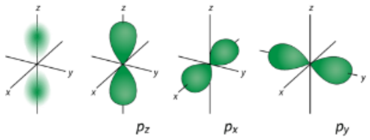


Figure 2.9.2: The set of three p orbitals oriented in different directions.

d Orbitals

There are five d orbitals. All five d-orbitals have specific three-dimensional orientations.

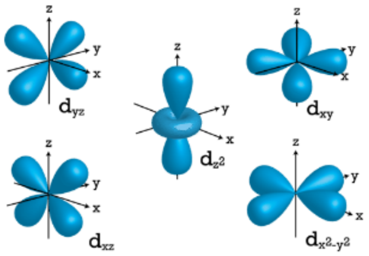


Figure 2.9.3: d orbitals have an orientational preference and exhibit complex structures.

Orbitals that have the same value of the principal quantum number form a **shell**. Orbitals within a shell are divided into **subshells** that have the same value of the angular quantum number. Some of the allowed combinations of quantum numbers are compared in Table 2.9.1.

Table 2.9.1: Electron Arrangement Within Energy Levels

Principal Quantum Number (n)	Allowable Sublevels	Number of Orbitals per Sublevel	Number of Orbitals per Principal Energy Level	Number of Electrons per Sublevel	Number of Electrons per Principal Energy Level

Principal Quantum Number (n)	Allowable Sublevels	Number of Orbitals per Sublevel	Number of Orbitals per Principal Energy Level	Number of Electrons per Sublevel	Number of Electrons per Principal Energy Level
1	s	1	1	2	2
2	s	1	4	2	8
	p	3		6	
3	s	1	9	2	18
	p	3		6	
	d	5		10	
4	s	1	16	2	32
	p	3		6	
	d	5		10	
	f	7		14	

Electron Configurations

Chemists use an **electronic configuration** to represent the organization of electrons in shells and subshells in an atom. An electron configuration simply lists the shell and subshell labels, with a right superscript giving the number of electrons in that subshell. The shells and subshells are listed in the order of filling. Electrons are typically organized around an atom by starting at the lowest possible quantum numbers first, which are the shells-subshells with lower energies.

For example, an H atom has a single electron in the 1s subshell. Its electron configuration is

$$\mathrm{H}:\ 1s^1$$

He has two electrons in the 1s subshell. Its electron configuration is

$$\mathrm{He}:\ 1s^2$$

The three electrons for Li are arranged in the 1s subshell (two electrons) and the 2s subshell (one electron). The electron configuration of Li is

$$\mathrm{Li}:\ 1s^2 2s^1$$

Be has four electrons, two in the 1s subshell and two in the 2s subshell. Its electron configuration is

$$\mathrm{Be}:\ 1s^2 2s^2$$

Now that the 2s subshell is filled, electrons in larger atoms must go into the 2p subshell, which can hold a maximum of six electrons. The next six elements progressively fill up the 2p subshell:

- B: $1s^22s^22p^1$
- C: $1s^22s^22p^2$
- N: $1s^22s^22p^3$
- O: $1s^22s^22p^4$
- F: $1s^22s^22p^5$
- Ne: $1s^22s^22p^6$

Now that the 2p subshell is filled (all possible subshells in the n = 2 shell), the next electron for the next-larger atom must go into the n = 3 shell, s subshell.

Second Period Elements

Periods refer to the horizontal rows of the periodic table. Looking at a periodic table you will see that the first period contains only the elements hydrogen and helium. This is because the first principal energy level consists of only the s sublevel and so only two electrons are required in order to fill the entire principal energy level. Each time a new principal energy level begins, as with the third element lithium, a new period is started on the periodic table. As one moves across the second period, electrons are successively added. With beryllium $(Z=4)$, the $2s$ sublevel is complete and the $2p$ sublevel begins with boron $(Z=5)$. Since there are three $2p$ orbitals and each orbital holds two electrons, the $2p$ sublevel is filled after six elements. Table $2.9.1$ shows the electron configurations of the elements in the second period.

Table $2.9.2$: Electron Configurations of Second-Period Elements

Element Name	Symbol	Atomic Number	Electron Configuration
Lithium	Li	3	$1s^2 2s^1$
Beryllium	Be	4	$1s^2 2s^2$
Boron	B	5	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^1$
Carbon	C	6	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^2$
Nitrogen	N	7	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^3$
Oxygen	O	8	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^4$
Fluorine	F	9	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^5$
Neon	Ne	10	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^6$

Aufbau Principle

Construction of a building begins at the bottom. The foundation is laid and the building goes up step by step. You obviously cannot start with the roof since there is no place to hang it. The building goes from the lowest level to the highest level in a systematic way. In order to create ground state electron configurations for any element, it is necessary to know the way in which the atomic sublevels are organized in order of increasing energy. Figure $2.9.5$ shows the order of increasing energy of the sublevels.

The lowest energy sublevel is always the $1s$ sublevel, which consists of one orbital. The single electron of the hydrogen atom will occupy the $1s$ orbital when the atom is in its ground state. As we proceed with atoms with multiple electrons, those electrons are added to the next lowest sublevel: $2s$, $2p$, $3s$, and so on. The **Aufbau principle** states that an electron occupies orbitals in order from lowest energy to highest. The Aufbau (German: "building up, construction") principle is sometimes referred to as the "building up" principle.

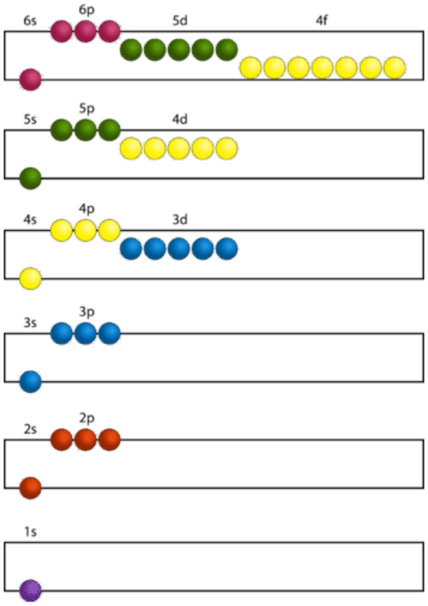


Figure 2.9.5: Electrons are added to atomic orbitals in order from low energy (bottom of the graph) to high (top of the graph) according to the Aufbau principle. Principle energy levels are color coded, while sublevels are grouped together and each circle represents an orbital capable of holding two electrons.

As seen in the figure above, the energies of the sublevels in different principal energy levels eventually begin to overlap. After the $3p$ sublevel, it would seem logical that the $3d$ sublevel should be the next lowest in energy. However, the $4s$ sublevel is slightly lower in energy than the $3d$ sublevel and thus fills first. Following the filling of the $3d$ sublevel is the $4p$, then the $5s$ and the $4d$. Note that the $4f$ sublevel does not fill until just after the $6s$ sublevel. Figure 2.9.6 is a useful and simple aid for keeping track of the order of fill of the atomic sublevels. This order also comes from the periodic table (see next section).

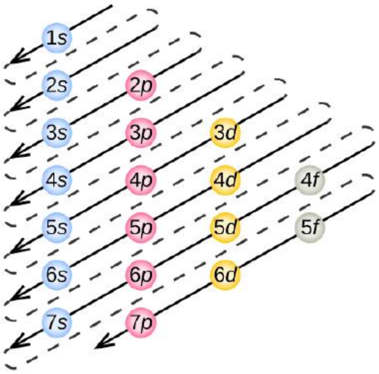


Figure 2.9.6: The arrow leads through each subshell in the appropriate filling order for electron configurations. This chart is straightforward to construct. Simply make a column for all the s orbitals with each n shell on a separate row. Repeat for p, d, and f. Be sure to only include orbitals allowed by the quantum numbers (no 1p or 2d, and so forth). Finally, draw diagonal lines from top to bottom as shown.

Video 2.9.1: Energy levels, sublevels and orbitals.

✓ Example 2.9.1: Nitrogen Atoms

Nitrogen has 7 electrons. Write the electron configuration for nitrogen.

Solution:

Take a close look at Figure 2.9.5, and use it to figure out how many electrons go into each sublevel, and also the order in which the different sublevels get filled.

1. Begin by filling up the 1*s* sublevel. **This gives $1s^2$**. Now all of the orbitals in the red $n = 1$ block are filled.

   Since we used 2 electrons, there are 7 − 2 = **5 electrons left**

2. Next, fill the 2*s* sublevel. This gives **$1s^2 2s^2$**. Now all of the orbitals in the *s* sublevel of the orange $n = 2$ block are filled.

   Since we used another 2 electrons, there are 5 − 2 = **3 electrons left**

3. Notice that we haven't filled the entire $n = 2$ block yet… there are still the *p* orbitals!

   The final 3 electrons go into the 2*p* sublevel. This gives **$1s^2 2s^2 2p^3$**

The overall electron configuration is: **$1s^2 2s^2 2p^3$**.

✓ Example 2.9.2: Potassium Atoms

Potassium has 19 electrons. Write the electron configuration code for potassium.

Solution

This time, take a close look at Figure 2.9.5.

1. Begin by filling up the 1*s* sublevel. **This gives $1s^2$**. Now the $n = 1$ level is filled.

   Since we used 2 electrons, there are 19 − 2 = **17 electrons left**

2. Next, fill the 2*s* sublevel. **This gives $1s^2 2s^2$**

   Since we used another 2 electrons, there are 17 − 2 = **15 electrons left**

3. Next, fill the 2*p* sublevel. **This gives $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6$.** Now the $n = 2$ level is filled.

   Since we used another 6 electrons, there are 15 − 6 = **9 electrons left**

4. Next, fill the 3*s* sublevel. **This gives $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2$**

Since we used another 2 electrons, there are 9 − 2 = **7 electrons left**

5. Next, fill the 3*p* sublevel. **This gives** $\mathbf{1s^22s^22p^63s^23p^6}$

Since we used another 6 electrons, there are 7 − 6 = **1 electron left**

Here's where we have to be careful – right after $\mathbf{3p^6}$**!**

Remember, 4*s* comes before 3*d*

6. The final electron goes into the 4*s* sublevel. **This gives** $\mathbf{1s^22s^22p^63s^23p^64s^1}$

The overall electron configuration is: $\mathbf{1s^22s^22p^63s^23p^64s^1}$

? Exercise 2.9.1: Magnesium and Sodium Atoms

What is the electron configuration for Mg and Na?

Answer Mg

Mg: $1s^22s^22p^63s^2$

Answer Na

Na: $1s^22s^22p^63s^1$

Contributions & Attributions

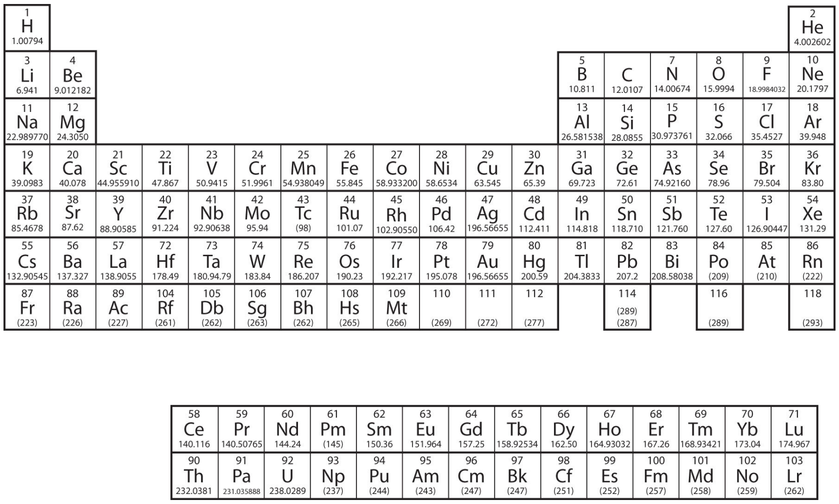
-
- Paul Flowers (University of North Carolina - Pembroke), Klaus Theopold (University of Delaware) and Richard Langley (Stephen F. Austin State University) with contributing authors. Textbook content produced by OpenStax College is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution License 4.0 license. Download for free at http://cnx.org/contents/85abf193-2bd...a7ac8df6@9.110).
- edited by Spencer Berger

2.10: Electron Configurations and the Periodic Table

Learning Objectives

- Relate the electron configurations of the elements to the shape of the periodic table.
- Determine the expected electron configuration of an element by its place on the periodic table.
- Write electron configurations using noble gas shorthand.
- Determine the number of core and valence electrons in an element.

Previously, we introduced the periodic table as a tool for organizing the known chemical elements. A periodic table is shown in Figure 2.10.1. The elements are listed by atomic number (the number of protons in the nucleus), and elements with similar chemical properties are grouped together in columns.



1 H 1.00794																	2 He 4.002602
3 Li 6.941	4 Be 9.012182											5 B 10.811	C 12.0107	7 N 14.00674	8 O 15.9994	9 F 18.9984032	10 Ne 20.1797
11 Na 22.989770	12 Mg 24.3050											13 Al 26.581538	14 Si 28.0855	15 P 30.973761	16 S 32.066	17 Cl 35.4527	18 Ar 39.948
19 K 39.0983	20 Ca 40.078	21 Sc 44.955910	22 Ti 47.867	23 V 50.9415	24 Cr 51.9961	25 Mn 54.938049	26 Fe 55.845	27 Co 58.933200	28 Ni 58.6534	29 Cu 63.545	30 Zn 65.39	31 Ga 69.723	32 Ge 72.61	33 As 74.92160	34 Se 78.96	35 Br 79.504	36 Kr 83.80
37 Rb 85.4678	38 Sr 87.62	39 Y 88.90585	40 Zr 91.224	41 Nb 92.90638	42 Mo 95.94	43 Tc (98)	44 Ru 101.07	45 Rh 102.90550	46 Pd 106.42	47 Ag 196.56655	48 Cd 112.411	49 In 114.818	50 Sn 118.710	51 Sb 121.760	52 Te 127.60	53 I 126.90447	54 Xe 131.29
55 Cs 132.90545	56 Ba 137.327	57 La 138.9055	72 Hf 178.49	73 Ta 180.94.79	74 W 183.84	75 Re 186.207	76 Os 190.23	77 Ir 192.217	78 Pt 195.078	79 Au 196.56655	80 Hg 200.59	81 Tl 204.3833	82 Pb 207.2	83 Bi 208.58038	84 Po (209)	85 At (210)	86 Rn (222)
87 Fr (223)	88 Ra (226)	89 Ac (227)	104 Rf (261)	105 Db (262)	106 Sg (263)	107 Bh (262)	108 Hs (265)	109 Mt (266)	110 (269)	111 (272)	112 (277)		114 (289) (287)		116 (289)		118 (293)

58 Ce 140.116	59 Pr 140.50765	60 Nd 144.24	61 Pm (145)	62 Sm 150.36	63 Eu 151.964	64 Gd 157.25	65 Tb 158.92534	66 Dy 162.50	67 Ho 164.93032	68 Er 167.26	69 Tm 168.93421	70 Yb 173.04	71 Lu 174.967
90 Th 232.0381	91 Pa 231.035888	92 U 238.0289	93 Np (237)	94 Pu (244)	95 Am (243)	96 Cm (247)	97 Bk (247)	98 Cf (251)	99 Es (252)	100 Fm (257)	101 Md (258)	102 No (259)	103 Lr (262)

Figure 2.10.1: The Periodic Table

Why does the periodic table have the structure it does? The answer is rather simple, if you understand electron configurations: the shape of the periodic table mimics the filling of the subshells with electrons.

> *The shape of the periodic table mimics the filling of the subshells with electrons.*

Let us start with H and He. Their electron configurations are 1s^1 and 1s^2, respectively; with He, the *n* = 1 shell is filled. These two elements make up the first row of the periodic table (Figure 2.10.2)

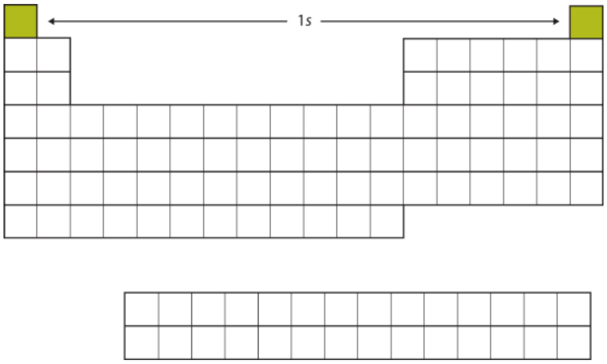


Figure 2.10.2: The 1*s* Subshell. H and He represent the filling of the 1*s* subshell.

The next two electrons, for Li and Be, would go into the 2*s* subshell. Figure 2.10.3 shows that these two elements are adjacent on the periodic table.

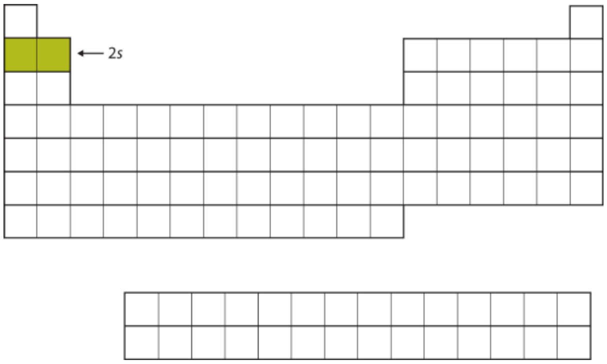


Figure 2.10.3: The 2*s* Subshell. In Li and Be, the 2*s* subshell is being filled.

For the next six elements, the 2*p* subshell is being occupied with electrons. On the right side of the periodic table, these six elements (B through Ne) are grouped together (Figure 2.10.4).

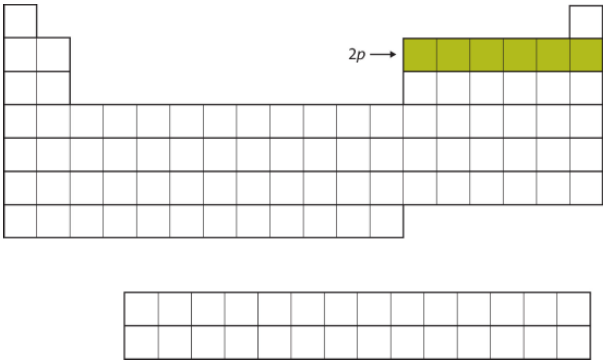


Figure 2.10.4: The 2*p* Subshell. For B through Ne, the 2*p* subshell is being occupied.

The next subshell to be filled is the 3*s* subshell. The elements when this subshell is being filled, Na and Mg, are back on the left side of the periodic table (Figure 2.10.5).

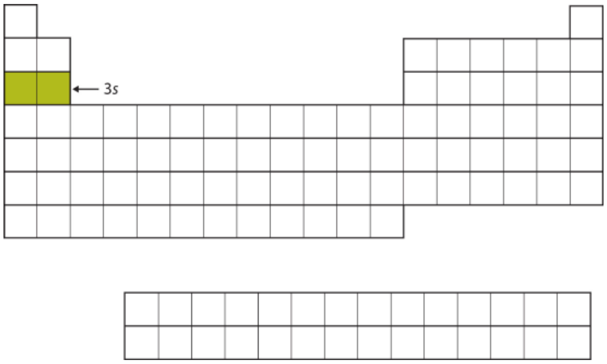


Figure 2.10.5: The 3*s* Subshell. Now the 3*s* subshell is being occupied.

Next, the 3*p* subshell is filled with the next six elements (Figure 2.10.6).

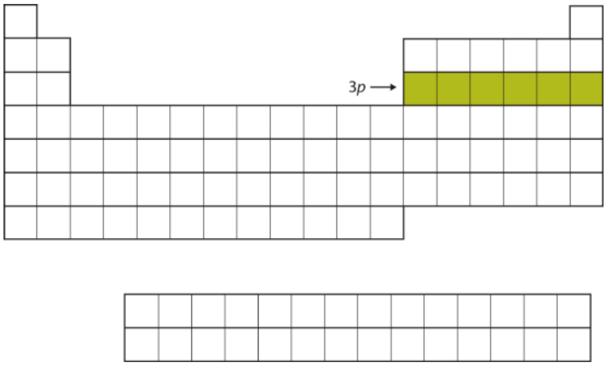


Figure 2.10.6: The 3p Subshell. Next, the 3p subshell is filled with electrons.

Instead of filling the 3d subshell next, electrons go into the 4s subshell (Figure 2.10.7).

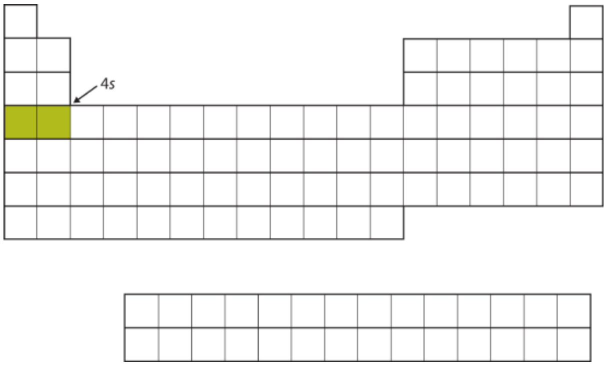


Figure 2.10.7: The 4s Subshell. The 4s subshell is filled before the 3d subshell. This is reflected in the structure of the periodic table.

After the 4s subshell is filled, the 3d subshell is filled with up to 10 electrons. This explains the section of 10 elements in the middle of the periodic table (Figure 2.10.8).

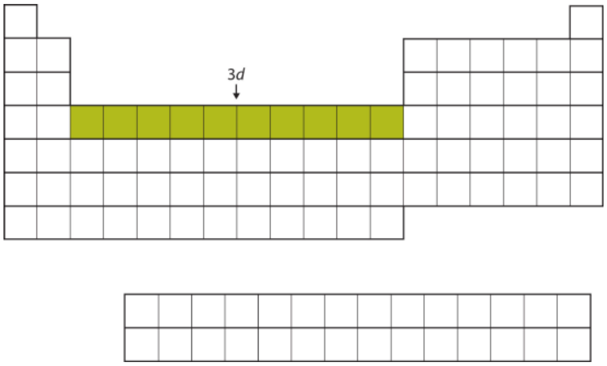


Figure 2.10.8: The 3d Subshell. The 3d subshell is filled in the middle section of the periodic table.

...And so forth. As we go across the rows of the periodic table, the overall shape of the table outlines how the electrons are occupying the shells and subshells.

The first two columns on the left side of the periodic table are where the s subshells are being occupied. Because of this, the first two rows of the periodic table are labeled the **s block**. Similarly, the **p block** are the right-most six columns of the periodic table, the **d block** is the middle 10 columns of the periodic table, while the **f block** is the 14-column section that is normally depicted as detached from the main body of the periodic table. It could be part of the main body, but then the periodic table would be rather long and cumbersome. Figure 2.10.9 shows the blocks of the periodic table.

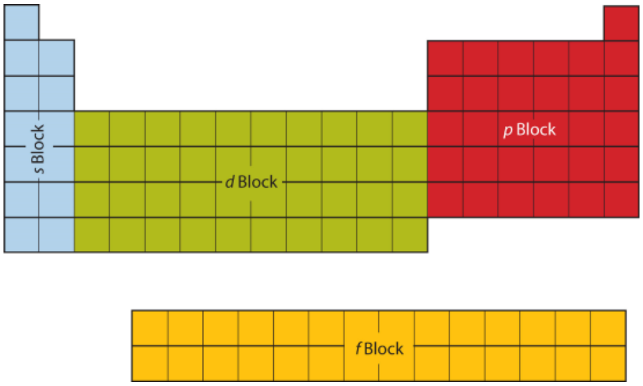


Figure 2.10.9: Blocks on the Periodic Table. The periodic table is separated into blocks depending on which subshell is being filled for the atoms that belong in that section.

Noble Gas Shorthand

Electron configurations can be abbreviated using what is known as noble gas shorthand. To write the electron configuration using noble gas shorthand, locate the previous noble gas on the periodic table.

As an example, let's write the electron configuration of sulfur, S, using noble gas shorthand.

Sulfur is element 16 on the periodic table. The previous noble gas is neon. Figure $2.10.9$ shows sulfur and neon on the periodic table:

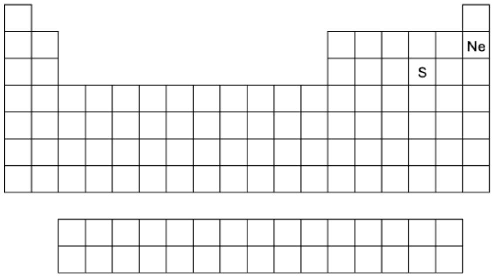


Figure 2.10.9: Sulfur and Neon on the periodic table.

We can abbreviate the first 10 electrons in the electron configuration by putting Ne in brackets as follows: [Ne]. In this notation, [Ne] means $1s^22s^22p^6$.

After Ne is the 3*s* orbital. We continue writing the electron configuration for S as follows: [Ne] $3s^23p^4$

For S, we could write either $1s^22s^22p^63s^23p^4$ or [Ne] $3s^23p^4$. The noble gas shorthand is often shorter to write.

Core and Valence Electrons

The electrons in the highest-numbered shell, plus any electrons in the last unfilled subshell, are called **valence electrons**; the highest-numbered shell is called the **valence shell**. (The inner electrons are called **core electrons**.) The valence electrons largely control the chemistry of an atom. If we look at just the valence shell's electron configuration, we find that in each column, the valence shell's electron configuration is the same. For example, take the elements in the first column of the periodic table: H, Li, Na, K, Rb, and Cs. Their electron configurations (abbreviated for the larger atoms) are as follows, with the valence shell electron configuration highlighted:

Electrons, electron configurations, and the valence shell electron configuration highlighted.

H:	$1s^{\mathbf{1}}$
Li:	$1s^22s^{\mathbf{1}}$
Na:	$[Ne]3s^{\mathbf{1}}$
K:	$[Ar]4s^{\mathbf{1}}$

H:	$1s^1$
Rb:	$[Kr]5s^1$
Cs:	$[Xe]6s^1$

They all have a similar electron configuration in their valence shells: a single *s* electron. Because much of the chemistry of an element is influenced by valence electrons, we would expect that these elements would have similar chemistry—*and they do*. The organization of electrons in atoms explains not only the shape of the periodic table, but also the fact that elements in the same column of the periodic table have similar chemistry.

The same concept applies to the other columns of the periodic table. Elements in each column have the same valence shell electron configurations, and the elements have some similar chemical properties. This is strictly true for all elements in the *s* and *p* blocks. In the *d* and *f* blocks, because there are exceptions to the order of filling of subshells with electrons, similar valence shells are not absolute in these blocks. However, many similarities do exist in these blocks, so a similarity in chemical properties is expected.

Similarity of valence shell electron configuration implies that we can determine the electron configuration of an atom solely by its position on the periodic table. Consider Se, as shown in Figure $2.10.10$. It is in the fourth column of the *p* block. This means that its electron configuration should end in a p^4 electron configuration. Indeed, the electron configuration of Se is $[Ar]4s^2 3d^{10} 4p^4$, as expected. Selenium has six valence electrons (the 4*s* and 4*p*) - *d*-electrons do not count as valence for main-group elements.

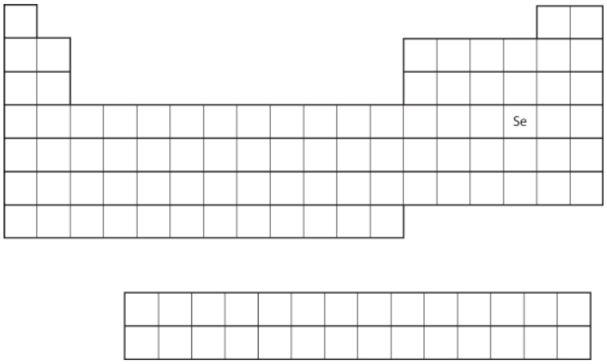


Figure 2.10.10: Selenium on the Periodic Table

✓ Example 2.10.1: Predicting Electron Configurations

From the element's position on the periodic table, predict the valence shell electron configuration for each atom and the number of valence electrons (Figure $2.10.11$).

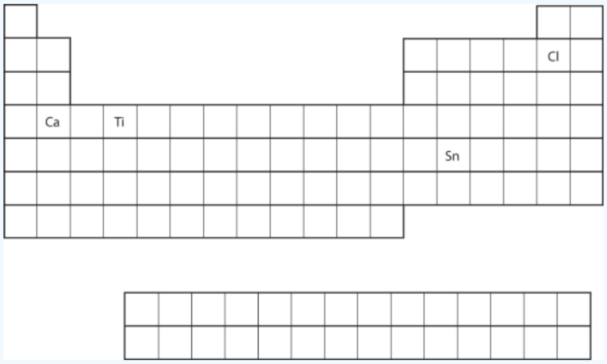


Figure 2.10.11: Various Elements on the Periodic Table

a. Ca

Solution

a. Ca is located in the second column of the *s* block. We expect that its electron configuration should end with s^2. Calcium's electron configuration is $[Ar]4s^2$. Ca has two valence electrons.

Exercise 2.10.1

From the element’s position on the periodic table, predict the valence shell electron configuration for each atom and the number of valence electrons. Figure $2.10.11$

a. Cl

Answer a

[Ne]$3s^2 3p^5$ (7 valence electrons)

Summary

The arrangement of electrons in atoms is responsible for the shape of the periodic table. Electron configurations can be predicted by the position of an atom on the periodic table.

Contributions and Attributions

- edited by Spencer Berger

2.11: REPRESENTING VALENCE ELECTRONS WITH DOTS

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

- Draw a Lewis electron dot diagram for an atom.

A **Lewis electron dot diagram** is a representation of the valence electrons of an atom that uses dots around the symbol of the element. The number of dots equals the number of valence electrons in the atom. These dots are arranged to the right and left and above and below the symbol, with no more than two dots on a side. (The order in which the positions are used does not matter.) For example, the Lewis electron dot diagram for hydrogen is simply

$$\mathbf{H}\cdot$$

Because the side is not important, the Lewis electron dot diagram could also be drawn as follows:

$$\dot{\mathbf{H}} \;\; or \;\; \cdot\mathbf{H} \;\; or \;\; \underset{\cdot}{\mathbf{H}}$$

The electron dot diagram for helium, with two valence electrons, is as follows:

$$\mathbf{He}:$$

By putting the two electrons together on the same side, we emphasize the fact that these two electrons are both in the 1*s* subshell; this is the common convention we will adopt, although there will be exceptions later. The next atom, lithium, has an electron configuration of $1s^2 2s^1$, so it has only one electron in its valence shell. Its electron dot diagram resembles that of hydrogen, except the symbol for lithium is used:

$$\mathbf{Li}\cdot$$

Beryllium has two valence electrons in its 2*s* shell, so its electron dot diagram is like that of helium:

$$\mathbf{Be}:$$

The next atom is boron. Its valence electron shell is $2s^2 2p^1$, so it has three valence electrons. The third electron will go on another side of the symbol:

$$\dot{\mathbf{B}}:$$

Again, it does not matter on which sides of the symbol the electron dots are positioned.

For carbon, there are four valence electrons, two in the 2*s* subshell and two in the 2*p* subshell. As usual, we will draw two dots together on one side, to represent the 2*s* electrons. However, conventionally, we draw the dots for the two *p* electrons on different sides. As such, the electron dot diagram for carbon is as follows:

$$\cdot\dot{\mathbf{C}}:$$

With N, which has three *p* electrons, we put a single dot on each of the three remaining sides:

$$\cdot\underset{\cdot}{\dot{\mathbf{N}}}:$$

For oxygen, which has four *p* electrons, we now have to start doubling up on the dots on one other side of the symbol. When doubling up electrons, make sure that each side has no more than two electrons.

$$\cdot\underset{\cdot}{\ddot{\mathbf{O}}}:$$

Fluorine and neon have seven and eight dots, respectively:

$$:\underset{\cdot}{\ddot{\mathbf{F}}}:$$

$$:\underset{\cdot\cdot}{\ddot{\mathbf{Ne}}}:$$

With the next element, sodium, the process starts over with a single electron because sodium has a single electron in its highest-numbered shell, the *n* = 3 shell. By going through the periodic table, we see that the Lewis electron dot diagrams of atoms will never have more than eight dots around the atomic symbol.

EXAMPLE 2.11.1: LEWIS DOT DIAGRAMS

What is the Lewis electron dot diagram for each element?

a. aluminum
b. selenium

Solution

a. The valence electron configuration for aluminum is $3s^2 3p^1$. So it would have three dots around the symbol for aluminum, two of them paired to represent the $3s$ electrons:

$$\dot{Al}:$$

2. The valence electron configuration for selenium is $4s^2 4p^4$. In the highest-numbered shell, the $n = 4$ shell, there are six electrons. Its electron dot diagram is as follows:

$$\cdot\underset{\cdot\,\cdot}{\dot{\mathbf{Se}}}\mathbf{:}$$

EXERCISE 2.11.1

What is the Lewis electron dot diagram for each element?

a. phosphorus
b. argon

Answer a

$$\cdot\underset{\cdot}{\dot{\mathbf{P}}}\mathbf{:}$$

Answer b

$$\mathbf{:}\underset{\cdot\,\cdot}{\ddot{\mathbf{A}}\mathbf{r}}\mathbf{:}$$

SUMMARY

- Lewis electron dot diagrams use dots to represent valence electrons around an atomic symbol.

2.12: LEWIS STRUCTURES OF IONIC COMPOUNDS- ELECTRONS TRANSFERRED

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- State the octet rule.
- Define *ionic bond*.
- Draw Lewis structures for ionic compounds.

Ions are formed by losing electrons to make cations, or by gaining electrons to form anions. Many ions that form have eight electrons in their valence shell, or a noble gas electron configuration. Either atoms gain enough electrons to have eight electrons in the valence shell and become the appropriately charged anion, or they lose the electrons in their original valence shell; the *lower* shell, now the valence shell, has eight electrons in it, so the atom becomes positively charged. For whatever reason, having eight electrons in a valence shell is a particularly energetically stable arrangement of electrons. The **octet rule** explains the favorable trend of atoms having eight electrons in their valence shell.

Consider an Na atom in the presence of a Cl atom. The two atoms have these Lewis electron dot diagrams and electron configurations:

$$\mathbf{Na}\cdot \qquad \cdot\ddot{\underset{\cdot\cdot}{\mathbf{Cl}}}\mathbf{:}$$

$$[Ne]\,3s^1 \qquad [Ne]\,3s^2 3p^5$$

For the Na atom to obtain an octet, it must lose an electron; for the Cl atom to gain an octet, it must gain an electron. An electron transfers from the Na atom to the Cl atom:

$$\mathbf{Na}\cdot \curvearrowright \cdot\ddot{\underset{\cdot\cdot}{\mathbf{Cl}}}\mathbf{:}$$

resulting in two ions—the Na^+ ion and the Cl^- ion:

$$\mathbf{Na}^+ \qquad \mathbf{:}\ddot{\underset{\cdot\cdot}{\mathbf{Cl}}}\mathbf{:}^-$$

$$[Ne] \qquad [Ne]\,3s^2 3p^6$$

Both species now have complete octets, and the electron shells are energetically stable. From basic physics, we know that opposite charges attract. This is what happens to the Na^+ and Cl^- ions:

$$\mathbf{Na}^+ + \mathbf{:}\ddot{\underset{\cdot\cdot}{\mathbf{Cl}}}\mathbf{:}^- \rightarrow Na^+Cl^- \;\; or \;\; NaCl$$

where we have written the final formula (the formula for sodium chloride) as per the convention for ionic compounds, without listing the charges explicitly. The attraction between oppositely charged ions is called an **ionic bond,** and it is one of the main types of chemical bonds in chemistry. Ionic bonds are caused by electrons *transferring* from one atom to another. Ionic bonds are often formed between metal elements that form cations and nonmetal elements that form anions.

In electron transfer, the number of electrons lost must equal the number of electrons gained. We saw this in the formation of NaCl. A similar process occurs between Mg atoms and O atoms, except in this case two electrons are transferred:

The two ions each have octets as their valence shell, and the two oppositely charged particles attract, making an ionic bond:

$$\mathbf{Mg}^{2+} + \left[\mathbf{:}\ddot{\underset{\cdot\cdot}{\mathbf{O}}}\mathbf{:}\right]^{2-} \qquad Mg^{2+}O^{2-} \;\; or \;\; MgO$$

Remember, in the final formula for the ionic compound, we do not write the charges on the ions.

What about when an Na atom interacts with an O atom? The O atom needs two electrons to complete its valence octet, but the Na atom supplies only one electron:

$$\mathbf{Na}\cdot \curvearrowright \cdot\ddot{\underset{\cdot}{\mathbf{O}}}\mathbf{:}$$

The O atom still does not have an octet of electrons. What we need is a second Na atom to donate a second electron to the O atom:

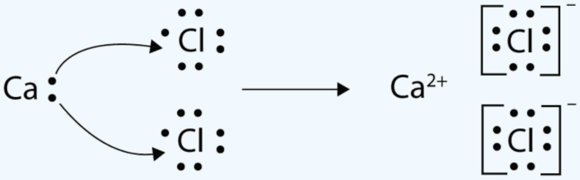
These three ions attract each other to give an overall neutral-charged ionic compound, which we write as Na_2O. The need for the number of electrons lost being equal to the number of electrons gained explains why ionic compounds have the ratio of cations to anions that they do.

✓ EXAMPLE 2.12.1: SYNTHESIS OF CALCIUM CHLORIDE FROM ELEMENTS

With arrows, illustrate the transfer of electrons to form calcium chloride from Ca atoms and Cl atoms.

Solution

A Ca atom has two valence electrons, while a Cl atom has seven electrons. A Cl atom needs only one more to complete its octet, while Ca atoms have two electrons to lose. Thus we need two Cl atoms to accept the two electrons from one Ca atom. The transfer process looks as follows:

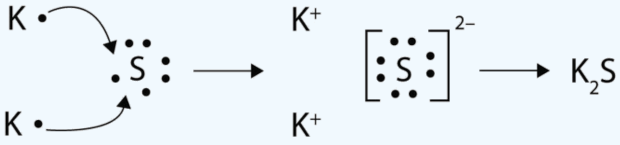


The oppositely charged ions attract each other to make $CaCl_2$.

? EXERCISE 2.12.1

With arrows, illustrate the transfer of electrons to form potassium sulfide from K atoms and S atoms.

Answer



SUMMARY

- The tendency to form species that have eight electrons in the valence shell is called the octet rule.
- The attraction of oppositely charged ions caused by electron transfer is called an ionic bond.
- Ionic bonding often occurs between metals and nonmetals.

2.13: Covalent Lewis Structures- Electrons Shared

Learning Objectives

- Define *covalent bond*.
- Illustrate covalent bond formation with Lewis electron dot diagrams.

Ionic bonding typically occurs when it is easy for one atom to lose one or more electrons and another atom to gain one or more electrons. However, some atoms won’t give up or gain electrons easily. Yet they still participate in compound formation. How? There is another mechanism for obtaining a complete valence shell: *sharing* electrons. When electrons are shared between two atoms, they make a bond called a **covalent bond**.

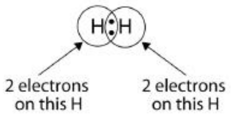
Let us illustrate a covalent bond by using H atoms, with the understanding that H atoms need only two electrons to fill the 1*s* subshell. Each H atom starts with a single electron in its valence shell:

$$\mathbf{H}\cdot \quad \cdot\mathbf{H}$$

The two H atoms can share their electrons:

$$\mathbf{H : H}$$

We can use circles to show that each H atom has two electrons around the nucleus, completely filling each atom’s valence shell:



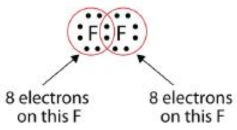
Because each H atom has a filled valence shell, this bond is stable, and we have made a diatomic hydrogen molecule. (This explains why hydrogen is one of the diatomic elements.) For simplicity’s sake, it is not unusual to represent the covalent bond with a dash, instead of with two dots:

H–H

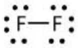
Because two atoms are sharing one pair of electrons, this covalent bond is called a **single bond**. As another example, consider fluorine. F atoms have seven electrons in their valence shell:

These two atoms can do the same thing that the H atoms did; they share their unpaired electrons to make a covalent bond.

Note that each F atom has a complete octet around it now:



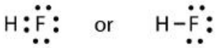
We can also write this using a dash to represent the shared electron pair:



There are two different types of electrons in the fluorine diatomic molecule. The **bonding electron pair** makes the covalent bond. Each F atom has three other pairs of electrons that do not participate in the bonding; they are called **lone pair electrons**. Each F atom has one bonding pair and three lone pairs of electrons.

Covalent bonds can be made between different elements as well. One example is HF. Each atom starts out with an odd number of electrons in its valence shell:

The two atoms can share their unpaired electrons to make a covalent bond:



We note that the H atom has a full valence shell with two electrons, while the F atom has a complete octet of electrons.

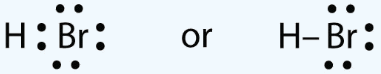
Example 2.13.1:

Use Lewis electron dot diagrams to illustrate the covalent bond formation in HBr.

Solution

HBr is very similar to HF, except that it has Br instead of F. The atoms are as follows:

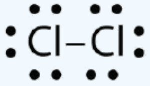
The two atoms can share their unpaired electron:



Exercise 2.13.1

Use Lewis electron dot diagrams to illustrate the covalent bond formation in Cl_2.

Answer



When working with covalent structures, it sometimes looks like you have leftover electrons. You apply the rules you learned so far, and there are still some electrons that remain unattached. You can't just leave them there. So where do you put them?

Multiple Covalent Bonds

Some molecules are not able to satisfy the octet rule by making only single covalent bonds between the atoms. Consider the compound ethene, which has a molecular formula of C_2H_4. The carbon atoms are bonded together, with each carbon also bonded to two hydrogen atoms.

$$\text{two C atoms} = 2 \times 4 = 8 \text{ valence electrons}$$

$$\text{four H atoms} = 4 \times 1 = 4 \text{ valence electrons}$$

$$\text{total of 12 valence electrons in the molecule}$$

If the Lewis electron dot structure was drawn with a single bond between the carbon atoms and with the octet rule followed, it would look like this:

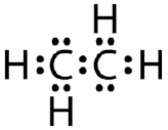


Figure 2.13.1: Incorrect dot structure of ethene. (CK12 License)

This Lewis structure is incorrect because it contains a total of 14 electrons. However, the Lewis structure can be changed by eliminating the lone pairs on the carbon atoms and having to share two pairs instead of only one pair.

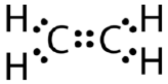


Figure 2.13.2: Correct dot structure for ethene. (CK12 License)

A **double covalent bond** is a covalent bond formed by atoms that share two pairs of electrons. The double covalent bond that occurs between the two carbon atoms in ethane can also be represented by a structural formula and with a molecular model as shown in the figure below.

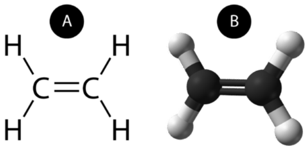


Figure 2.13.3: (A) The structural model for C_2H_4 consists of a double covalent bond between the two carbon atoms and single bonds to the hydrogen atoms. (B) Molecular model of C_2H_4.

A **triple covalent bond** is a covalent bond formed by atoms that share three pairs of electrons. The element nitrogen is a gas that composes the majority of Earth's atmosphere. A nitrogen atom has five valence electrons, which can be shown as one pair and three single electrons. When combining with another nitrogen atom to form a diatomic molecule, the three single electrons on each atom combine to form three shared pairs of electrons.

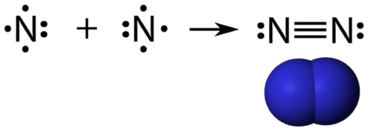


Figure 2.13.4: Triple bond in N_2.

Each nitrogen atom follows the octet rule with one lone pair of electrons, and six electrons that are shared between the atoms.

Summary

- Covalent bonds are formed when atoms share electrons.
- Lewis electron dot diagrams can be drawn to illustrate covalent bond formation.
- Double bonds or triple bonds between atoms may be necessary to properly illustrate the bonding in some molecules.

Contributions & Attributions

-
- Anonymous by request

2.14: Writing Lewis Structures for Covalent Compounds

Learning Objectives

- Draw Lewis structures for covalent compounds.

The following procedure can be used to draw Lewis structures for molecules and polyatomic ions.

How-to: Constructing Lewis electron structures

1. Determine the total number of valence electrons in the molecule or ion.

- Add together the valence electrons from each atom. (Recall that the number of valence electrons is indicated by the position of the element in the periodic table.)
- If the species is a polyatomic ion, remember to add or subtract the number of electrons necessary to give the total charge on the ion.

For CO_3^{2-}, for example, we add two electrons to the total because of the −2 charge.

2. Arrange the atoms to show specific connections.

- When there is a central atom, it is usually the least electronegative element in the compound. Chemists usually list this central atom first in the chemical formula (as in CCl_4 and CO_3^{2-}, which both have C as the central atom), which is another clue to the compound's structure.
- Hydrogen and the halogens are almost always connected to only one other atom, so they are usually *terminal* rather than central.

3. Place a bonding pair of electrons between each pair of adjacent atoms to give a single bond.

- In H_2O, for example, there is a bonding pair of electrons between oxygen and each hydrogen.

4. Beginning with the terminal atoms, add enough electrons to each atom to give each atom an octet (two for hydrogen).

- These electrons will usually be lone pairs.

5. If any electrons are left over, place them on the central atom.

- We will explain later that some atoms are able to accommodate more than eight electrons.

6. If the central atom has fewer electrons than an octet, use lone pairs from terminal atoms to form multiple (double or triple) bonds to the central atom to achieve an octet.

- This will not change the number of electrons on the terminal atoms.

7. Final check

- Always make sure all valence electrons are accounted for and that each atom has an octet of electrons, except for hydrogen (with two electrons).
- The central atom is usually the least electronegative element in the molecule or ion; hydrogen and the halogens are usually terminal.

Now let's apply this procedure to some particular compounds, beginning with one we have already discussed.

Example 2.14.1: Water

Write the Lewis Structure for H_2O.

Solution

Solutions to Example 10.4.1

Steps for Writing Lewis Structures	Example 2.14.1
1. Determine the total number of valence electrons in the molecule or ion.	Each H atom (group 1) has 1 valence electron, and the O atom (group 16) has 6 valence electrons, for a total of 8 valence electrons.

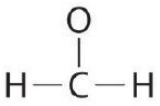
Steps for Writing Lewis Structures	Example 2.14.1
2. Arrange the atoms to show specific connections.	H O H Because H atoms are almost always terminal, the arrangement within the molecule must be HOH.
3. Place a bonding pair of electrons between each pair of adjacent atoms to give a single bond. 4. Beginning with the terminal atoms, add enough electrons to each atom to give each atom an octet (two for hydrogen).	Placing one bonding pair of electrons between the O atom and each H atom gives H -O- H with 4 electrons left over. Each H atom has a full valence shell of 2 electrons.
5. If any electrons are left over, place them on the central atom.	Adding the remaining 4 electrons to the oxygen (as two lone pairs) gives the following structure: 
6. If the central atom has fewer electrons than an octet, use lone pairs from terminal atoms to form multiple (double or triple) bonds to the central atom to achieve an octet.	Not necessary.
7. Final check.	The Lewis structure gives oxygen an octet and each hydrogen 2 electrons.

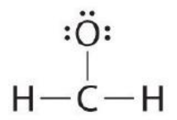
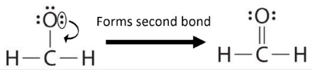
✓ Example 2.14.2

Write the Lewis structure for the CH_2O molecule

Solution

Solutions to Example 10.4.2

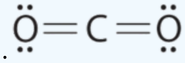
Steps for Writing Lewis Structures	Example 2.14.2
1. Determine the total number of valence electrons in the molecule or ion.	Each hydrogen atom (group 1) has 1 valence electron, carbon (group 14) has 4 valence electrons, and oxygen (group 16) has 6 valence electrons, for a total of [(2)(1) + 4 + 6] = 12 valence electrons.
2. Arrange the atoms to show specific connections.	 Because carbon is less electronegative than oxygen and hydrogen is normally terminal, C must be the central atom.
3. Place a bonding pair of electrons between each pair of adjacent atoms to give a single bond.	Placing a bonding pair of electrons between each pair of bonded atoms gives the following:  6 electrons are used, and 6 are left over.

Steps for Writing Lewis Structures	Example 2.14.2
4. Beginning with the terminal atoms, add enough electrons to each atom to give each atom an octet (two for hydrogen).	Adding all 6 remaining electrons to oxygen (as three lone pairs) gives the following:  Although oxygen now has an octet and each hydrogen has 2 electrons, carbon has only 6 electrons.
5. If any electrons are left over, place them on the central atom.	Not necessary. There are no electrons left to place on the central atom.
6. If the central atom has fewer electrons than an octet, use lone pairs from terminal atoms to form multiple (double or triple) bonds to the central atom to achieve an octet.	To give carbon an octet of electrons, we use one of the lone pairs of electrons on oxygen to form a carbon–oxygen double bond: 
7. Final check	Both the oxygen and the carbon now have an octet of electrons, so this is an acceptable Lewis electron structure. The O has two bonding pairs and two lone pairs, and C has four bonding pairs. This is the structure of formaldehyde, which is used in embalming fluid.

Exercise 2.14.1

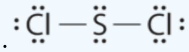
Write Lewis electron structures for CO_2 and SCl_2.

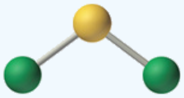
Answer CO_2



Carbon dioxide

Answer SCl_2





Sulfur dichloride

The United States Supreme Court has the unenviable task of deciding what the law is. This responsibility can be a major challenge when there is no clear principle involved or where there is a new situation not encountered before. Chemistry faces the same challenge in extending basic concepts to fit a new situation. Drawing of Lewis structures for polyatomic ions uses the same approach, but tweaks the process a little to fit a somewhat different set of circumstances.

Writing Lewis Structures for Polyatomic Ions (CK-12)

Recall that a polyatomic ion is a group of atoms that are covalently bonded together and which carry an overall electrical charge. The ammonium ion, NH_4^+, is formed when a hydrogen ion $\left(H^+\right)$ attaches to the lone pair of an ammonia $\left(NH_3\right)$ molecule in a coordinate covalent bond.

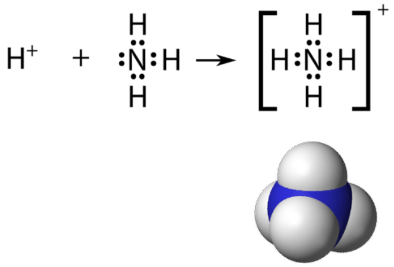


Figure 2.14.3: The ammonium ion. (CK12 License)

When drawing the Lewis structure of a polyatomic ion, the charge of the ion is reflected in the number of total valence electrons in the structure. In the case of the ammonium ion:

$$1\ \text{N atom} = 5\ \text{valence electrons}$$

$$4\ \text{H atoms} = 4 \times 1 = 4\ \ \text{valence electrons}$$

$$\text{subtract 1 electron for the } 1+ \text{ charge of the ion}$$

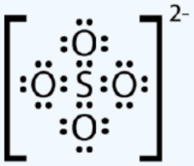
$$\text{total of 8 valence electrons in the ion}$$

It is customary to put the Lewis structure of a polyatomic ion into a large set of brackets, with the charge of the ion as a superscript outside of the brackets.

✓ Exercise 2.14.2

Draw the Lewis electron dot structure for the sulfate ion, SO_4^{2-}.

Answer (CK12 License)



Summary

Lewis structures are a model of how the valence electrons in a molecule (or polyatomic ion) are shared. Lewis structures show electrons **bonding pairs**, which are shared by two atoms, and **lone pairs**, which are not shared between atoms.

Contributions and Attributions

- edited by Spencer Berger

2.14: Writing Lewis Structures for Covalent Compounds is shared under a mixed license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **10.5: Writing Lewis Structures for Covalent Compounds** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed notset. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

2.15: PREDICTING THE SHAPES OF MOLECULES

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

- Use the VSEPR model to determine the shape of simple molecules.

The VSEPR **(valence shell electron pair repulsion)** model can be used to determine the shapes of molecules. VSEPR says that electron pairs, being composed of negatively charged particles, repel each other to get as far away from one another as possible. VSEPR makes a distinction between *electron group geometry*, which expresses how electron groups (bonds and nonbonding electron pairs) are arranged, and *molecular geometry*, which expresses how the atoms in a molecule are arranged. However, the two geometries are related.

There are two types of **electron groups**: any type of bond—single, double, or triple—and lone electron pairs. When applying VSEPR to simple molecules, the first thing to do is to count the number of electron groups around the central atom. Remember that a multiple bond counts as only *one* electron group.

Any molecule with only two atoms is linear. A molecule whose central atom contains only two electron groups orients those two groups as far apart from each other as possible—180° apart. When the two electron groups are 180° apart, the atoms attached to those electron groups are also 180° apart, so the overall molecular shape is linear. Examples include BeH_2 and CO_2:

Figure 2.15.1: Beryllium hydride and carbon dioxide bonding.

The two molecules, shown in the figure below in a "ball and stick" model.

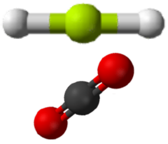


Figure 2.15.2: Beryllium hydride and carbon dioxide models. (CK12 Licence)

A molecule with three electron groups orients the three groups as far apart as possible. They adopt the positions of an equilateral triangle—120° apart and in a plane. The shape of such molecules is *trigonal planar*. An example is BF_3:

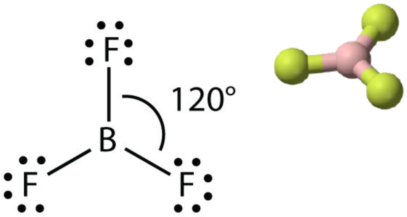


Figure 2.15.3: Boron trifluoride bonding. (CK12 Licence)

Some substances have a trigonal planar electron group distribution but have atoms bonded to only two of the three electron groups. An example is GeF_2:

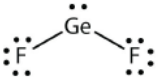


Figure 2.15.4: Germanium difluoride bonding.

From an electron group geometry perspective, GeF_2 has a trigonal planar shape, but its real shape is dictated by the positions of the atoms. This shape is called *bent* or *angular*.

A molecule with four electron groups about the central atom orients the four groups in the direction of a tetrahedron, as shown in Figure 2.15.1 Tetrahedral Geometry. If there are four atoms attached to these electron groups, then the molecular shape is also *tetrahedral*. Methane (CH_4) is an example.

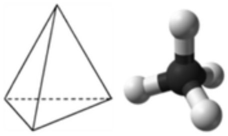


Figure 2.15.5: Tetrahedral structure of methane. (CK12 Licence)

This diagram of CH_4 illustrates the standard convention of displaying a three-dimensional molecule on a two-dimensional surface. The straight lines are in the plane of the page, the solid wedged line is coming out of the plane toward the reader, and the dashed wedged line is going out of the plane away from the reader.

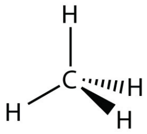


Figure 2.15.6: Methane bonding. (CK12 Licence)

NH_3 is an example of a molecule whose central atom has four electron groups, but only three of them are bonded to surrounding atoms.

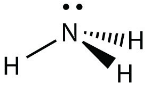


Figure 2.15.7: Ammonia bonding. (CK12 Licence)

Although the electron groups are oriented in the shape of a tetrahedron, from a molecular geometry perspective, the shape of NH_3 is *trigonal pyramidal*.

H_2O is an example of a molecule whose central atom has four electron groups, but only two of them are bonded to surrounding atoms.

Figure 2.15.8: Water bonding.

Although the electron groups are oriented in the shape of a tetrahedron, the shape of the molecule is *bent* or *angular*. A molecule with four electron groups about the central atom, but only one electron group bonded to another atom, is linear because there are only two atoms in the molecule.

Double or triple bonds count as a single electron group. The Lewis electron dot diagram of formaldehyde (CH_2O) is shown in Figure 2.15.9.

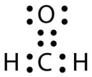


Figure 2.15.9: Lewis Electron Dot Diagram of Formaldehyde.

The central C atom has three electron groups around it because the double bond counts as one electron group. The three electron groups repel each other to adopt a trigonal planar shape.

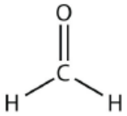


Figure 2.15.10: Formaldehyde bonding.

(The lone electron pairs on the O atom are omitted for clarity.) The molecule will not be a perfect equilateral triangle because the C–O double bond is different from the two C–H bonds, but both planar and triangular describe the appropriate approximate shape of this molecule.

Table 2.15.1 summarizes the shapes of molecules based on the number of electron groups and surrounding atoms.

Table 2.15.1: Summary of Molecular Shapes

Number of Electron Groups on Central Atom	Number of Bonding Groups	Number of Lone Pairs	Electron Geometry	Molecular Shape
2	2	0	linear	linear
3	3	0	trigonal planar	trigonal planar
3	2	1	trigonal planar	bent
4	4	0	tetrahedral	tetrahedral
4	3	1	tetrahedral	trigonal pyramidal
4	2	2	tetrahedral	bent

✓ EXAMPLE 2.15.1

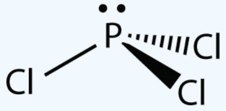
What is the approximate shape of each molecule?

a. PCl3
b. NOF

Solution

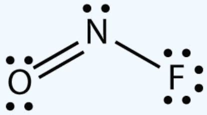
The first step is to draw the Lewis structure of the molecule.

For PCl_3, the electron dot diagram is as follows:



The lone electron pairs on the Cl atoms are omitted for clarity. The P atom has four electron groups with three of them bonded to surrounding atoms, so the molecular shape is trigonal pyramidal.

The electron dot diagram for NOF is as follows:



The N atom has three electron groups on it, two of which are bonded to other atoms. The molecular shape is bent.

? EXERCISE 2.15.1

What is the approximate molecular shape of CH_2Cl_2?

Answer

Tetrahedral

? EXERCISE 2.15.2

Ethylene (C_2H_4) has two central atoms. Determine the geometry around each central atom and the shape of the overall molecule. (Hint: hydrogen is a terminal atom.)

Answer

Trigonal planar about both central C atoms.

SUMMARY

The approximate shape of a molecule can be predicted from the number of electron groups and the number of surrounding atoms.

2.16: Electronegativity and Polarity - Polar Bonds and Polar Molecules

Learning Objectives

- Determine if a bond is polar or nonpolar.
- Determine if a molecule is polar or nonpolar.

Electronegativity and Bond Polarity

The ability of an atom in a molecule to attract shared electrons is called **electronegativity**. When two atoms combine, the difference between their electronegativities is an indication of the type of bond that will form. If the difference between the electronegativities of the two atoms is small, neither atom can take the shared electrons completely away from the other atom, and the bond will be covalent. If the difference between the electronegativities is large, the more electronegative atom will take the bonding electrons completely away from the other atom (electron transfer will occur), and the bond will be ionic. This is why metals (low electronegativities) bonded with nonmetals (high electronegativities) typically produce ionic compounds.

A bond may be so polar that an electron actually transfers from one atom to another, forming a true ionic bond. How do we judge the degree of polarity? Scientists have devised a scale called **electronegativity**, a scale for judging how much atoms of any element attract electrons. Electronegativity is a unitless number; the higher the number, the more an atom attracts electrons. A common scale for electronegativity is shown in Figure 2.16.1.

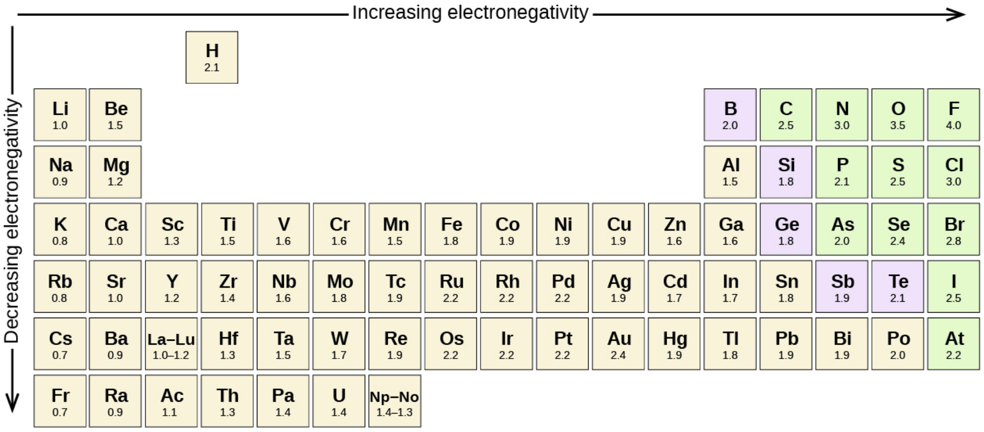


Figure 2.16.1: Electronegativities of the Elements. Electronegativities are used to determine the polarity of covalent bonds.

The polarity of a covalent bond can be judged by determining the *difference* of the electronegativities of the two atoms involved in the covalent bond, as summarized in the following table:

difference of the electronegativities of the two atoms involved in the covalent bond

Electronegativity Difference	Bond Type
0–0.4	nonpolar covalent
0.5–2.0	polar covalent
>2.0	likely ionic

Nonpolar Covalent Bonds

A bond in which the electronegativity difference is less than 1.9 is considered to be mostly covalent in character. However, at this point we need to distinguish between two general types of covalent bonds. A **nonpolar covalent bond** is a covalent bond in which the bonding electrons are shared equally between the two atoms. In a nonpolar covalent bond, the distribution of electrical charge is balanced between the two atoms.

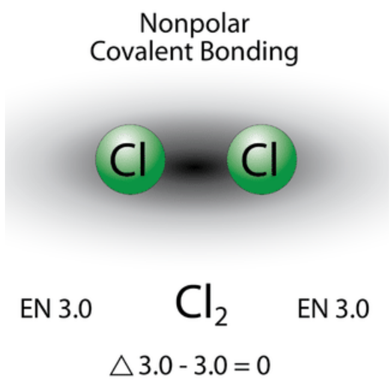


Figure 2.16.2: A nonpolar covalent bond is one in which the distribution of electron density between the two atoms is equal.

The two chlorine atoms share the pair of electrons in the single covalent bond equally, and the electron density surrounding the $\mathrm{Cl_2}$ molecule is symmetrical. Also note that molecules in which the electronegativity difference is very small (<0.5) are also considered nonpolar covalent. An example would be a bond between chlorine and bromine $(\Delta \mathrm{EN} = 3.0 - 2.8 = 0.2)$.

Polar Covalent Bonds

A bond in which the electronegativity difference between the atoms is between 0.5 and 2.0 is called a polar covalent bond. A **polar covalent bond** is a covalent bond in which the atoms have an unequal attraction for electrons and so the sharing is unequal. In a polar covalent bond, sometimes simply called a polar bond, the distribution of electrons around the molecule is no longer symmetrical.

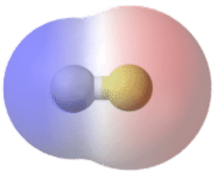


Figure 2.16.3: In the polar covalent bond of HF, the electron density is unevenly distributed. There is a higher density (red) near the fluorine atom, and a lower density (blue) near the hydrogen atom.

An easy way to illustrate the uneven electron distribution in a polar covalent bond is to use the Greek letter delta (δ).

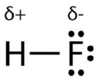


Figure 2.16.4: Use of δ to indicate partial charge.

The atom with the greater electronegativity acquires a partial negative charge, while the atom with the lesser electronegativity acquires a partial positive charge. The delta symbol is used to indicate that the quantity of charge is less than one. A crossed arrow can also be used to indicate the direction of greater electron density.

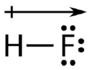


Figure 2.16.5: Use of crossed arrow to indicate polarity.

Electronegativity differences in bonding using Pauling scale. Differences in electronegativity classify bonds as covalent, polar covalent, or ionic.

✓ Example 2.16.1: Bond Polarity

What is the polarity of each bond?

a. C–H
b. O–H

Solution

Using Figure 2.16.1, we can calculate the difference of the electronegativities of the atoms involved in the bond.

a. For the C–H bond, the difference in the electronegativities is 2.5 − 2.1 = 0.4. Thus we predict that this bond will be nonpolar covalent.
b. For the O–H bond, the difference in electronegativities is 3.5 − 2.1 = 1.4, so we predict that this bond will be polar covalent.

? Exercise 2.16.1

What is the polarity of each bond?

a. Rb–F
b. P–Cl

Answer a

likely ionic

Answer b

polar covalent

Molecular Polarity

To determine if a molecule is polar or nonpolar, it is generally useful to look at Lewis structures. **Nonpolar compounds** will be symmetric, meaning all of the sides around the central atom are identical—bonded to the same element with no unshared pairs of electrons. **Polar molecules** are asymmetric, either containing lone pairs of electrons on a central atom or having atoms with different electronegativities bonded. This works pretty well, as long as you can visualize the molecular geometry. That's the hard part. To know how the bonds are oriented in space, you have to have a strong grasp of Lewis structures and VSEPR theory. Assuming that you do, you can look at the structure of each one and decide if it is polar or not, *whether or not you know the individual atom's electronegativity*. This is because you know that all bonds between dissimilar elements are polar, and in these particular examples, it doesn't matter which direction the dipole moment vectors are pointing (out or in).

A **polar molecule** is a molecule in which one end of the molecule is slightly positive, while the other end is slightly negative. A diatomic molecule that consists of a polar covalent bond, such as HF, is a polar molecule. The two electrically charged regions on either end of the molecule are called poles, similar to a magnet having a north and a south pole. A molecule with two poles is called a **dipole** (see figure below). Hydrogen fluoride is a dipole.

Figure 2.16.6: A dipole is any molecule with a positive end and a negative end, resulting from unequal distribution of electron density throughout the molecule.

For molecules with more than two atoms, the molecular geometry must also be taken into account when determining if the molecule is polar or nonpolar. The figure below shows a comparison between carbon dioxide and water. Carbon dioxide $(\mathrm{CO_2})$ is a linear molecule. The oxygen atoms are more electronegative than the carbon atom, so there are two individual dipoles pointing outward from the C atom to each O atom. However, since the dipoles are of equal strength and are oriented this way, they cancel out and the overall molecular polarity of $\mathrm{CO_2}$ is zero.

Water is a bent molecule because of the two lone pairs on the central oxygen atom. The individual dipoles point from the H atoms toward the O atom. Because of the shape, the dipoles do not cancel each other out and the water molecule is polar. In the figure below, the net dipole is shown in blue and points upward.

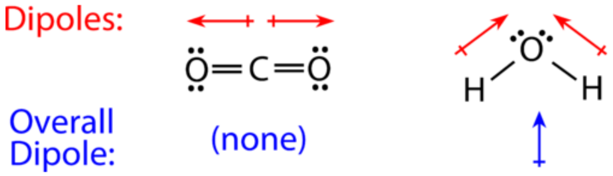


Figure 2.16.7: The molecular geometry of a molecule affects its polarity. Each CO bond has a dipole moment, but they point in opposite directions so that the net CO2 molecule is nonpolar. In contrast, water is polar because the OH bond moments do not cancel out.

Some other molecules are shown in the figure below. Notice that a tetrahedral molecule such as $\mathrm{CH_4}$ is nonpolar. However, if one of the peripheral H atoms is replaced with another atom that has a different electronegativity, the molecule becomes polar. A trigonal planar molecule $(\mathrm{BF_3})$ may be nonpolar if all three peripheral atoms are the same, but a trigonal pyramidal molecule $(\mathrm{NH_3})$ is polar.

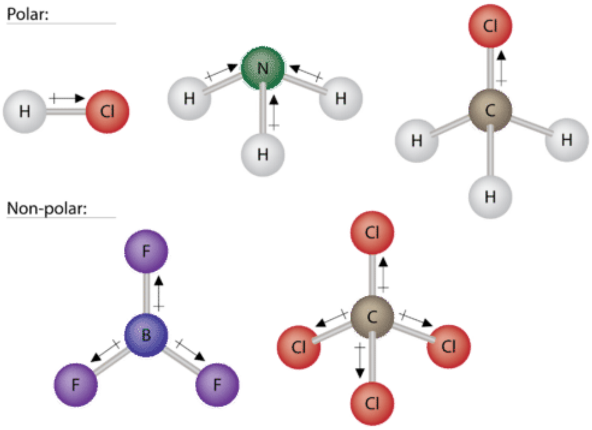


Figure 2.16.8: Some examples of polar and nonpolar molecules based on molecular geometry.

To summarize, to be polar, a molecule must:

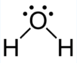
1. Contain at least one polar covalent bond.
2. Have a molecular structure such that the sum of the vectors of each bond dipole moment do not cancel.

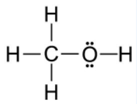
Steps to Identify Polar Molecules

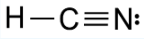
1. Draw the Lewis structure.
2. Figure out the geometry (using VSEPR theory).
3. Visualize or draw the geometry.
4. If the net dipole moment is zero, it is non-polar. Otherwise, it is polar.

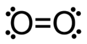
Example 2.16.2:

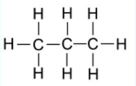
Label each of the following as polar or nonpolar.

a. Water, H_2O: 

b. Methanol, CH_3OH: 

c. Hydrogen Cyanide, HCN: 

d. Oxygen, O_2: 

e. Propane, C_3H_8: 

Solution

a. Water is polar. Any molecule with lone pairs of electrons around the central atom is polar.
b. Methanol is polar. This is not a symmetric molecule. The $-\mathrm{OH}$ side is different from the other 3 $-\mathrm{H}$ sides.
c. Hydrogen cyanide is polar. The molecule is not symmetric. The nitrogen and hydrogen have different electronegativities, creating an uneven pull on the electrons.
d. Oxygen is nonpolar. The molecule is symmetric. The two oxygen atoms pull on the electrons by exactly the same amount.
e. Propane is nonpolar, because it is symmetric, with H atoms bonded to every side around the central atoms and no unshared pairs of electrons.

Contributions & Attributions

- StackExchange (thomij).
- edited by Spencer Berger

2.17: Writing Formulas for Ionic Compounds

Learning Objectives

- Write the correct formula for an ionic compound.
- Recognize polyatomic ions in chemical formulas.

Ionic compounds do not exist as molecules. In the solid state, ionic compounds are in crystal lattice containing many ions each of the cation and anion. An ionic formula, like NaCl, is an empirical formula. This formula merely indicates that sodium chloride is made of an equal number of sodium and chloride ions. Sodium sulfide, another ionic compound, has the formula $\mathrm{Na_2S}$. This formula indicates that this compound is made up of twice as many sodium ions as sulfide ions. This section will teach you how to find the correct ratio of ions, so that you can write a correct formula.

If you know the name of a binary ionic compound, you can write its **chemical formula**. Start by writing the metal ion with its charge, followed by the nonmetal ion with its charge. Because the overall compound must be electrically neutral, decide how many of each ion is needed in order for the positive and negative charges to cancel each other out.

Example 2.17.1: Aluminum Nitride and Lithium Oxide

Write the formulas for aluminum nitride and lithium oxide.

Solution

Solution to Example 5.5.1

	Write the formula for aluminum nitride	Write the formula for lithium oxide
1. Write the symbol and charge of the cation (metal) first and the anion (nonmetal) second.	$\mathrm{Al^{3+}} \quad \mathrm{N^{3-}}$	$\mathrm{Li^{+}} \quad \mathrm{O^{2-}}$
2. Use a multiplier to make the total charge of the cations and anions equal to each other.	total charge of cations = total charge of anions 1(3+) = 1(3-) +3 = -3	total charge of cations = total charge of anions 2(1+) = 1(2-) +2 = -2
3. Use the multipliers as subscript for each ion.	$\mathrm{Al_1N_1}$	$\mathrm{Li_2O_1}$
4. Write the final formula. Leave out all charges and all subscripts that are 1.	AlN	$\mathrm{Li_2O}$

An alternative way to writing a correct formula for an ionic compound is to use the **crisscross method**. In this method, the numerical value of each of the ion charges is crossed over to become the subscript of the other ion. Signs of the charges are dropped.

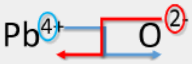
Example 2.17.2: The Crisscross Method for Lead (IV) Oxide

Write the formula for lead (IV) oxide.

Solution

Solution to Example 5.5.2

Crisscross Method	Write the formula for lead (IV) oxide
1. Write the symbol and charge of the cation (metal) first and the anion (nonmetal) second.	$\mathrm{Pb^{4+}} \quad \mathrm{O^{2-}}$

Crisscross Method	Write the formula for lead (IV) oxide
2. Transpose only the number of the positive charge to become the subscript of the anion and the number only of the negative charge to become the subscript of the cation.	
3. Reduce to the lowest ratio.	Pb_2O_4
4. Write the final formula. Leave out all subscripts that are 1.	PbO_2

Exercise 2.17.2

Write the chemical formula for an ionic compound composed of each pair of ions.

a. the calcium ion and the oxygen ion
b. the 2+ copper ion and the sulfur ion
c. the 1+ copper ion and the sulfur ion

Answer a:

CaO

Answer b:

CuS

Answer c:

Cu_2S

> *Be aware that ionic compounds are empirical formulas and so must be written as the lowest ratio of the ions.*

Example 2.17.3: Sulfur Compound

Write the formula for sodium combined with sulfur.

Solution

Solution to Example 5.5.3

Crisscross Method	Write the formula for sodium combined with sulfur
1. Write the symbol and charge of the cation (metal) first and the anion (nonmetal) second.	Na^+ S^{2-}
2. Transpose only the number of the positive charge to become the subscript of the anion and the number only of the negative charge to become the subscript of the cation.	
3. Reduce to the lowest ratio.	This step is not necessary.
4. Write the final formula. Leave out all subscripts that are 1.	Na_2S

Exercise 2.17.3

Write the formula for each ionic compound.

a. sodium bromide
b. lithium chloride
c. magnesium oxide

Answer a:

NaBr

Answer b:

LiCl

Answer c:

MgO

Polyatomic Ions

Some ions consist of groups of atoms bonded together and have an overall electric charge. Because these ions contain more than one atom, they are called polyatomic ions. Polyatomic ions have characteristic formulas, names, and charges that should be memorized. For example, NO_3^- is the nitrate ion; it has one nitrogen atom and three oxygen atoms and an overall 1− charge. Table 2.17.1 lists the most common polyatomic ions.

Table 2.17.1: Some Polyatomic Ions

Name	Formula
ammonium ion	NH_4^+
acetate ion	$C_2H_3O_2^-$ (also written CH_3COO^-)
carbonate ion	CO_3^{2-}
hydrogen carbonate ion (bicarbonate ion)	HCO_3^-
cyanide ion	CN^-
hydroxide ion	OH^-
nitrate ion	NO_3^-
nitrite ion	NO_2^-
phosphate ion	PO_4^{3-}
sulfate ion	SO_4^{2-}

The rule for constructing formulas for ionic compounds containing polyatomic ions is the same as for formulas containing monatomic (single-atom) ions: the positive and negative charges must balance. If more than one of a particular polyatomic ion is needed to balance the charge, the *entire formula* for the polyatomic ion must be enclosed in parentheses, and the numerical subscript is placed *outside* the parentheses. This is to show that the subscript applies to the entire polyatomic ion. An example is $Ba(NO_3)_2$.

Writing Formulas for Ionic Compounds Containing Polyatomic Ions

Writing a formula for ionic compounds containing polyatomic ions also involves the same steps as for a binary ionic compound. Write the symbol and charge of the cation followed by the symbol and charge of the anion.

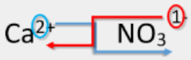
✓ Example 2.17.4: Calcium Nitrate

Write the formula for calcium nitrate.

Solution

Solution to Example 5.5.4

Crisscross Method	Write the formula for calcium nitrate
1. Write the symbol and charge of the cation (metal) first and the anion (nonmetal) second.	$Ca^{2+} \quad NO_3^-$

Crisscross Method	Write the formula for calcium nitrate
2. Transpose only the number of the positive charge to become the subscript of the anion and the number only of the negative charge to become the subscript of the cation.	 The 2+ charge on Ca becomes the subscript of NO_3 and the 1- charge on NO_3 becomes the subscript of Ca.
3. Reduce to the lowest ratio.	$Ca_1(NO_3)_2$
4. Write the final formula. Leave out all subscripts that are 1. If there is only 1 of the polyatomic ion, leave off parentheses.	$Ca(NO_3)_2$

✓ Example 2.17.5

Write the chemical formula for an ionic compound composed of the potassium ion and the sulfate ion.

Solution

Solution to Example 5.5.5

Explanation	Answer
Potassium ions have a charge of 1+, while sulfate ions have a charge of 2−. We will need two potassium ions to balance the charge on the sulfate ion, so the proper chemical formula is K_2SO_4.	K_2SO_4

? Exercise 2.17.5

Write the chemical formula for an ionic compound composed of each pair of ions.

a. the magnesium ion and the carbonate ion
b. the aluminum ion and the acetate ion

Answer a:

$MgCO_3$

Answer b:

$Al(CH_3COO)_3$

Recognizing Ionic Compounds

There are two ways to recognize ionic compounds.

Method 1

Compounds between metal and nonmetal elements are usually ionic. For example, $CaBr_2$ contains a metallic element (calcium, a group 2 [or 2A] metal) and a nonmetallic element (bromine, a group 17 [or 7A] nonmetal). Therefore, it is most likely an ionic compound (in fact, it *is* ionic). In contrast, the compound NO_2 contains two elements that are both nonmetals (nitrogen, from group 15 [or 5A], and oxygen, from group 16 [or 6A]. It is not an ionic compound; it belongs to the category of covalent compounds discussed elsewhere. Also note that this combination of nitrogen and oxygen has no electric charge specified, so it is *not* the nitrite ion.

Method 2

Second, if you recognize the formula of a polyatomic ion in a compound, the compound is ionic. For example, if you see the formula $Ba(NO_3)_2$, you may recognize the "NO_3" part as the nitrate ion, NO_3^-. (Remember that the convention for writing formulas for ionic compounds is not to include the ionic charge.) This is a clue that the other part of the formula, Ba, is actually the Ba^{2+} ion, with the 2+ charge balancing the overall 2− charge from the two nitrate ions. Thus, this compound is also ionic.

✓ Example 2.17.6

Identify each compound as ionic or not ionic.

a. Na_2O
b. PCl_3
c. NH_4Cl
d. OF_2

Solution

Solution to Example 5.5.6

Explanation	Answer
a. Sodium is a metal, and oxygen is a nonmetal. Therefore, Na_2O is expected to be ionic via method 1.	Na_2O, ionic
b. Both phosphorus and chlorine are nonmetals. Therefore, PCl_3 is not ionic via method 1	PCl_3, not ionic
c. The NH_4 in the formula represents the ammonium ion, NH_4^+, which indicates that this compound is ionic via method 2	NH_4Cl, ionic
d. Both oxygen and fluorine are nonmetals. Therefore, OF_2 is not ionic via method 1	OF_2, not ionic

? Exercise 2.17.6

Identify each compound as ionic or not ionic.

a. N_2O
b. $FeCl_3$
c. $(NH_4)_3PO_4$
d. $SOCl_2$

Answer a:

not ionic

Answer b:

ionic

Answer c:

ionic

Answer d:

not ionic

Summary

Formulas for ionic compounds contain the symbols and number of each atom present in a compound in the lowest whole number ratio.

2.17: Writing Formulas for Ionic Compounds is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **5.5: Writing Formulas for Ionic Compounds** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

2.18: Naming Ionic Compounds

Learning Objectives

- To use the rules for naming ionic compounds.

Naming Ions

The name of a monatomic cation is simply the name of the element followed by the word *ion*. Na^+ is the sodium ion, Al^{3+} is the aluminum ion, Ca^{2+} is the calcium ion, and so on.

We have seen that some elements lose different numbers of electrons, producing ions of different charges (Figure 3.3). Iron, for example, can form two cations, each of which, when combined with the same anion, makes a different compound with unique physical and chemical properties. Thus, we need a different name for each iron ion to distinguish Fe^{2+} from Fe^{3+}. The same issue arises for other ions with more than one possible charge.

There are two ways to make this distinction. In the simpler, more modern approach, called the **Stock system**, an ion's positive charge is indicated by a Roman numeral in parentheses after the element name, followed by the word *ion*. Thus, Fe^{2+} is called the iron(II) ion, while Fe^{3+} is called the iron(III) ion. This system is used only for elements that form more than one common positive ion. These are usually transition metals. We do not call the Na^+ ion the sodium(I) ion because (I) is unnecessary. Sodium forms only a 1+ ion, so there is no ambiguity about the name *sodium ion*.

Table 2.18.1: The Modern and Common System of Cation Names

Element	Stem	Charge	Modern Name	Common Name
iron	ferr-	2+	iron(II) ion	ferrous ion
		3+	iron(III) ion	ferric ion
copper	cupr-	1+	copper(I) ion	cuprous ion
		2+	copper(II) ion	cupric ion
tin	stann-	2+	tin(II) ion	stannous ion
		4+	tin(IV) ion	stannic ion
lead	plumb-	2+	lead(II) ion	plumbous ion
		4+	lead(IV) ion	plumbic ion
chromium	chrom-	2+	chromium(II) ion	chromous ion
		3+	chromium(III) ion	chromic ion
gold	aur-	1+	gold(I) ion	aurous ion
		3+	gold(III) ion	auric ion

The second system, called the **common system**, is not conventional but is still prevalent and used in the health sciences. This system recognizes that many metals have two common cations. The common system uses two suffixes (*-ic* and *-ous*) that are appended to the stem of the element name. The *-ic* suffix represents the greater of the two cation charges, and the *-ous* suffix represents the lower one. In many cases, the stem of the element name comes from the Latin name of the element. Table $2.18.1$ lists the elements that use the common system, along with their respective cation names.

The name of a monatomic anion consists of the stem of the element name, the suffix *-ide*, and then the word *ion*. Thus, as we have already seen, Cl^- is "chlor-" + "-ide ion," or the chloride ion. Similarly, O^{2-} is the oxide ion, Se^{2-} is the selenide ion, and so forth. Table $2.18.2$lists the names of some common monatomic ions.

Table 2.18.2: Some Monatomic Anions

Ion	Name

Ion	Name
F^-	fluoride ion
Cl^-	chloride ion
Br^-	bromide ion
I^-	iodide ion
O^{2-}	oxide ion
S^{2-}	sulfide ion
P^{3-}	phosphide ion
N^{3-}	nitride ion

✓ Example 2.18.1

Name each ion.

a. Ca^{2+}
b. S^{2-}
c. $SO_3{}^{2-}$
d. $NH_4{}^+$
e. Cu^+

Solution

a. the calcium ion
b. the sulfide ion
c. the sulfite ion
d. the ammonium ion
e. the copper(I) ion or the cuprous ion

? Exercise 2.18.1

Name each ion.

a. Fe^{2+}
b. Fe^{3+}
c. $SO_4{}^{2-}$
d. Ba^{2+}
e. $HCO_3{}^-$

Answer a:

iron(II) ion

Answer b:

iron(III) ion

Answer c:

sulfate ion

Answer d:

barium ion

Answer e:

hydrogen carbonate ion or bicarbonate ion

✓ Example 2.18.2

Write the formula for each ion.

a. the bromide ion
b. the phosphate ion
c. the cupric ion
d. the magnesium ion

Solution

a. Br^{-}
b. PO_4^{3-}
c. Cu^{2+}
d. Mg^{2+}

? Exercise 2.18.2

Write the formula for each ion.

a. the fluoride ion
b. the carbonate ion
c. the stannous ion
d. the potassium ion

Answer a:

F^{-}

Answer b:

CO_3^{2-}

Answer c:

Sn^{2+}

Answer d:

K^{+}

Naming Binary Ionic Compounds with a Metal that Forms Only One Type of Cation

A **binary** ionic compound is a compound composed of a **monatomic** metal **cation** and a monatomic nonmetal **anion**. The metal cation is named first, followed by the nonmetal anion as shown below for the compound $BaCl_2$. The word *ion* is dropped from both parts.

$BaCl_2$

name of cation (metal) + base name of anion (nonmetal) and -ide

barium chloride

Subscripts in the formula do not affect the name.

✓ Example 2.18.3: Naming Ionic Compounds

Name each ionic compound.

a. $CaCl_2$
b. AlF_3
c. KCl

Solution

a. Using the names of the ions, this ionic compound is named calcium chloride.
b. The name of this ionic compound is aluminum fluoride.

c. The name of this ionic compound is potassium chloride

Exercise 2.18.3

Name each ionic compound.

a. AgI
b. MgO
c. Ca_3P_2

Answer a:

silver iodide

Answer b:

magnesium oxide

Answer c:

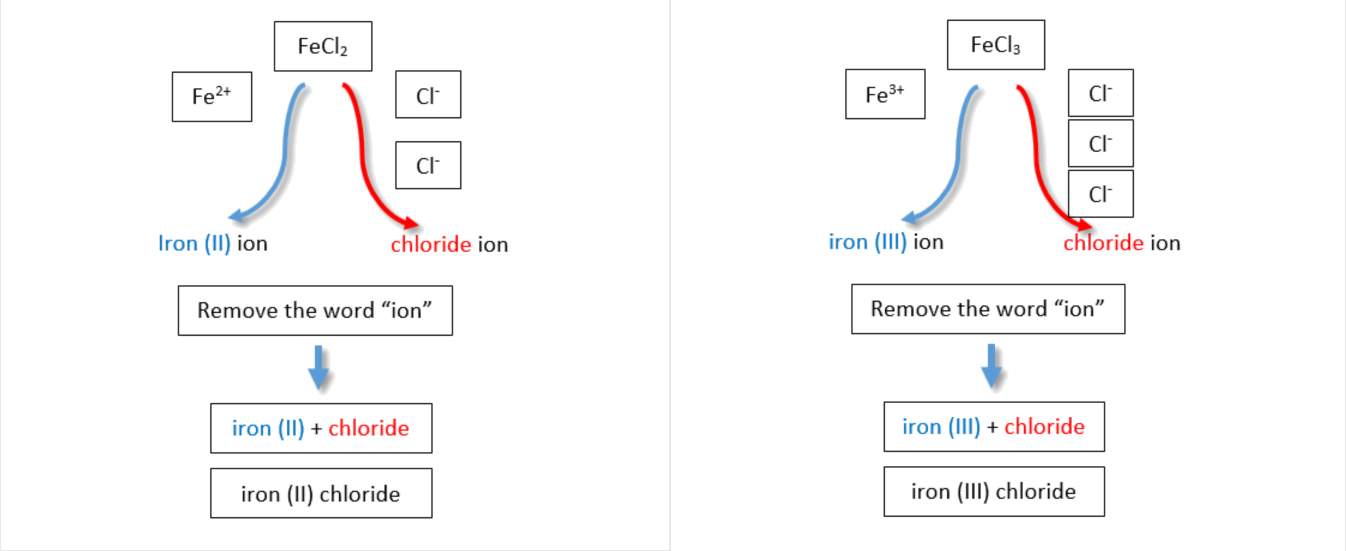
calcium phosphide

Naming Binary Ionic Compounds with a Metal That Forms More Than One Type of Cation

If you are given a formula for an ionic compound whose cation can have more than one possible charge, you must first determine the charge on the cation before identifying its correct name. For example, consider $FeCl_2$ and $FeCl_3$. In the first compound, the iron ion has a 2+ charge because there are two Cl^- ions in the formula (1− charge on each chloride ion). In the second compound, the iron ion has a 3+ charge, as indicated by the three Cl^- ions in the formula. These are two different compounds that need two different names. By the Stock system, the names are iron(II) chloride and iron(III) chloride (Figure 2.18.2).

Table 2.18.3: Naming the $FeCl_2$ and $FeCl_3$ Compounds in the Modern/Stock System.

Name of cation (metal) + (Roman Numeral in parenthesis) + Base name of anion (nonmetal) and *-ide*



Example 2.18.4:

Name each ionic compound.

a. Co_2O_3

b. FeCl2

Solution

	Explanation	Answer
a	We know that cobalt can have more than one possible charge; we just need to determine what it is. • Oxide always has a 2− charge, so with three oxide ions, we have a total negative charge of 6−. • This means that the two cobalt ions have to contribute 6+, which for two cobalt ions means that each one is 3+. • Therefore, the proper name for this ionic compound is cobalt(III) oxide.	cobalt(III) oxide
b	Iron can also have more than one possible charge. • Chloride always has a 1− charge, so with two chloride ions, we have a total negative charge of 2−. • This means that the one iron ion must have a 2+ charge. • Therefore, the proper name for this ionic compound is iron(II) chloride.	iron(II) chloride

? Exercise 2.18.4

Name each ionic compound.

a. $AuCl_3$
b. PbO_2
c. CuO

Answer a:

gold(III) chloride

Answer b:

lead(IV) oxide

Answer c:

copper(II) oxide

Naming Ionic Compounds with Polyatomic Ions

The process of naming ionic compounds with polyatomic ions is the same as naming binary ionic compounds. The cation is named first, followed by the anion. One example is the ammonium sulfate compound in Figure 2.18.6.

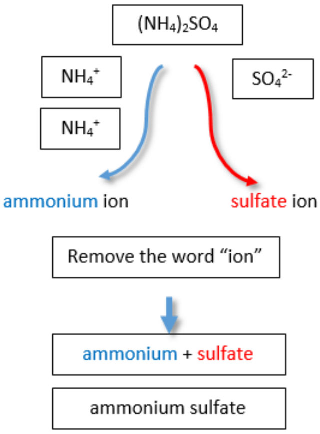


Figure 2.18.2: Naming Ionic Compounds with Polyatomic Ions

✓ Example 2.18.5: Naming Ionic Compounds

Write the proper name for each ionic compound.

a. $(NH_4)_2S$
b. $AlPO_4$,
c. $Fe_3(PO_4)_2$

Solution

Solutions to Example 5.7.5

Explanation	Answer
a. The ammonium ion has a 1+ charge and the sulfide ion has a 2− charge. Two ammonium ions need to balance the charge on a single sulfide ion. The compound’s name is ammonium sulfate.	ammonium sulfide
b. The ions have the same magnitude of charge, one of each (ion) is needed to balance the charges. The name of the compound is aluminum phosphate.	aluminum phosphate
c. Neither charge is an exact multiple of the other, so we have to go to the least common multiple of 6. To get 6+, three iron(II) ions are needed, and to get 6−, two phosphate ions are needed . The compound’s name is iron(II) phosphate.	iron(II) phosphate

? Exercise $2.18.5A$

Write the proper name for each ionic compound.

a. $(NH_4)_3PO_4$
b. $Co(NO_2)_3$

Answer a:

ammonium phosphate

Answer b:

cobalt(III) nitrite

Figure 2.18.1is a synopsis of how to name simple ionic compounds.

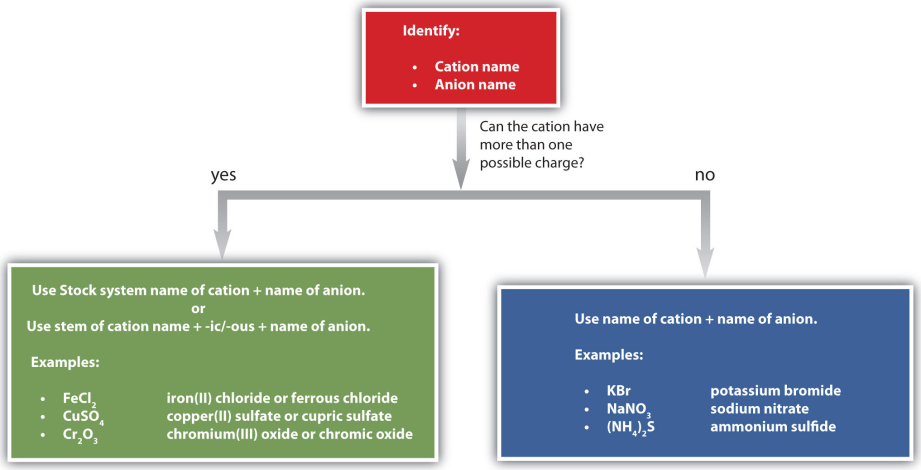


Figure 2.18.3: A Guide to Naming Simple Ionic Compounds.

? Exercise 2.18.5B

Name each ionic compound.

a. $ZnBr_2$
b. Al_2O_3
c. $(NH_4)_3PO_4$
d. AuF_3
e. AgF

Answer a:

zinc bromide

Answer b:

aluminum oxide

Answer c:

ammonium phosphate

Answer d:

gold(III) fluoride or auric fluoride

Answer e:

silver fluoride

Summary

- Ionic compounds are named by stating the cation first, followed by the anion.
- Positive and negative charges must balance.
- Transition metals can often form more than one cation. These ions use a Roman numeral to indicate the charge on the cation.

2.18: Naming Ionic Compounds is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **5.7: Naming Ionic Compounds** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

2.19: Naming Molecular Compounds

Learning Objectives

- Determine the name of a simple molecular compound from its chemical formula.

Molecular Compounds

Molecular compounds are inorganic compounds that take the form of discrete **molecules**. Examples include such familiar substances as water (H_2O) and carbon dioxide (CO_2). These compounds are very different from ionic compounds like sodium chloride $(NaCl)$. Ionic compounds are formed when metal atoms lose one or more of their electrons to nonmetal atoms. The resulting cations and anions are electrostatically attracted to each other.

So what holds the atoms of a molecule together? Rather than forming ions, the atoms of a molecule share their **electrons** in such a way that a **bond** forms between a pair of atoms.

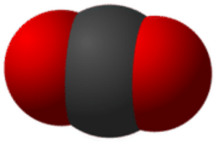


Figure 2.19.1: Carbon dioxide molecules consist of a central carbon atom bonded to 2 oxygen atoms.

Naming Binary Molecular Compounds

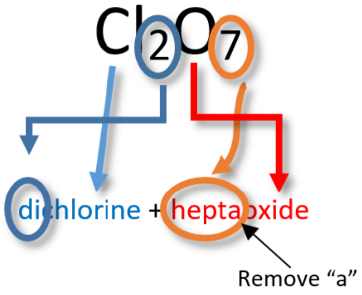
Recall that a molecular formula shows the number of atoms of each element that a molecule contains. A molecule of water contains two hydrogen atoms and one oxygen atom, so its formula is H_2O. A molecule of octane, which is a component of gasoline, contains 8 atoms of carbon and 18 atoms of hydrogen. The molecular formula of octane is C_8H_{18}.

Naming *binary* (two-element) molecular compounds is similar to naming simple ionic compounds. The first element in the formula is simply listed using the name of the element. The second element is named by taking the stem of the element name and adding the suffix *-ide*. A system of numerical prefixes is used to specify the number of atoms in a molecule. Table 2.19.1 lists these numerical prefixes.

Table 2.19.1: Numerical Prefixes for Naming Binary Covalent Compounds

Number of Atoms in Compound	Prefix on the Name of the Element
1	mono-*
2	di-
3	tri-
4	tetra-
5	penta-
6	hexa-
7	hepta-
8	octa-
9	nona-
10	deca-

*This prefix is not used for the first element’s name.



dichlorine heptoxide

Note

- The *a* or *o* at the end of a prefix is usually dropped from the name when the name of the element begins with a vowel. As an example, four oxygen atoms, is tetr**o**xide instead of tetr**ao**xide.
- The prefix is "mono" is not added to the first element's name if there is only one atom of the first element in a molecule.

Some examples of molecular compounds are listed in Table 2.19.2

Table 2.19.2

Formula	Name
NO	nitrogen monoxide
N_2O	dinitrogen monoxide
S_2Cl_2	disulfur dichloride
Cl_2O_7	dichlorine heptoxide

Notice that the *mono*- prefix is not used with the nitrogen in the first compound, but is used with the oxygen in both of the first two examples. The S_2Cl_2 emphasizes that the formulas for molecular compounds are not reduced to their lowest ratios. The *o* of the *mono*- and the *a* of *hepta*- are dropped from the name when paired with oxide.

Exercise 2.19.1

Write the name for each compound.

a. CF_4
b. $SeCl_2$
c. SO_3

Answer a:

carbon tetrafluoride

Answer b:

selenium dichloride

Answer c:

sulfur trioxide

Simple molecular compounds with common names

For some simple covalent compounds, we use common names rather than systematic names. We have already encountered these compounds, but we list them here explicitly:

- H_2O: water

- NH_3: ammonia
- CH_4: methane

Methane is the simplest organic compound. Organic compounds are compounds with carbon atoms and are named by a separate nomenclature system.

Summary

- A molecular compound is usually composed of two or more nonmetal elements.
- Molecular compounds are named with the first element first and then the second element by using the stem of the element name plus the suffix -ide. Numerical prefixes are used to specify the number of atoms in a molecule.

- **5.8: Naming Molecular Compounds** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

3: Module 3 - Stoichiometry

3.1: Avogadro's Number and the Mole

Learning Objectives

- Use Avogadro's number to convert to moles and vice versa given the number of particles of an element.
- Use the molar mass to convert to grams and vice versa given the number of moles of an element.

When objects are very small, it is often inconvenient, inefficient, or even impossible to deal with the objects one at a time. For these reasons, we often deal with very small objects in groups, and have even invented names for various numbers of objects. The most common of these is "dozen" which refers to 12 objects. We frequently buy objects in groups of 12, like doughnuts or pencils. Even smaller objects such as straight pins or staples are usually sold in boxes of 144, or a dozen dozen. A group of 144 is called a "gross".

This problem of dealing with things that are too small to operate with as single items also occurs in chemistry. Atoms and molecules are too small to see, let alone to count or measure. Chemists needed to select a group of atoms or molecules that would be convenient to operate with.

Avogadro's Number and the Mole

In chemistry, it is impossible to deal with a single atom or molecule because we can't see them, count them, or weigh them. Chemists have selected a number of particles with which to work that is convenient. Since molecules are extremely small, you may suspect this number is going to be very large, and you are right. The number of particles in this group is 6.02×10^{23} particles and the name of this group is the **mole** (the abbreviation for ***mole*** is mol). One mole of any object is 6.02×10^{23} of those objects. This number is called Avogadro's number, after the 19th-century Italian scientist who first proposed a relationship between the volumes of gases and the numbers of particles they contain.

The **mole** (symbol: **mol**) is the base unit of amount of substance ("number of substance") in the International System of Units or System International (SI), defined as exactly $6.02214076 \times 10^{23}$ particles, e.g., atoms, molecules, ions or electrons. The current definition was adopted in November 2018, revising its old definition based on the number of atoms in 12 grams of carbon-12 (^{12}C). For most purposes, 6.022×10^{23} provides an adequate number of significant figures. Just as 1 mole of atoms contains 6.022×10^{23} atoms, 1 mole of eggs contains 6.022×10^{23} eggs.

Converting Between Number of Atoms to Moles and Vice Versa

We can use Avogadro's number as a conversion factor, or ratio, in dimensional analysis problems. If we are given the number of atoms of an element X, we can convert it into moles by using the relationship

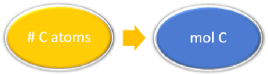
$$1 \text{ mol X} = 6.022 \times 10^{23} \text{ X atoms.}$$

✓ Example 3.1.1: Moles of Carbon

How many moles of carbon atoms is 4.72×10^{24} atoms of carbon?

Solution

Solutions to Example 6.3.1

Steps for Problem Solving	The element carbon exists in two primary forms: graphite and diamond. How many moles of carbon atoms is 4.72×10^{24} atoms of carbon?
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 4.72×10^{24} C atoms Find: mol C
List other known quantities.	$1\,mol = 6.022 \times 10^{23}$ C atoms
Prepare a concept map and use the proper conversion factor.	 $\frac{1\ mol\ C}{6.022\ \times 10^{23} C\ atoms}$

Steps for Problem Solving	The element carbon exists in two primary forms: graphite and diamond. How many moles of carbon atoms is 4.72×10^{24} atoms of carbon?
Cancel units and calculate.	$4.72 \times 10^{24}\ \cancel{\text{C atoms}} \times \frac{1 \text{ mol C}}{6.022 \times 10^{23}\ \cancel{\text{C atoms}}} = 7.84 \text{ mol C}$
Think about your result.	The given number of carbon atoms was greater than Avogadro's number, so the number of moles of C atoms is greater than 1 mole.

Atomic Mass and Molar Mass

The atomic mass is the mass of an atom in amu, or atomic mass units. We can find the average atomic mass on the periodic table - for example, the average atomic mass of Li is 6.94 amu, and the average atomic mass of Zn is 65.38 amu. **Molar mass** is defined as the mass of one mole (6.022×10^{23} particles) of a substance and has units of g/mol. The molar mass is the same number as the atomic mass, but with units of g/mol instead of amu/atom. For example, the molar mass of Li is 6.94 g and the molar mass of Zn is 65.38 g. Each of these quantities contains 6.022×10^{23} atoms of that particular element.

Converting Grams to Moles of an Element and Vice Versa

We can use the molar mass to convert between grams and moles.

For example, to find the mass of 3.25 mol of Li, we would solve as follows:

Notice that the units of moles cancel and we are left with units of grams.

$$3.25\ \cancel{\text{mol Li}} \times \frac{6.94 \text{ g Li}}{1\ \cancel{\text{mol Li}}} = 22.6 \text{ g Li}$$

To find the number of moles in 100.0 g of Zn, we would solve as follows:

$$100.0\ \cancel{\text{g Zn}} \times \frac{1 \text{ mol Zn}}{65.38\ \cancel{\text{g Zn}}} = 1.530 \text{ mol Zn}$$

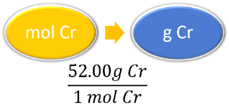
Notice that the units of grams cancel and we are left with units of moles.

✓ Example 3.1.2: Chromium

Chromium metal is used for decorative electroplating of car bumpers and other surfaces. Find the mass of 0.560 moles of chromium.

Solution

Solutions to Example 6.3.2

Steps for Problem Solving	Chromium metal is used for decorative electroplating of car bumpers and other surfaces. Find the mass of 0.560 moles of chromium.
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 0.560 mol Cr Find: g Cr
List other known quantities.	1 mol Cr = 52.00g Cr
Prepare a concept map and use the proper conversion factor.	

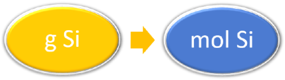
Steps for Problem Solving	Chromium metal is used for decorative electroplating of car bumpers and other surfaces. Find the mass of 0.560 moles of chromium.
Cancel units and calculate.	$0.560\ \cancel{\text{mol Cr}} \times \frac{52.00\text{ g Cr}}{1\ \cancel{\text{mol Cr}}} = 29.1\text{ g Cr}$
Think about your result.	Since the desired amount was slightly more than one half of a mole, the mass should be slightly more than one half of the molar mass. The answer has three significant figures because of the 0.560 mol

Example 3.1.3: Silicon

How many moles are in 107.6g of Si?

Solution

Solutions to Example 6.3.3

Steps for Problem Solving	How many moles are in 107.6g of Si.
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 107.6g Si Find: mol Si
List other known quantities.	1 mol Si = 28.09g Si
Prepare a concept map and use the proper conversion factor.	 $\frac{1\ mol\ Si}{28.09g\ Si}$
Cancel units and calculate.	$107.6\ \cancel{\text{g Si}} \times \frac{1\text{ mol Si}}{28.09\ \cancel{\text{g Si}}} = 3.83\text{ mol Si}$
Think about your result.	Since 1 mol of Si is 28.09g, 107.6 should be about 4 moles.

Exercise 3.1.1

a. How many moles are present in 100.0 g of Al?
b. What is the mass of 0.552 mol of Ag metal?

Answer a:

3.706 mol Al

Answer b:

59.5 g Ag

Summary

- There are $6.02214076 \times 10^{23}$ particles in a mole. This number is called Avogadro's number.
- The molar mass of an element can be found by referring to the atomic mass on a periodic table with units of g/mol.
- Using dimensional analysis, it is possible to convert between grams, moles, and the number of atoms or molecules.

Further Reading/Supplemental Links

- learner.org/resources/series61.html - The ***learner.org*** website allows users to view streaming videos of the Annenberg series of chemistry videos. You are required to register before you can watch the videos, but there is no charge. The website has one video that relates to this lesson called ***The Mole***.
- Using Avogadro's law, the mass of a substance can be related to the number of particles contained in that mass. The Mole: (www.learner.org/vod/vod_window.html?pid=803)
- Vision Learning tutorial: The Mole http://visionlearning.com/library/mo...p?mid-53&1=&c3=

Contributions & Attributions

-
- Wikipedia
- edited by Spencer Berger

3.1: Avogadro's Number and the Mole is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **6.3: Counting Atoms by the Gram** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

3.2: Mole Ratios Within Compounds

Learning Objectives

- Use chemical formulas as conversion factors.

Figure 3.2.1 shows that we need 2 hydrogen atoms and 1 oxygen atom to make one water molecule. If we want to make two water molecules, we will need 4 hydrogen atoms and 2 oxygen atoms. If we want to make five molecules of water, we need 10 hydrogen atoms and 5 oxygen atoms. The ratio of atoms we will need to make any number of water molecules is the same: 2 hydrogen atoms to 1 oxygen atom.

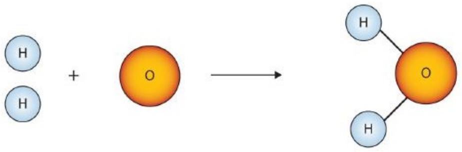


Figure 3.2.1 Water Molecules. The ratio of hydrogen atoms to oxygen atoms used to make water molecules is always 2:1, no matter how many water molecules are being made.

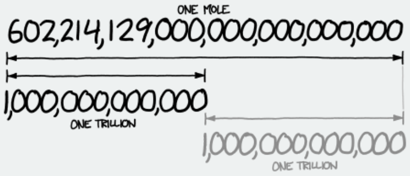
Using formulas to indicate how many atoms of each element we have in a substance, we can relate the number of moles of molecules to the number of moles of atoms. For example, in 1 mol of water (H_2O) we can construct the relationships given in (Table 3.2.1).

Table 3.2.1: Molecular Relationships for Water

1 Molecule of H_2O Has	1 Mol of H_2O Has	Molecular Relationships
2 H atoms	2 mol of H atoms	$\frac{2\text{ mol H atoms}}{1\text{ mol H}_2\text{O molecules}}$ or $\frac{1\text{ mol H}_2\text{O molecules}}{2\text{ mol H atoms}}$
1 O atom	1 mol of O atoms	$\frac{1\text{ mol O atoms}}{1\text{ mol H}_2\text{O molecules}}$ or $\frac{1\text{ mol H}_2\text{O molecules}}{1\text{ mol O atoms}}$

The Mole is big

A mole represents a very large number! The number 602,214,129,000,000,000,000,000 looks about twice as long as a trillion, which means it's about a trillion trillion.



(CC BY-SA NC; what if? [what-if.xkcd.com]).

A trillion trillion kilograms is how much a planet weighs. If 1 mol of quarters were stacked in a column, it could stretch back and forth between Earth and the sun *6.8 billion* times.

Table 3.2.2: Molecular and Mass Relationships for Ethanol

1 Molecule of C_2H_6O Has	1 Mol of C_2H_6O Has	Molecular and Mass Relationships
2 C atoms	2 mol of C atoms	$\frac{2\text{ mol C atoms}}{1\text{ mol C}_2\text{H}_6\text{O molecules}}$ or $\frac{1\text{ mol C}_2\text{H}_6\text{O molecules}}{2\text{ mol C atoms}}$
6 H atoms	6 mol of H atoms	$\frac{6\text{ mol H atoms}}{1\text{ mol C}_2\text{H}_6\text{O molecules}}$ or $\frac{1\text{ mol C}_2\text{H}_6\text{O molecules}}{6\text{ mol H atoms}}$

1 Molecule of C_2H_6O Has	1 Mol of C_2H_6O Has	Molecular and Mass Relationships
1 O atom	1 mol of O atoms	$\frac{1\ \text{mol O atoms}}{1\ \text{mol C}_2\text{H}_6\text{O molecules}}$ or $\frac{1\ \text{mol C}_2\text{H}_6\text{O molecules}}{1\ \text{mol O atoms}}$
2 (12.01 amu) C 24.02 amu C	2 (12.01 g) C 24.02 g C	$\frac{24.02\ \text{g C}}{1\ \text{mol C}_2\text{H}_6\text{O molecules}}$ or $\frac{1\ \text{mol C}_2\text{H}_6\text{O molecules}}{24.02\ \text{g C}}$
6 (1.008 amu) H 6.048 amu H	6 (1.008 g) H 6.048 g H	$\frac{6.048\ \text{g H}}{1\ \text{mol C}_2\text{H}_6\text{O molecules}}$ or $\frac{1\ \text{mol C}_2\text{H}_6\text{O molecules}}{6.048\ \text{g H}}$
1 (16.00 amu) O 16.00 amu O	1 (16.00 g) O 16.00 g O	$\frac{16.00\ \text{g O}}{1\ \text{mol C}_2\text{H}_6\text{O molecules}}$ or $\frac{1\ \text{mol C}_2\text{H}_6\text{O molecules}}{16.00\ \text{g O}}$

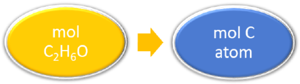
The following example illustrates how we can use the relationships in Table 3.2.2 as conversion factors.

✓ Example 3.2.1: Ethanol

If a sample consists of 2.5 mol of ethanol (C_2H_6O), how many moles of carbon atoms does it have?

Solution

Solutions to Example 6.5.1

Steps for Problem Solving	If a sample consists of 2.5 mol of ethanol (C_2H_6O), how many moles of carbon atoms does it have?
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 2.5 mol C_2H_6O Find: mol C atoms
List other known quantities.	1 mol C_2H_6O = 2 mol C
Prepare a concept map and use the proper conversion factor.	 $\frac{2\ mol\ C}{1\ mol\ C_2H_6O}$
Cancel units and calculate.	Note how the unit *mol C_2H_6O molecules* cancels algebraically. $2.5\ \cancel{\text{mol C}_2\text{H}_6\text{O molecules}} \times \frac{2\ \text{mol C atoms}}{1\ \cancel{\text{mol C}_2\text{H}_6\text{O molecules}}} = 5.0\ \text{mol C at}$
Think about your result.	There are twice as many C atoms in one C_2H_6O molecule, so the final amount should be double.

? Exercise 3.2.1

If a sample contains 6.75 mol of Na_2SO_4, how many moles of sodium atoms, sulfur atoms, and oxygen atoms does it have?

Answer

13.5 mol Na atoms, 6.75 mol S atoms, and 27.0 mol O atoms

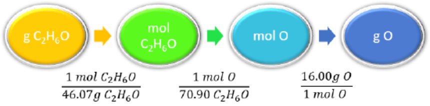
The fact that 1 mol equals 6.022×10^{23} items can also be used as a conversion factor.

✓ Example 3.2.2: Oxygen Mass

Determine the mass of Oxygen in 75.0g of C_2H_6O.

Solution

Solutions to Example 6.5.2

Steps for Problem Solving	Determine the mass of Oxygen in 75.0g of C_2H_6O
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 75.0g C_2H_6O Find: g O
List other known quantities.	1 mol O = 16.0g O 1 mol C_2H_6O = 1 mol O 1 mol C_2H_6O = 46.07g C_2H_6O
Prepare a concept map and use the proper conversion factor.	 The conversion factors are 1 mol C2H6O over 46.07 g C2H6O, 1 mol O over 1 mol C2H6O, and 16.00 g O over 1 mole O.
Cancel units and calculate.	$75.0\ \text{g}\ \cancel{\text{C}_2\text{H}_6\text{O}} \times \frac{1\ \text{mol}\ \cancel{\text{C}_2\text{H}_6\text{O}}}{46.07\ \text{g}\ \cancel{\text{C}_2\text{H}_6\text{O}}} \times \frac{1\ \cancel{\text{mol O}}}{1\ \text{mol}\ \cancel{\text{C}_2\text{H}_6\text{O}}} \times \frac{16.00\ \text{g O}}{1\ \cancel{\text{mol O}}} = 26$
Think about your result.	

? Exercise 3.2.2

a. How many molecules are present in 16.02 mol of C_4H_{10}? How many C atoms are in 16.02 mol?
b. How many moles of each type of atom are in 2.58 mol of Na_2SO_4?

Answer a:

9.647 x 10^{24} C_4H_{10} molecules and 3.859 x 10^{25} C atoms

Answer b:

5.16 mol Na atoms, 2.58 mol S atoms, and 10.3 mol O atoms

Summary

In any given formula, the ratio of the number of moles of molecules (or formula units) to the number of moles of atoms can be used as a conversion factor.

3.3: MOLAR MASS OF MOLECULES

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Determine the molar mass of a compound from the chemical formula.
- Convert between grams, moles, and number of particles.

MOLECULAR AND FORMULA MASSES

The molecular mass of a substance is the sum of the average masses of the atoms in one molecule of a substance. It is calculated by adding together the atomic masses of the elements in the substance, each multiplied by its subscript (written or implied) in the molecular formula. Because the units of atomic mass are atomic mass units, the units of molecular mass are also atomic mass units. The procedure for calculating molecular masses is illustrated in Example 3.3.1.

EXAMPLE 3.3.1: ETHANOL

Calculate the molecular mass of ethanol, whose condensed structural formula is CH_3CH_2OH. Among its many uses, ethanol is a fuel for internal combustion engines

Solution

Solutions to Example 6.4.1

Steps for Problem Solving	Calculate the molecular mass of ethanol, whose condensed structural formula is CH_3CH_2OH
Identify the "given"information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: Ethanol molecule (CH_3CH_2OH) Find: molecular mass
Determine the number of atoms of each element in the molecule.	The molecular formula of ethanol may be written in three different ways: • CH_3CH_2OH (which illustrates the presence of an ethyl group • CH_3CH_{2-}, and an −OH group) • C_2H_5OH, and C_2H_6O; All show that ethanol has two carbon atoms, six hydrogen atoms, and one oxygen atom.
Obtain the atomic masses of each element from the periodic table and multiply the atomic mass of each element by the number of atoms of that element.	1 C atom = 12.011 amu 1 H atom = 1.0079 amu 1 O atom = 15.9994 amu
Add the masses together to obtain the molecular mass.	2C: (2 atoms)(12.011amu/atom) = 24.022 amu 6H: (6 atoms)(1.0079amu/atom) = 6.0474amu +1O: (1 atoms)(15.9994amu/atom) =15.9994amu C_2H_6O : molecular mass of ethanol = 46.069amu

Unlike molecules, which form covalent bonds, ionic compounds do not have a readily identifiable molecular unit. Therefore, for ionic compounds, the **formula mass** (also called the empirical formula mass) of the compound is used instead of the molecular mass. The formula mass is the sum of the atomic masses of all the elements in the empirical formula, each multiplied by its subscript (written or implied). It is directly analogous to the molecular mass of a covalent compound. The units are atomic mass units.

> *Atomic mass, molecular mass, and formula mass all have the same units: atomic mass units.*

EXAMPLE 3.3.2: CALCIUM PHOSPHATE

Calculate the formula mass of $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$, commonly called calcium phosphate. This compound is the principal source of calcium found in bovine milk.

Solution

Solutions to Example 6.4.2

Steps for Problem Solving	Calculate the formula mass of $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$, commonly called calcium phosphate.
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: Calcium phosphate [$Ca_3(PO_4)_2$] formula unit Find: formula mass
Determine the number of atoms of each element in the molecule.	• The empirical formula—$Ca_3(PO_4)_2$—indicates that the simplest electrically neutral unit of calcium phosphate contains three Ca^{2+} ions and two PO_4^{3-} ions. • The formula mass of this molecular unit is calculated by adding together the atomic masses of three calcium atoms, two phosphorus atoms, and eight oxygen atoms.
Obtain the atomic masses of each element from the periodic table and multiply the atomic mass of each element by the number of atoms of that element.	1 Ca atom = 40.078 amu 1 P atom = 30.973761 amu 1 O atom = 15.9994 amu
Add together the masses to give the formula mass.	3Ca: (3 atoms) (40.078 amu/atom)=120.234amu 2P: (2 atoms) (30.973761amu/atom)=61.947522amu + 8O: (8 atoms)(15.9994amu/atom)=127.9952amu Formula mass of $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$=310.177amu

MOLAR MASS

The molar mass of a substance is defined as the mass in grams of 1 mole of that substance. For an element, the molar mass is the mass of 1 mol of atoms of that element; for a covalent molecular compound, it is the mass of 1 mol of molecules of that compound; for an ionic compound, it is the mass of 1 mol of formula units. That is, the molar mass of a substance is the mass (in grams per mole) of 6.022×10^{23} atoms, molecules, or formula units of that substance. In each case, the number of grams in 1 mol is the same as the number of atomic mass units that describe the atomic mass, the molecular mass, or the formula mass, respectively.

> *The molar mass of any substance is its atomic mass, molecular mass, or formula mass in grams per mole.*

The periodic table lists the atomic mass of carbon as 12.011 amu; the molar mass of carbon—the mass of 6.022×10^{23} carbon atoms—is therefore 12.011 g/mol:

Table 3.3.1: Molar Mass of Select Substances

Substance (formula)	Basic Unit	Atomic, Molecular, or Formula Mass (amu)	Molar Mass (g/mol)
carbon (C)	atom	12.011 (atomic mass)	12.011
ethanol (C_2H_5OH)	molecule	46.069 (molecular mass)	46.069
calcium phosphate [$Ca_3(PO_4)_2$]	formula unit	310.177 (formula mass)	310.177

CONVERTING BETWEEN GRAMS AND MOLES OF A COMPOUND

The molar mass of any substance is the mass in grams of one mole of representative particles of that substance. The representative particles can be atoms, molecules, or formula units of ionic compounds. This relationship is frequently used in the laboratory. Suppose that for a certain experiment you need 3.00 moles of calcium chloride $(CaCl_2)$. Since calcium chloride is a solid, it would be convenient to use a balance to measure the mass that is needed. Dimensional analysis will allow you to calculate the mass of $CaCl_2$ that you should measure as shown in Example 3.3.3.

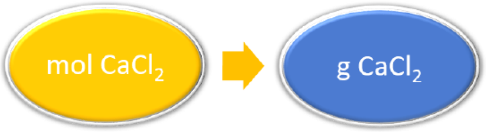
✓ EXAMPLE 3.3.3: CALCIUM CHLORIDE

Calculate the mass of 3.00 moles of calcium chloride ($CaCl_2$).

Figure 3.3.3: Calcium chloride is used as a drying agent and as a road deicer.

Solution

Solutions to Example 6.4.3

Steps for Problem Solving	Calculate the mass of 3.00 moles of calcium chloride
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 3.00 moles of $CaCl_2$ Find: g $CaCl_2$
List other known quantities.	1 mol $CaCl_2$ = 110.98 g $CaCl_2$
Prepare a concept map and use the proper conversion factor.	 $\frac{110.98\ g\ CaCl_2}{1\ mol\ CaCl_2}$
Cancel units and calculate.	$3.00\ \cancel{\text{mol CaCl}_2} \times \frac{110.98\text{ g CaCl}_2}{1\ \cancel{\text{mol CaCl}_2}} = 333\text{ g CaCl}_2$
Think about your result.	

? EXERCISE 3.3.3: CALCIUM OXIDE

What is the mass of 7.50 mol of (calcium oxide) CaO?

Answer

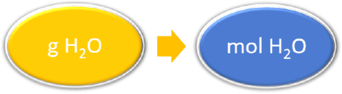
420.60 g

✓ EXAMPLE 3.3.4: WATER

How many moles are present in 108 grams of water?

Solution

Solutions to Example 6.4.4

Steps for Problem Solving	How many moles are present in 108 grams of water?
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 108 g H_2O Find: mol H_2O
List other known quantities.	$1\text{ mol H}_2\text{O} = 18.02\text{ g H2O}$
Prepare a concept map and use the proper conversion factor.	 $\frac{1\ mol\ H_2O}{18.02\ g\ H_2O}$
Cancel units and calculate.	$108\ \cancel{\text{g H}_2\text{O}} \times \frac{1\text{ mol H}_2\text{O}}{18.02\ \cancel{\text{g H}_2\text{O}}} = 5.99\text{ mol H}_2\text{O}$
Think about your result.	

? EXERCISE 3.3.4: NITROGEN GAS

What is the mass of 7.50 mol of Nitrogen gas N_2?

Answer

210 g

CONVERSIONS BETWEEN MASS AND NUMBER OF PARTICLES

In "Conversions Between Moles and Mass", you learned how to convert back and forth between moles and the number of representative particles. Now you have seen how to convert back and forth between moles and mass of a substance in grams. We can combine the two types of problems into one. Mass and number of particles are both related to moles. To convert from mass to number of particles or vice-versa, it will first require a conversion to moles as shown in Figure 3.3.1 and Example 3.3.5.

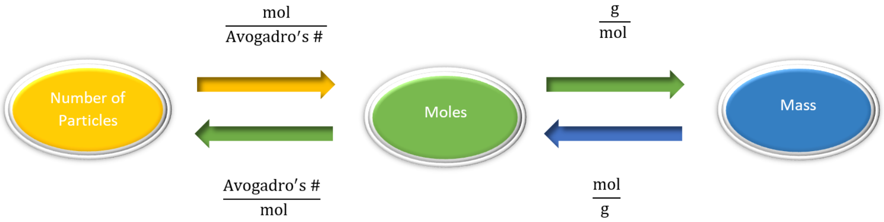


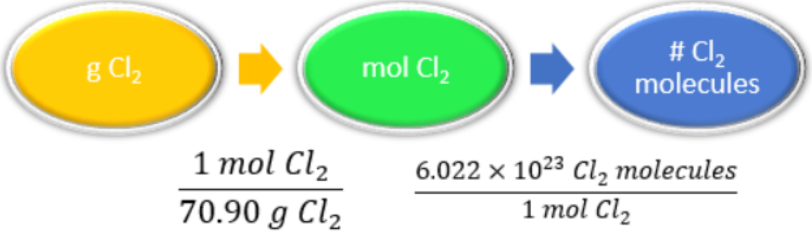
Figure 3.3.4: Conversion from number of particles to mass, or from mass to number of particles, requires two steps. To convert from number of particles to moles, use mol/Avogrado's #, an d to convert from moles to mass, use g/mol.

✓ EXAMPLE 3.3.5: CHLORINE

How many molecules is 20.0 g of chlorine gas, Cl_2?

Solution

Solutions to Example 6.4.5

Steps for Problem Solving	How many molecules is 20.0 g of chlorine gas, Cl_2?
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 20.0 g Cl_2 Find: # Cl_2 molecules
List other known quantities.	• 1 mol Cl_2 = 70.90 g Cl_2, • 1mol Cl_2 = 6.022×10^{23} Cl_2 molecules
Prepare a concept map and use the proper conversion factor.	 The conversion factors are 1 mole Cl_2 over 70.90 grams Cl_2, and $6.022 \times 10^{2}3Cl_2$ molecules over 1 mole Cl_2.
Cancel units and calculate.	$20.0\ \text{g}\ \cancel{\text{Cl}_2} \times \frac{1\ \text{mol}\ \cancel{\text{Cl}_2}}{70.90\ \text{g}\ \cancel{\text{Cl}_2}} \times \frac{6.02 \times 10^{23}\ \text{molecules Cl}_2}{1\ \text{mol}\ \cancel{\text{Cl}_2}}$ $= 1.70 \times 10^{23}$ molecules Cl_2
Think about your result.	Since the given mass is less than half of the molar mass of chlorine, the resulting number of molecules is less than half of Avogadro's number.

? EXERCISE 3.3.5: CALCIUM CHLORIDE

How many formula units are in 25.0 g of $CaCl_2$?

Answer

1.36×10^{23} $CaCl_2$ formula units

3.4: Mass Percent Composition of Compounds

Learning Objectives

- Determine percent composition of each element in a compound based on mass.

Packaged foods that you eat typically have nutritional information provided on the label. The label on a jar of peanut butter reveals that one serving size is considered to be 32 g. The label also gives the masses of various types of compounds that are present in each serving. One serving contains 7 g of protein, 15 g of fat, and 3 g of sugar. By calculating the fraction of protein, fat, or sugar in one serving size of peanut butter and converting to percent values, we can determine the composition of peanut butter on a percent by mass basis.

Percent Composition

Chemists often need to know what elements are present in a compound and in what percentage. The **percent composition** is the percent by mass of each element in a compound. It is calculated in a similar way to that of the composition of the peanut butter.

$$\% \text{ by mass} = \frac{\text{mass of element}}{\text{mass of compound}} \times 100\%$$

The sample problem below shows the calculation of the percent composition of a compound based on mass data.

Example $3.4.1$: Percent Composition from Mass Data

A certain newly synthesized compound is known to contain the elements zinc and oxygen. When a 20.00 g sample of the compound is decomposed, $16.07 \text{ g}$of zinc remains. Determine the percent composition of the compound.

Solution

Solutions to Example 6.6.1

Steps for Problem Solving	When a 20.00 g sample of the zinc-and-oxygen compound is decomposed, 16.07 g of zinc remains. Determine the percent composition of the compound.
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given : Mass of compound = 20.00 g Mass of Zn = 16.07 g Find: % Composition (% Zn and %O)
List other known quantities.	Subtract to find the mass of oxygen in the compound. Divide each element's mass by the mass of the compound to find the percent by mass. Mass of oxygen = 20.00 g - 16.07 g = 3.93 g O
Cancel units and calculate.	$$\% \text{ Zn} = \frac{16.07 \text{ g Zn}}{20.00 \text{ g}} \times 100\% = 80.35\% \text{ Zn}$$ $$\% \text{ O} = \frac{3.93 \text{ g O}}{20.00 \text{ g}} \times 100\% = 19.65\% \text{ O}$$ Calculate the percent by mass of each element by dividing the mass of that element by the mass of the compound and multiplying by 100%.
Think about your result.	The calculations make sense because the sum of the two percentages adds up to 100%. By mass, the compound is mostly zinc.

Exercise 3.4.1

Sulfuric acid, H_2SO_4 is a very useful chemical in industrial processes. If 196.0 g of sulfuric acid contained 64.0g oxygen and 4.0 g of hydrogen, what is the percent composition of the compound?

Answer

2.04% H, 32.65% S, and 65.3% O

Summary

- Processes are described for calculating the percent composition of a compound based on mass.

3.5: Mass Percent Composition from a Chemical Formula

Learning Objectives

- Determine the percent composition of each element in a compound from the chemical formula.

The percent composition of a compound can also be determined from the formula of the compound. The subscripts in the formula are first used to calculate the mass of each element in one mole of the compound. This is divided by the molar mass of the compound and multiplied by 100%.

$$\% \text{ by mass} = \frac{\text{mass of element in 1 mol}}{\text{molar mass of compound}} \times 100\%$$

The percent composition of a given compound is always the same, given that the compound is pure.

Example $3.5.1$

Dichlorine heptoxide $\left(\mathrm{Cl_2O_7}\right)$ is a highly reactive compound used in some organic synthesis reactions. Calculate the percent composition of dichlorine heptoxide.

Solution

Solutions to Example 6.7.1

Steps for Problem Solving	**Calculate the percent composition of dichlorine heptoxide $\left(\mathrm{Cl_2O_7}\right)$.**
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given : $\mathrm{Cl_2O_7}$ Find: % Composition (% Cl and %O)
List other known quantities.	Mass of Cl in 1 mol $\mathrm{Cl_2O_7}$, 2 Cl : 2 x 35.45 g = 70.90 g Mass of O in 1 mol $\mathrm{Cl_2O_7}$, 7 O: 7 x 16.00 g = 112.00 g Molar mass of $\mathrm{Cl_2O_7}$ = 182.90 g/mol
Cancel units and calculate.	$\%\mathrm{Cl} = \frac{70.90 \text{ g Cl}}{182.90 \text{ g}} \times 100\% = 38.76\% \text{ Cl}$ $\% \text{ O} = \frac{112.00 \text{ g O}}{182.90 \text{ g}} \times 100\% = 61.24\% \text{ O}$ Calculate the percent by mass of each element by dividing the mass of that element in 1 mole of the compound by the molar mass of the compound and multiplying by 100%.
Think about your result.	The percentages add up to 100%.

Percent composition can also be used to determine the mass of a certain element that is contained in any mass of a compound. In the previous sample problem, it was found that the percent composition of dichlorine heptoxide is 38.76% Cl and 61.24% O. Suppose that you needed to know the masses of chlorine and oxygen present in a 12.50 g sample of dichlorine heptoxide. You can set up a conversion factor based on the percent by mass of each element.

$$12.50 \text{ g } \mathrm{Cl_2O_7} \times \frac{38.76 \text{ g Cl}}{100 \text{ g } \mathrm{Cl_2O_7}} = 4.845 \text{ g Cl}$$

$$12.50 \text{ g } \mathrm{Cl_2O_7} \times \frac{61.24 \text{ g O}}{100 \text{ g } \mathrm{Cl_2O_7}} = 7.655 \text{ g O}$$

The sum of the two masses is 12.50 g the mass of the sample size.

? Exercise 3.5.1

Barium fluoride (BaF_2) is a transparent crystal that can be found in nature as the mineral frankdicksonite. Determine the percent composition of barium fluoride.

Answer a:

78.32% Ba and 21.67% F

Summary

- Processes are described for calculating the percent composition of a compound based on the chemical formula.

3.6: The Chemical Equation

Learning Objectives

- Identify the reactants and products in any chemical reaction.
- Convert word equations into chemical equations.
- Use the common symbols, (s), (l), (g), (aq), and $\rightarrow$ appropriately when writing a chemical reaction.

In a chemical change, new substances are formed. In order for this to occur, the chemical bonds of the substances break, and the atoms that compose them separate and rearrange themselves into new substances with new chemical bonds. When this process occurs, we call it a chemical reaction. A **chemical reaction** is the process in which one or more substances are changed into one or more new substances.

Reactants and Products

To describe a chemical reaction, we need to indicate what substances are present at the beginning and what substances are present at the end. The substances that are present at the beginning are called **reactants** and the substances present at the end are called **products**.

Sometimes when reactants are put into a reaction vessel, a reaction will take place to produce products. Reactants are the starting materials, that is, whatever we have as our initial ingredients. The products are just that—what is produced—or the result of what happens to the reactants when we put them together in the reaction vessel. If we think about baking chocolate chip cookies, our reactants would be flour, butter, sugar, vanilla, baking soda, salt, egg, and chocolate chips. What would be the products? Cookies! The reaction vessel would be our mixing bowl.

$$\underbrace{\text{Flour} + \text{Butter} + \text{Sugar} + \text{Vanilla} + \text{Baking Soda} + \text{Eggs} + \text{Chocolate Chips}}_{\text{Ingredients} = \text{Reactants}} \rightarrow \underbrace{\text{Cookies}}_{\text{Product}}$$

Writing Chemical Equations

When sulfur dioxide is added to oxygen, sulfur trioxide is produced. Sulfur dioxide and oxygen, $\mathrm{SO_2 + O_2}$, are reactants and sulfur trioxide, $\mathrm{SO_3}$, is the product.

$$\underbrace{2\,\mathrm{SO_2(g)} + \mathrm{O_2(g)}}_{\text{Reactants}} \rightarrow \underbrace{2\,\mathrm{SO_3(g)}}_{\text{Products}}$$

In chemical reactions, the reactants are found before the symbol "$\rightarrow$" and the products are found after the symbol "$\rightarrow$". The general equation for a reaction is:

$$\text{Reactants } \rightarrow \text{Products}$$

There are a few special symbols that we need to know in order to "talk" in chemical shorthand. In the table below is the summary of the major symbols used in chemical equations. Table $3.6.1$ shows a listing of symbols used in chemical equations.

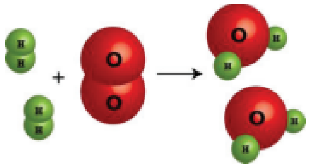
Table $3.6.1$: Symbols Used in Chemical Equations

Symbol	Description	Symbol	Description
$+$	used to separate multiple reactants or products	(s)	reactant or product in the solid state
$\rightarrow$	yield sign; separates reactants from products	(l)	reactant or product in the liquid state
$\rightleftharpoons$	replaces the yield sign for reversible reactions that reach equilibrium	(g)	reactant or product in the gas state

Symbol	Description	Symbol	Description
$\xrightarrow{\text{Pt}}$	formula written above the arrow is used as a catalyst in the reaction	(aq)	reactant or product in an aqueous solution (dissolved in water)
$\xrightarrow{\Delta}$	triangle indicates that the reaction is being heated		

Chemists have a choice of methods for describing a chemical reaction.

1. They could draw a picture of the chemical reaction.



2. They could write a word equation for the chemical reaction:
"Two molecules of hydrogen gas react with one molecule of oxygen gas to produce two molecules of water vapor."

3. They could write the equation in chemical shorthand.

$$2\mathrm{H_2}\,(g) + \mathrm{O_2}\,(g) \rightarrow 2\mathrm{H_2O}\,(g)$$

In the symbolic equation, chemical formulas are used instead of chemical names for reactants and products, while symbols are used to indicate the phase of each substance. It should be apparent that the chemical shorthand method is the quickest and clearest method for writing chemical equations.

We could write that an aqueous solution of calcium nitrate is added to an aqueous solution of sodium hydroxide to produce solid calcium hydroxide and an aqueous solution of sodium nitrate. Or in shorthand we could write:

$$\mathrm{Ca(NO_3)_2}\,(aq) + 2\mathrm{NaOH}\,(aq) \rightarrow \mathrm{Ca(OH)_2}\,(s) + 2\mathrm{NaNO_3}\,(aq)$$

How much easier is that to read? Let's try it in reverse. Look at the following reaction in shorthand and write the word equation for the reaction:

$$\mathrm{Cu}\,(s) + \mathrm{AgNO_3}\,(aq) \rightarrow \mathrm{Cu(NO_3)_2}\,(aq) + \mathrm{Ag}\,(s)$$

The word equation for this reaction might read something like "solid copper reacts with an aqueous solution of silver nitrate to produce a solution of copper (II) nitrate with solid silver."

To turn word equations into symbolic equations, we need to follow the given steps:

1. Identify the reactants and products. This will help you know which symbols go on each side of the arrow and where the $+$ signs go.
2. Write the correct formulas for all compounds. You will need to use the rules you learned in Chapter 5 (including making all ionic compounds charge balanced).
3. Write the correct formulas for all elements. Usually this is given straight off of the periodic table. However, there are seven elements that are considered diatomic, meaning that they are always found in pairs in nature. They include those elements listed in the table.

Table 3.6.1: *Diatomic Elements*

Element Name	Hydrogen	Nitrogen	Oxygen	Fluorine	Chlorine	Bromine	Iodine
Formula	H_2	N_2	O_2	F_2	Cl_2	Br_2	I_2

Example 3.6.1

Transfer the following symbolic equations into word equations or word equations into symbolic equations.

a. $\mathrm{HCl}\,(aq)+\mathrm{NaOH}\,(aq)\rightarrow\mathrm{NaCl}\,(aq)+\mathrm{H_2O}\,(l)$
b. Gaseous propane, $\mathrm{C_3H_8}$, burns in oxygen gas to produce gaseous carbon dioxide and liquid water.
c. Hydrogen fluoride gas reacts with an aqueous solution of potassium carbonate to produce an aqueous solution of potassium fluoride, liquid water, and gaseous carbon dioxide.

Solution

a. An aqueous solution of hydrochloric acid reacts with an aqueous solution of sodium hydroxide to produce an aqueous solution of sodium chloride and liquid water.

b. Reactants: propane ($\mathrm{C_3H_8}$) and oxygen ($\mathrm{O_2}$)

Product: carbon dioxide ($\mathrm{CO_2}$) and water ($\mathrm{H_2O}$)

$$\mathrm{C_3H_8}\,(g)+\mathrm{O_2}\,(g)\rightarrow\mathrm{CO_2}\,(g)+\mathrm{H_2O}\,(l)$$

c. Reactants: hydrogen fluoride and potassium carbonate

Products: potassium fluoride, water, and carbon dioxide

$$\mathrm{HF}\,(g)+\mathrm{K_2CO_3}\,(aq)\rightarrow\mathrm{KF}\,(aq)+\mathrm{H_2O}\,(l)+\mathrm{CO_2}\,(g)$$

Exercise 3.6.1

Transfer the following symbolic equations into word equations or word equations into symbolic equations.

a. Hydrogen gas reacts with nitrogen gas to produce gaseous ammonia.
b. $\mathrm{HCl}\,(aq)+\mathrm{LiOH}\,(aq)\rightarrow\mathrm{LiCl}\,(aq)+\mathrm{H_2O}\,(l)$
c. Copper metal is heated with oxygen gas to produce solid copper(II) oxide.

Answer a

$H_2(g)+N_2(g)\rightarrow NH_3(g)$

Answer b

An aqueous solution of hydrochloric acid reacts with an aqueous solution of lithium hydroxide to produce an aqueous solution of lithium chloride and liquid water.

Answer c

$Cu(s)+O_2(g)\rightarrow CuO(s)$

Summary

- A chemical reaction is the process by which one or more substances are changed into one or more new substances.
- Chemical reactions are represented by chemical equations.
- Chemical equations have reactants on the left, an arrow that is read as "yields", and the products on the right.

3.6: The Chemical Equation is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **7.3: The Chemical Equation** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

3.7: Balancing Chemical Equations

Learning Objectives

- Explain the roles of subscripts and coefficients in chemical equations.
- Balance a chemical equation when given the unbalanced equation.

In chemical reactions, atoms are never created or destroyed. The same atoms that were present in the reactants are present in the products—they are merely reorganized into different arrangements.

Coefficients and Subscripts

There are two types of numbers that appear in chemical equations. There are subscripts, which are part of the chemical formulas of the reactants and products; and there are coefficients that are placed in front of the formulas to indicate how many molecules of that substance is used or produced.

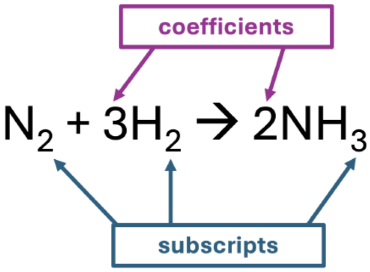
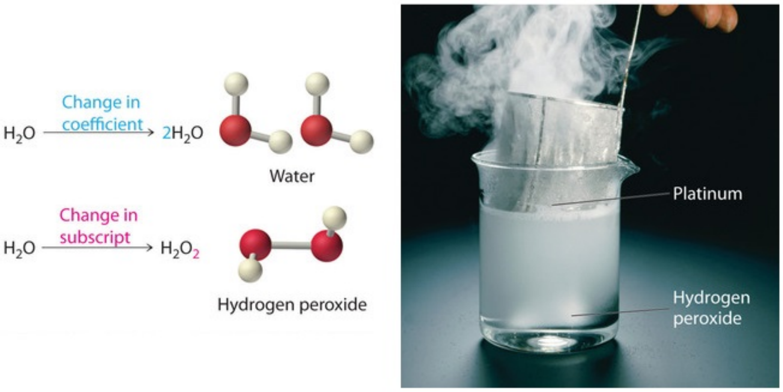


Figure $3.7.1$: Coefficients and Subscripts. You cannot change subscripts in a chemical formula to balance a chemical equation; you can change only the coefficients. Changing subscripts changes the ratios of atoms in the molecule and the resulting chemical properties.

The **subscripts** are part of the formulas and once the formulas for the reactants and products are determined, the subscripts may not be changed. The **coefficients** indicate the number of each substance involved in the reaction and may be changed in order to balance the equation.

Balancing a Chemical Equation

Because the identities of the reactants and products are fixed, the equation cannot be balanced by changing the subscripts of the reactants or the products. To do so would change the chemical identity of the species being described, as illustrated in Figure $3.7.1$.



Original molecule H_2O: if the coefficient 2 is added in front, that makes 2 water molecules; but if the subscript 2 is added to make H_2O_2, that's hydrogen peroxide.

The simplest and most generally useful method for balancing chemical equations is “inspection,” better known as trial and error. The following is an efficient approach to balancing a chemical equation using this method.

Steps in Balancing a Chemical Equation

1. Identify the most complex substance.
2. Beginning with that substance, choose an element(s) that appears in only one reactant and one product, if possible. Adjust the coefficients to obtain the same number of atoms of this element(s) on both sides.
3. Balance polyatomic ions (if present on both sides of the chemical equation) as a unit.
4. Balance the remaining atoms, usually ending with the least complex substance and using fractional coefficients if necessary. If a fractional coefficient has been used, multiply both sides of the equation by the denominator to obtain whole numbers for the coefficients.
5. Count the numbers of atoms of each kind on both sides of the equation to be sure that the chemical equation is balanced.

✓ Example 3.7.1: Combustion of Heptane

Balance the chemical equation for the combustion of Heptane (C_7H_{16}).

$$\mathrm{C_7H_{16}(l) + O_2(g) \rightarrow CO_2(g) + H_2O(g)}$$

Solution

Solutions to Example 3.7.1

Steps	**Example**
1. **Identify the most complex substance.**	The most complex substance is the one with the largest number of different atoms, which is C_7H_{16}. We will assume initially that the final balanced chemical equation contains 1 molecule or formula unit of this substance.
2. **Adjust the coefficients.**	a. Because one molecule of n-heptane contains 7 carbon atoms, we need 7 CO_2 molecules, each of which contains 1 carbon atom, on the right side: $$\mathrm{C_7H_{16}(l) + O_2(g) \rightarrow \underline{7}CO_2(g) + H_2O(g)}$$ • 7 carbon atoms on both reactant and product sides b. Because one molecule of n-heptane contains 16 hydrogen atoms, we need 8 H_2O molecules, each of which contains 2 hydrogen atoms, on the right side: $$\mathrm{C_7H_{16}(l) + O_2(g) \rightarrow 7\,CO_2(g) + \underline{8}H_2O(g)}$$ • 16 hydrogen atoms on both reactant and product sides
3. **Balance polyatomic ions as a unit.**	There are no polyatomic ions to be considered in this reaction.
4. **Balance the remaining atoms.**	The carbon and hydrogen atoms are now balanced, but we have 22 oxygen atoms on the right side and only 2 oxygen atoms on the left. We can balance the oxygen atoms by adjusting the coefficient in front of the least complex substance, O_2, on the reactant side: $$\mathrm{C_7H_{16}(l) + \underline{11}O_2(g) \rightarrow 7\,CO_2(g) + 8\,H_2O(g)}$$ • 22 oxygen atoms on both reactant and product sides
5. **Check your work.**	The equation is now balanced, and there are no fractional coefficients: there are 7 carbon atoms, 16 hydrogen atoms, and 22 oxygen atoms on each side. Always check to be sure that a chemical equation is balanced.

✓ Example 3.7.2: Combustion of Isooctane

Combustion of Isooctane (C_8H_{18})

$$C_8H_{18}(l)+O_2(g)\longrightarrow CO_2(g)+H_2O(g)$$

Solution

The assumption that the final balanced chemical equation contains only one molecule or formula unit of the most complex substance is not always valid, but it is a good place to start. The combustion of any hydrocarbon with oxygen produces carbon dioxide and water.

Solutions to Example 7.4.2

Steps	Example
1. **Identify the most complex substance.**	The most complex substance is the one with the largest number of different atoms, which is C_8H_{18}. We will assume initially that the final balanced chemical equation contains 1 molecule or formula unit of this substance.
2. **Adjust the coefficients.**	a. The first element that appears only once in the reactants is carbon: 8 carbon atoms in isooctane means that there must be 8 CO_2 molecules in the products: $C_8H_{18}(l)+O_2(g)\longrightarrow \underline{8}CO_2(g)+H_2O(g)$ - 8 carbon atoms on both reactant and product sides b. 18 hydrogen atoms in isooctane means that there must be 9 H_2O molecules in the products: $C_8H_{18}(l)+O_2(g)\longrightarrow 8\,CO_2(g)+\underline{9}H_2O(g)$ - 18 hydrogen atoms on both reactant and product sides
3. **Balance polyatomic ions as a unit.**	There are no polyatomic ions to be considered in this reaction.
4. **Balance the remaining atoms.**	The carbon and hydrogen atoms are now balanced, but we have 25 oxygen atoms on the right side and only 2 oxygen atoms on the left. We can balance the least complex substance, O_2, but because there are 2 oxygen atoms per O_2 molecule, we must use a fractional coefficient ($\frac{25}{2}$) to balance the oxygen atoms: $C_8H_{18}(l)+\underline{\frac{25}{2}}O_2(g)\rightarrow 8\,CO_2(g)+9\,H_2O(g)$ - 25 oxygen atoms on both reactant and product sides The equation is now balanced, but we usually write equations with whole number coefficients. We can eliminate the fractional coefficient by multiplying all coefficients on both sides of the chemical equation by **2**: $\underline{2}C_8H_{18}(l)+\underline{25}O_2(g)\longrightarrow \underline{16}CO_2(g)+\underline{18}H_2O(g)$

Steps	Example
5. **Check your work.**	The balanced chemical equation has 16 carbon atoms, 36 hydrogen atoms, and 50 oxygen atoms on each side. Balancing equations requires some practice on your part as well as some common sense. If you find yourself using very large coefficients or if you have spent several minutes without success, go back and make sure that you have written the formulas of the reactants and products correctly.

✓ Example 3.7.3: Precipitation of Lead (II) Chloride

Aqueous solutions of lead (II) nitrate and sodium chloride are mixed. The products of the reaction are an aqueous solution of sodium nitrate and a solid precipitate of lead (II) chloride. Write the balanced chemical equation for this reaction.

Solution

Solutions to Example 7.4.3

Steps	Example
1. **Identify the most complex substance.**	The most complex substance is lead (II) chloride. $\mathrm{Pb(NO_3)_2(aq) + NaCl(aq) \rightarrow NaNO_3(aq) + PbCl_2(s)}$
2. **Adjust the coefficients.**	There are twice as many chloride ions in the reactants as there are in the products. Place a 2 in front of the NaCl in order to balance the chloride ions. $\mathrm{Pb(NO_3)_2(aq) + \underline{2}NaCl(aq) \rightarrow NaNO_3(aq) + PbCl_2(s)}$ • 1 Pb atom on both reactant and product sides • 2 Na atoms on reactant side, 1 Na atom on product side • 2 Cl atoms on both reactant and product sides
3. **Balance polyatomic ions as a unit.**	The nitrate ions are still unbalanced. Place a 2 in front of the $NaNO_3$. The result is: $\mathrm{Pb(NO_3)_2(aq) + 2\,NaCl(aq) \rightarrow \underline{2}NaNO_3(aq) + PbCl_2(s)}$ • 1 Pb atom on both reactant and product sides • 2 Na atoms on both reactant and product sides • 2 Cl atoms on both reactant and product sides • 2 NO_3^- atoms on both reactant and product sides
4. **Balance the remaining atoms.**	There is no need to balance the remaining atoms because they are already balanced.
5. **Check your work.**	$\mathrm{Pb(NO_3)_2(aq) + 2\,NaCl(aq) \rightarrow 2\,NaNO_3(aq) + PbCl_2(s)}$ • 1 Pb atom on both reactant and product sides • 2 Na atoms on both reactant and product sides • 2 Cl atoms on both reactant and product sides • 2 NO_3^- atoms on both reactant and product sides

Exercise 3.7.1

Is each chemical equation balanced?

a. $2\,Hg(\ell) + O_2(g) \rightarrow Hg_2O_2(s)$
b. $C_2H_4(g) + 2\,O_2(g) \rightarrow 2\,CO_2(g) + 2\,H_2O(g)$
c. $Mg(NO_3)_2(s) + 2\,Li(s) \rightarrow Mg(s) + 2\,LiNO_3(s)$

Answer a

yes

Answer b

no

Answer c

yes

Exercise 3.7.2

Balance the following chemical equations.

a. $N_2(g) + O_2(g) \rightarrow NO_2(g)$
b. $Pb(NO_3)_2(aq) + FeCl_3(aq) \rightarrow Fe(NO_3)_3(aq) + PbCl_2(s)$
c. $C_6H_{14}(l) + O_2(g) \rightarrow CO_2(g) + H_2O(g)$

Answer a

N_2 (g) + $2O_2$ (g) → $2NO_2$ (g)

Answer b

$3Pb(NO_3)_2(aq) + 2FeCl_3(aq) \rightarrow 2Fe(NO_3)_3(aq) + 3PbCl_2(s)$

Answer c

$2C_6H_{14}(l) + 19O_2(g) \rightarrow 12CO_2(g) + 14H_2O(g)$

Summary

- To be useful, chemical equations must always be balanced. Balanced chemical equations have the same number and type of each atom on both sides of the equation.
- The coefficients in a balanced equation must be the simplest whole number ratio. Mass is always conserved in chemical reactions.

Contributions and Attributions

- Edited by Spencer Berger

3.8: MOLE-TO-MOLE STOICHIOMETRY

/;LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Use a balanced chemical equation to determine molar relationships between substances.

Previously, you learned to balance chemical equations by comparing the numbers of each type of atom in the reactants and products. The coefficients in front of the chemical formulas represent the numbers of molecules or formula units (depending on the type of substance). We can also interpret these coefficients in terms of moles.

Consider the chemical equation:

$$2H_2 + O_2 \rightarrow 2H_2O$$

The convention for writing balanced chemical equations is to use the lowest whole-number ratio for the coefficients. However, the equation is balanced as long as the coefficients are in a 2:1:2 ratio. For example, this equation is also balanced if we write it as

$$4H_2 + 2O_2 \rightarrow 4H_2O$$

Suppose we were to use even larger numbers. Consider the following coefficients:

$$1.2044 \times 10^{24}\ \mathrm{H_2} + 6.022 \times 10^{23}\ \mathrm{O_2} \rightarrow 1.2044 \times 10^{24}\ \mathrm{H_2O}$$

These coefficients also have the ratio 2:1:2 (check it and see), so this equation is balanced. But 6.022×10^{23} is 1 mol, while 1.2044×10^{24} is 2 mol, so we can simplify this version of the equation by writing it as

$$2\ mol\ \mathrm{H_2} + 1\ mol\ \mathrm{O_2} \rightarrow 2\ mol\ \mathrm{H_2O}$$

We can leave out the word *mol* and not write the 1 coefficient (as is our habit), so the final form of the equation, still balanced, is

$$2\,\mathrm{H_2} + \mathrm{O_2} \rightarrow 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}$$

Now we interpret the coefficients as referring to molar amounts, not individual molecules. We can read this reaction as “two moles of hydrogen react with one mole of oxygen to produce two moles of water.”

For the reaction in which hydrogen and oxygen combine to make water, for example, we can construct the following ratios:

$$\frac{2\ \mathrm{mol\ H_2}}{1\ \mathrm{mol\ O_2}} \text{ or } \frac{1\ \mathrm{mol\ O_2}}{2\ \mathrm{mol\ H_2}}$$

$$\frac{2\ \mathrm{mol\ H_2O}}{1\ \mathrm{mol\ O_2}} \text{ or } \frac{1\ \mathrm{mol\ O_2}}{2\ \mathrm{mol\ H_2O}}$$

$$\frac{2\ \mathrm{mol\ H_2}}{2\ \mathrm{mol\ H_2O}} \text{ or } \frac{2\ \mathrm{mol\ H_2O}}{2\ \mathrm{mol\ H_2}}$$

We can use these ratios to determine what amount of a substance, in moles, will react with or produce a given number of moles of a different substance. The study of the numerical relationships between the reactants and the products in balanced chemical reactions is called *stoichiometry*.

EXAMPLE 3.8.1

How many moles of oxygen react with hydrogen to produce 27.6 mol of $\mathrm{H_2O}$?

Solution

Steps for Problem Solving	**How many moles of oxygen react with hydrogen to produce 27.6 mol of H_2O?**
Find a balanced equation that describes the reaction.	Unbalanced: $H_2 + O_2 \rightarrow H_2O$ Balanced: $\underline{2}H_2 + O_2 \rightarrow \underline{2}H_2O$
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: moles H_2O Find: moles oxygen
List other known quantities.	1 mol O_2 = 2 mol H_2O
Prepare a concept map and use the proper conversion factor.	 $$\frac{1\ mol\ O_2}{2\ mol\ H_2O}$$
Cancel units and calculate.	$27.6 \text{ mol } \cancel{H_2O} \times \frac{1 \text{ mol } O_2}{2 \text{ mol } \cancel{H_2O}} = 13.8 \text{ mol } O_2$ To produce 27.6 mol of H_2O, 13.8 mol of O_2 react.
Think about your result.	Since each mole of oxygen produces twice as many moles of water, it makes sense that the produced amount is greater than the reactant amount

✓ EXAMPLE 3.8.2

How many moles of ammonia are produced if 4.20 moles of hydrogen are reacted with an excess of nitrogen?

Solution

Steps for Problem Solving	**How many moles of ammonia are produced if 4.20 moles of hydrogen are reacted with an excess of nitrogen?**
Find a balanced equation that describes the reaction.	Unbalanced: $N_2 + H_2 \rightarrow NH_3$ Balanced: $N_2 + \underline{3}H_2 \rightarrow \underline{2}NH_3$
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: $H_2 = 4.20$ mol Find: mol of NH_3
List other known quantities.	3 mol H_2 = 2 mol NH_3
Prepare a concept map and use the proper conversion factor.	 $$\frac{2\ mol\ NH_3}{3\ mol\ H_2}$$
Cancel units and calculate.	$4.20 \text{ mol } \cancel{H_2} \times \frac{2 \text{ mol } NH_3}{3 \text{ mol } \cancel{H_2}} = 2.80 \text{ mol } NH_3$ The reaction of 4.20 mol of hydrogen with excess nitrogen produces 2.80 mol of ammonia.
Think about your result.	The result corresponds to the 3:2 ratio of hydrogen to ammonia from the balanced equation.

? EXERCISE 3.8.3

a. Given the following balanced chemical equation:

$$C_5H_{12} + 8\,O_2 \rightarrow 5\,CO_2 + 6\,H_2O$$

How many moles of H_2O can be formed if 0.0652 mol of C_5H_{12} were to react?

b. Balance the following unbalanced equation and determine how many moles of H_2O are produced when 1.65 mol of NH_3 react:

$$NH_3 + O_2 \rightarrow N_2 + H_2O$$

Answer a

0.391 mol H_2O

Answer b

$4NH_3 + 3O_2 \rightarrow 2N_2 + 6H_2O$; 2.48 mol H_2O

SUMMARY

- The balanced chemical reaction can be used to determine molar relationships between substances.

3.9: GRAM-TO-GRAM STOICHIOMETRY

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Convert from mass or moles of one substance to mass or moles of another substance in a chemical reaction.

MOLE TO MASS CONVERSIONS

In the previous section, we described how to convert between moles of one substance to moles of another substance using the ratios from the balanced chemical equation. We can combine this concept with molar mass conversions to convert from moles to moles to grams.

As an example, consider the balanced chemical equation

$$\text{Fe}_2\text{O}_3 + 3\,\text{SO}_3 \rightarrow \text{Fe}_2(\text{SO}_4)_3 \tag{3.9.1}$$

If we have 3.59 mol of Fe_2O_3, how many grams of SO_3 can react with it? We will need to convert from mol -> mol -> grams. First, we construct the appropriate molar ratio, determined from the balanced chemical equation, to calculate the number of moles of SO_3 needed. Then, using the molar mass of SO_3 as a conversion factor, we determine the mass that this number of moles of SO_3 has.

As usual, we start with the quantity we were given:

$$3.59\;\; \cancel{\text{mol Fe}_2\text{O}_3} \times \left(\frac{3\,\text{mol SO}_3}{1\;\; \cancel{\text{mol Fe}_2\text{O}_3}}\right) = 10.77\,\text{mol SO}_3 \tag{3.9.2}$$

The mol Fe_2O_3 units cancel, leaving mol SO_3 unit. Now, we take this answer and convert it to grams of SO_3, using the molar mass of SO_3 as the conversion factor:

$$10.77\;\; \cancel{\text{mol SO}_3} \times \left(\frac{80.06\text{ g SO}_3}{1\;\; \cancel{\text{mol SO}_3}}\right) = 862\text{ g SO}_3 \tag{3.9.3}$$

Our final answer is expressed to three significant figures and we find that 862 g of SO_3 will react with 3.59 mol of Fe_2O_3.

> The same two-step problem can also be worked out in a single line, rather than as two separate steps, as follows:
>
> $$3.59\;\; \cancel{mol\ Fe_2O_3} \times \underbrace{\left(\frac{3\;\; \cancel{mol\ SO_3}}{1\;\; \cancel{mol\ Fe_2O_3}}\right)}_{\text{converts to moles of SO}_3} \times \underbrace{\left(\frac{80.06\, g\ SO_3}{1\;\; \cancel{mol\ SO_3}}\right)}_{\text{converts to grams of SO}_3} = 862\, g\ SO_3$$
>
> We get exactly the same answer when combining all math steps together.

EXAMPLE 3.9.1: GENERATION OF ALUMINUM OXIDE

How many moles of HCl will be produced when 249 g of AlCl_3 are reacted according to this chemical equation?

$$2\,\text{AlCl}_3 + 3\,\text{H}_2\text{O}(\ell) \rightarrow \text{Al}_2\text{O}_3 + 6\,\text{HCl(g)}$$

Solution

Steps for Problem Solving	Example 3.9.1
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 249 g AlCl3 Find: moles HCl
List other known quantities.	1 mol AlCl3 = 133.33 g AlCl3 6 mol of HCl to 2 mol $AlCl_3$
Prepare a concept map and use the proper conversion factor.	 $\frac{1\ mol\ AlCl_3}{133.33\ g\ AlCl_3}$ $\frac{6\ mol\ HCl}{2\ mol\ AlCl_3}$ Flowchart of needed conversion factors: 1 mole $AlCl_3$ to 133.33 grams $AlCl_3$, and 6 moles HCl to 2 moles $AlCl_3$
Cancel units and calculate.	$249\ g\ \cancel{AlCl_3} \times \frac{1\ mol\ \cancel{AlCl_3}}{133.33\ g\ \cancel{AlCl_3}} \times \frac{6\ mol\ HCl}{2\ mol\ \cancel{AlCl_3}} = 5.60\ mol\ HCl$

? EXERCISE 3.9.1: GENERATION OF ALUMINUM OXIDE

How many moles of Al_2O_3 will be produced when 23.9 g of H_2O are reacted according to this chemical equation?

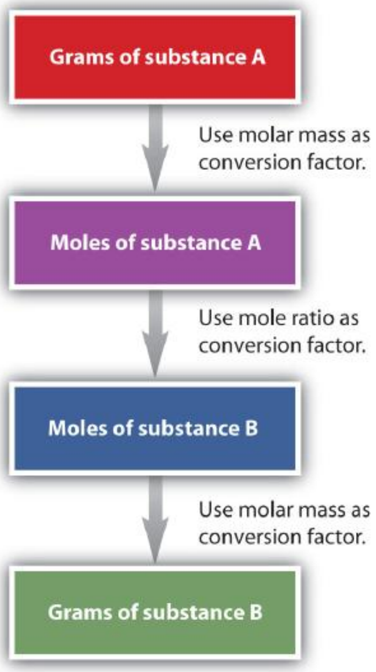
$$2\,AlCl_3 + 3\,H_2O(\ell) \rightarrow Al_2O_3 + 6\,HCl(g)$$

Answer

0.442 mol Al2O3

MASS TO MASS CONVERSIONS

In the previous examples, we converted from mol -> mol -> grams. If we start with grams of one substance, we can convert to grams of another substance using the following strategy: grams -> mol -> mol -> grams. This calculation strategy is outlined below:

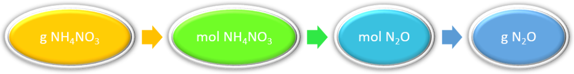


EXAMPLE 3.9.2: DECOMPOSITION OF AMMONIUM NITRATE

Ammonium nitrate decomposes to dinitrogen monoxide and water according to the following equation.

$$NH_4NO_3\ (s) \rightarrow N_2O\ (g) + 2H_2O\ (l)$$

In a certain experiment, 45.7 g of ammonium nitrate is decomposed. Find the mass of N_2O that would be formed.

Steps for Problem Solving	Example 3.9.2
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 45.7 g NH_4NO_3 Find: Mass N_2O =? g
List other known quantities.	1 mol NH_4NO_3 = 80.06 g 1 mol N_2O = 44.02 g 1 mol NH_4NO_3 to 1 mol N_2O
Prepare concept maps and use the proper conversion factors.	 $\frac{1\ mol\ NH_4NO_3}{80.06g\ NH_4NO_3}$ $\frac{1\ mol\ N_2O}{1\ mol\ NH_4NO_3}$ $\frac{44.02g\ N_2O}{1\ mol\ N_2O}$ Flowchart of conversion factors: 1 mole NH_4NO_3 to 80.06 grams NH_4NO_3, 1 mole N_2O to 1 mole NH_4NO_3, 44.02 grams N_2O to 1 mole N_2O
Cancel units and calculate.	$45.7\ g\ NH_4NO_3 \times \frac{1\ mol\ NH_4NO_3}{80.06\ g\ NH_4NO_3} \times \frac{1\ mol\ N_2O}{1\ mol\ NH_4NO_3} \times \frac{44.02\ g\ N_2O}{1\ mol\ N_2O} = 25.1\ g\ N_2O$

EXERCISE 3.9.2: CARBON TETRACHLORIDE

Methane can react with elemental chlorine to make carbon tetrachloride (CCl_4). The balanced chemical equation is as follows:

$$CH_4\,(g) + 4\,Cl_2\,(g) \rightarrow CCl_2\,(l) + 4\,HCl(l)$$

How many grams of HCl are produced by the reaction of 100.0 g of CH_4?

Answer

908.7g HCl

SUMMARY

- The calculation pathway grams -> mol -> mol -> grams can be used to convert between mass of one substance and mass of another substance in a chemical reaction.

3.10: LIMITING REACTANT

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Identify the limiting reactant (limiting reagent) in a given chemical reaction.
- Calculate how much product will be produced from the limiting reactant.
- Calculate how much reactant(s) remains when the reaction is complete.

In all examples discussed thus far, the reactants were assumed to be present in stoichiometric quantities. Consequently, none of the reactants were left over at the end of the reaction. This is often desirable—as in the case of a space shuttle—where excess oxygen or hydrogen is not only extra freight to be hauled into orbit, but also an explosion hazard. More often, however, reactants are present in mole ratios that are not the same as the ratio of the coefficients in the balanced chemical equation. As a result, one or more of them will not be used up completely, but will be left over when the reaction is completed. In this situation, the amount of product that can be obtained is limited by the amount of only one of the reactants. The reactant that restricts the amount of product obtained is called the limiting reactant. The reactant that remains after a reaction has gone to completion is in excess.

Consider a nonchemical example. Assume you have invited some friends for dinner and want to bake brownies for dessert. You find two boxes of brownie mix in your pantry and see that each package requires two eggs. The balanced equation for brownie preparation is:

$$1 \text{ box mix} + 2 \text{ eggs} \rightarrow 1 \text{ batch brownies} \tag{3.10.1}$$

If you have a dozen eggs, which ingredient will determine the number of batches of brownies that you can prepare? Because each box of brownie mix requires two eggs and you have two boxes, you need four eggs. Twelve eggs is eight more eggs than you need. Although the ratio of eggs to boxes in is 2:1, the ratio in your possession is 6:1. Hence the eggs are the ingredient (reactant) present in excess, and the brownie mix is the limiting reactant. Even if you had a refrigerator full of eggs, you could make only two batches of brownies.

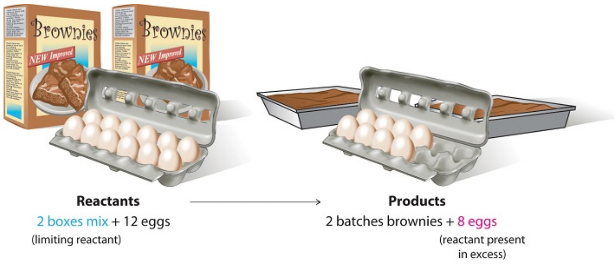


Figure 3.10.1: The Concept of a Limiting Reactant in the Preparation of Brownies. For a chemist, the **balanced** chemical equation is the recipe that must be followed. 2 boxes of brownie mix and 12 eggs results in 2 batches of brownies and 8 eggs; in this case the 8 eggs are reactant present in excess

PHET SIMULATION: REACTANTS, PRODUCTS AND LEFTOVERS

View this interactive simulation illustrating the concepts of limiting and excess reactants.

Consider this concept now with regard to a chemical process, the reaction of hydrogen with chlorine to yield hydrogen chloride:

$$H_2 + Cl_2(g) \rightarrow 2\,HCl(g)$$

The balanced equation shows that hydrogen and chlorine react in a 1:1 stoichiometric ratio. If these reactants are provided in any other amounts, one of the reactants will nearly always be entirely consumed, thus limiting the amount of product that may be generated. This substance is the limiting reactant, and the other substance is the excess reactant.

To identify the limiting reactant, you can compare the amount of product expected for the complete reaction of each reactant. Each reactant amount is used to separately calculate the amount of product that would be formed per the reaction stoichiometry. The reactant yielding the lesser amount of product is the limiting reactant. For the example, in the previous paragraph, complete reaction of the hydrogen would yield:

$$\text{mol HCl produced} = 3\ \text{mol}\ H_2 \times \frac{2\ \text{mol HCl}}{1\ \text{mol}\ H_2} = 6\ \text{mol HCl}$$

Complete reaction of the provided chlorine would produce:

$$\text{mol HCl produced} = 2\ \text{mol}\ Cl_2 \times \frac{2\ \text{mol HCl}}{1\ \text{mol}\ Cl_2} = 4\ \text{mol HCl}$$

The chlorine will be completely consumed once 4 moles of HCl have been produced. Since enough hydrogen was provided to yield 6 moles of HCl, there will be non-reacted hydrogen remaining once this reaction is complete. Chlorine, therefore, is the limiting reactant and hydrogen is the excess reactant (Figure 3.10.2).

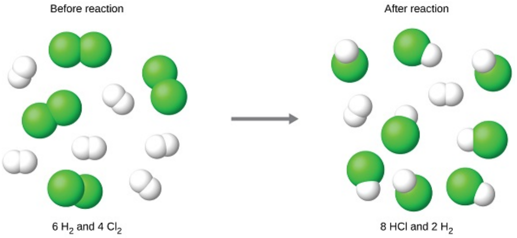


Figure 3.10.2: When H_2 and Cl_2 are combined in nonstoichiometric amounts, one of these reactants will limit the amount of HCl that can be produced. This illustration shows a reaction in which hydrogen is present in excess and chlorine is the limiting reactant. The figure shows a space-filling molecular models reacting. There is a reaction arrow pointing to the right in the middle. To the left of the reaction arrow there are three molecules each consisting of two green spheres bonded together. There are also five molecules each consisting of two smaller, white spheres bonded together. Above these molecules is the label, "Before reaction," and below these molecules is the label, "6 H subscript 2 and 4 C l subscript 2." To the right of the reaction arrow, there are eight molecules each consisting of one green sphere bonded to a smaller white sphere. There are also two molecules each consisting of two white spheres bonded together. Above these molecules is the label, "After reaction," and below these molecules is the label, "8 H C l and 2 H subscript 2."

A similar situation exists for many chemical reactions: you usually run out of one reactant before all of the other reactant has reacted. The reactant you run out of is called the limiting reactant; the other reactant or reactants are considered to be *in excess*.

HOW TO IDENTIFY THE LIMITING REACTANT (LIMITING REAGENT)

Find the limiting reactant by calculating and comparing the amount of product that each reactant will produce.

1. Balance the chemical equation for the chemical reaction.
2. Convert the given information into moles.
3. Use stoichiometry for each individual reactant to find the mass of product produced.
4. The reactant that produces a lesser amount of product is the limiting reactant and the reactant that produces a larger amount of product is the excess reactant

✓ EXAMPLE 3.10.1: IDENTIFYING THE LIMITING REACTANT

As an example, consider the balanced equation

$$4\,C_2H_3Br_3 + 11\,O_2 \rightarrow 8\,CO_2 + 6\,H_2O + 6\,Br_2$$

What is the limiting reactant if 76.4 grams of $C_2H_3Br_3$ reacted with 49.1 grams of O_2?

Solution

Step 1: *Balance the chemical equation.*

The equation is already balanced with the relationship

$$4\ \text{mol}\ C_2H_3Br_3\ \text{to}\ 11\ \text{mol}\ O_2\ \text{to}\ 6\ \text{mol}\ H_2O\ \text{to}\ 6\ \text{mol}\ Br_2$$

Step 2 and Step 3: Convert mass to moles and use stoichiometric ratios. Set up two calculations - one for each reactant.

$$76.4\ \text{g}\ \cancel{C_2H_3Br_3} \times \frac{1\ \text{mol}\ \cancel{C_2H_3Br_3}}{266.72\ \text{g}\ \cancel{C_2H_3Br_3}} \times \frac{8\ \text{mol}\ \cancel{CO_2}}{4\ \text{mol}\ \cancel{C_2H_3Br_3}} \times \frac{44.01\ \text{g}\ CO_2}{1\ \text{mol}\ \cancel{CO_2}} = 25.2\ \text{g}\ CO_2$$

$$49.1\ \text{g}\ \cancel{O_2} \times \frac{1\ \text{mol}\ \cancel{O_2}}{32.00\ \text{g}\ \cancel{O_2}} \times \frac{8\ \text{mol}\ \cancel{CO_2}}{11\ \text{mol}\ \cancel{O_2}} \times \frac{44.01\ \text{g}\ CO_2}{1\ \text{mol}\ \cancel{CO_2}} = 49.1\ \text{g}\ CO_2$$

Step 4: The reactant that produces a smaller amount of product is the limiting reactant.

$C_2H_3Br_3$ is the limiting reactant.

✓ EXAMPLE 3.10.2: IDENTIFYING THE LIMITING REACTANT AND THE MASS OF EXCESS REACTANT

Calculate the mass of magnesium oxide that can be produced if 2.40 g Mg reacts with 10.0 g O_2. The balanced chemical reaction is 2 Mg (s) + O_2 (g) → 2 MgO (s)

Solution

Step 1: Balance the chemical equation.

The equation is already balanced. The balanced equation provides the relationship of 2 mol Mg to 1 mol O_2 to 2 mol MgO

Step 2 and Step 3: Convert mass to moles and use stoichiometric ratios. Set up two calculations - one for each reactant.

$$2.40\ \text{g}\ \cancel{Mg} \times \frac{1\ \text{mol}\ \cancel{Mg}}{24.31\ \text{g}\ \cancel{Mg}} \times \frac{2\ \text{mol}\ \cancel{MgO}}{2\ \text{mol}\ \cancel{Mg}} \times \frac{40.31\ \text{g MgO}}{1\ \text{mol}\ \cancel{MgO}} = 3.98\ \text{g MgO}$$

$$10.0\ \text{g}\ \cancel{O_2} \times \frac{1\ \text{mol}\ \cancel{O_2}}{32.00\ \text{g}\ \cancel{O_2}} \times \frac{2\ \text{mol}\ \cancel{MgO}}{1\ \text{mol}\ \cancel{O_2}} \times \frac{40.31\ \text{g MgO}}{1\ \text{mol}\ \cancel{MgO}} = 25.2\ \text{g MgO}$$

Step 4: The reactant that produces a smaller amount of product is the limiting reactant.

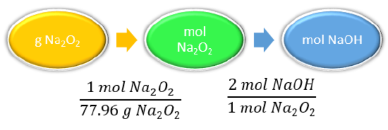
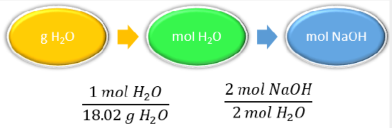
Mg produces less MgO than does O_2 (3.98 g MgO vs. 25.2 g MgO), therefore Mg is the limiting reactant in this reaction and O_2 is the excess reactant.

✓ EXAMPLE 3.10.3: LIMITING REACTANT

What is the limiting reactant if 78.0 grams of Na_2O_2 were reacted with 29.4 grams of H_2O? The unbalanced chemical equation is

$$Na_2O_2(s) + H_2O(l) \rightarrow NaOH(aq) + H_2O_2(l)$$

Solution

Steps for Problem Solving	Example 3.10.1
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 78.0 grams of Na_2O_2 29.4 g H_2O Find: limiting reactant
List other known quantities.	1 mol Na_2O_2= 77.96 g/mol 1 mol H_2O = 18.02 g/mol
Balance the equation.	Na_2O_2 (s) + **2**H_2O (l) → **2**NaOH (aq) + H_2O_2 (l) The balanced equation provides the relationship of 1 mol Na_2O_2 to 2 mol H_2O 2mol NaOH to 1 mol H_2O_2
Prepare a concept map and use the proper conversion factor.	  Because the question only asks for the limiting reactant, we can perform two **mass-mole** calculations and determine which amount is less.
Cancel units and calculate.	$78.0 \text{ g Na}_2\text{O}_2 \times \frac{1 \text{ mol Na}_2\text{O}_2}{77.96 \text{ g Na}_2\text{O}_2} \times \frac{2 \text{ mol NaOH}}{1 \text{ mol Na}_2\text{O}_2} \times \frac{40 \text{ g NaOH}}{1 \text{ mol NaOH}} = 2.00 \text{ mol NaOH}$ $29.4 \text{ g H}_2\text{O} \times \frac{1 \text{ mol H}_2\text{O}}{18.02 \text{ g H}_2\text{O}} \times \frac{2 \text{ mol NaOH}}{2 \text{ mol Na}_2\text{O}_2} \times \frac{40 \text{ g NaOH}}{1 \text{ mol NaOH}} = 1.63 \text{ mol NaOH}$ Therefore, H_2O is the *limiting reactant*.

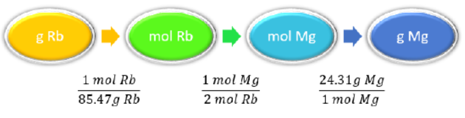
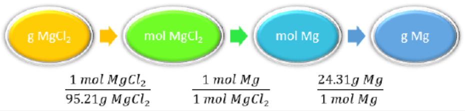
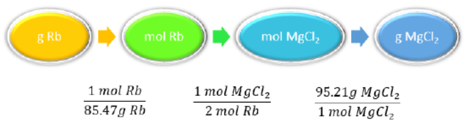
✓ EXAMPLE 3.10.4: LIMITING REACTANT AND MASS OF EXCESS REACTANT

A 5.00 g quantity of Rb is combined with 3.44 g of $MgCl_2$ according to this chemical reaction:

$$2Rb(s) + MgCl_2(s) \rightarrow Mg(s) + 2RbCl(s)$$

What mass of Mg is formed?

Solution

Steps for Problem Solving	Example 3.10.2
Steps for Problem Solving	A 5.00 g quantity of Rb is combined with 3.44 g of MgCl2 according to this chemical reaction: $2Rb(s) + MgCl_2(s) \rightarrow Mg(s) + 2RbCl(s)$ What mass of Mg is formed, and what mass of remaining reactant is left over?
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 5.00g Rb, 2.44g $MgCl_2$ Find: mass of Mg formed
List other known quantities.	• molar mass: Rb = 85.47 g/mol • molar mass: $MgCl_2$ = 95.21 g/mol • molar mass: Mg = 24.31 g/mol
Prepare concept maps and use the proper conversion factor.	Find mass Mg formed based on mass of Rb  Find mass of Mg formed based on mass of $MgCl_2$  Conversion factors: 1 mole MgCl2 to 95.21 grams MgCl2, 1 mole Mg to 1 mole MgCl2, 24.31 grams Mg to 1 mole Mg Use limiting reactant to determine amount of excess reactant consumed  Conversion factors: 1 mole Rb to 85.47 grams Rb, 1 mole $MgCl_2$ to 2 moles Rb, 95.21 grams $MgCl_2$ to 1 mole $MgCl_2$
Cancel units and calculate.	Because the question asks what mass of magnesium is formed, we can perform two mass-mass calculations and determine which amount is less. $5.00\ g\ \cancel{Rb} \times \frac{1\ mol\ \cancel{Rb}}{85.47\ g\ \cancel{Rb}} \times \frac{1\ mol\ \cancel{Mg}}{2\ mol\ \cancel{Rb}} \times \frac{24.31\ g\ Mg}{1\ mol\ \cancel{Mg}} = 0.711\ g\ Mg$ $3.44\ g\ \cancel{MgCl_2} \times \frac{1\ mol\ \cancel{MgCl_2}}{95.21\ g\ \cancel{MgCl_2}} \times \frac{1\ mol\ \cancel{Mg}}{1\ mol\ \cancel{MgCl_2}} \times \frac{24.31\ g\ Mg}{1\ mol\ \cancel{Mg}} = 0.878\ g\ Mg$ The 0.711 g of Mg is the lesser quantity, so the associated reactant—5.00 g of Rb—is the limiting reactant.

❓ EXERCISE 3.10.1

Given the initial amounts listed, what is the limiting reactant?

$$\underbrace{22.7\,g}_{MgO(s)} + \underbrace{17.9\,g}_{H_2S} \rightarrow MgS(s) + H_2O(l)$$

Answer

H_2S is the limiting reactant

3.11: THEORETICAL YIELD AND PERCENT YIELD

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Calculate theoretical and percent yield.

PERCENT YIELD

Chemical reactions in the real world don't always go exactly as planned on paper. In the course of an experiment, many things will contribute to the formation of less product than predicted. Besides spills and other experimental errors, there are usually losses due to an incomplete reaction, undesirable side reactions, etc. Chemists need a measurement that indicates how successful a reaction has been. This measurement is called the percent yield.

To compute the percent yield, it is first necessary to determine how much of the product should be formed based on stoichiometry. This is called the **theoretical yield**, the maximum amount of product that can be formed from the given amounts of reactants. The **actual yield** is the amount of product that is actually formed when the reaction is carried out in the laboratory. The **percent yield** is the ratio of the actual yield to the theoretical yield, expressed as a percentage.

$$\text{Percent Yield} = \frac{\text{Actual Yield}}{\text{Theoretical Yield}} \times 100\%$$

Percent yield is very important in the manufacture of products. Much time and money is spent improving the percent yield for chemical production. When complex chemicals are synthesized by many different reactions, one step with a low percent yield can quickly cause a large waste of reactants and unnecessary expense.

Typically, percent yields are understandably less than 100% because of the reasons indicated earlier. However, percent yields greater than 100% are possible if the measured product of the reaction contains impurities that cause its mass to be greater than it actually would be if the product was pure. When a chemist synthesizes a desired chemical, he or she is always careful to purify the products of the reaction. Example $3.11.1$ illustrates the steps for determining percent yield.

EXAMPLE 3.11.1: DECOMPOSITION OF POTASSIUM CHLORATE

Potassium chlorate decomposes upon slight heating in the presence of a catalyst, according to the reaction below:

$$2\text{KClO}_3\left(s\right) \rightarrow 2\text{KCl}\left(s\right) + 3\text{O}_2\left(g\right)$$

In a certain experiment, $40.0 \text{ g } \text{KClO}_3$ is heated until it completely decomposes. The experiment is performed and the oxygen gas is collected and its mass is found to be 14.9 g.

a. What is the theoretical yield of oxygen gas?
b. What is the percent yield for the reaction?

Solution

Calculation of theoretical yield

First, we will calculate the theoretical yield based on the stoichiometry.

Step 1: Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find".

Given: Mass of $\text{KClO}_3 = 40.0 \text{ g}$

Mass of O_2 collected = 14.9g

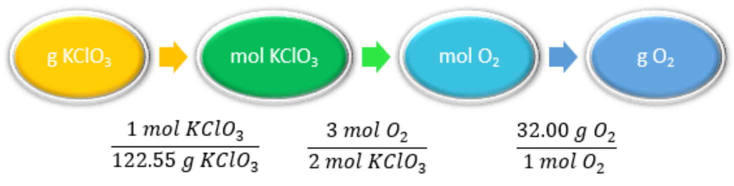
Find: Theoretical yield, g O_2

Step 2: List other known quantities and plan the problem.

1 mol $KClO_3$ = 122.55 g/mol

1 mol O_2 = 32.00 g/mol

Step 3: Apply stoichiometry to convert from the mass of a reactant to the mass of a product:



Step 4: Solve.

$$40.0\ \text{g}\,\cancel{\text{KClO}_3}\times\frac{1\ \text{mol}\,\cancel{\text{KClO}_3}}{122.55\ \text{g}\,\cancel{\text{KClO}_3}}\times\frac{3\ \text{mol}\,\cancel{\text{O}_2}}{2\ \text{mol}\,\cancel{\text{KClO}_3}}\times\frac{32.00\ \text{g}\ \text{O}_2}{1\ \text{mol}\,\cancel{\text{O}_2}}=15.7\ \text{g}\ \text{O}_2$$

The theoretical yield of O_2 is 15.7 g, $15.\underline{6}7$ g unrounded.

Step 5: Think about your result.

The mass of oxygen gas must be less than the 40.0 g of potassium chlorate that was decomposed.

Calculation of percent yield

Now we will use the actual yield and the theoretical yield to calculate the percent yield.

Step 1: Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find".

Given: Theoretical yield =$15.\underline{6}7$ g, use the un-rounded number for the calculation.

Actual yield = 14.9g

Find: Percent yield, % Yield

Step 2: List other known quantities and plan the problem.

No other quantities needed.

Step 3: Use the percent yield equation below.

$$\text{Percent Yield}=\frac{\text{Actual Yield}}{\text{Theoretical Yield}}\times 100\%$$

Step 4: Solve.

$$\text{Percent Yield}=\frac{14.9\ \text{g}}{15.\underline{6}7\ \text{g}}\times 100\%=94.9\%$$

Step 5: Think about your result.

Since the actual yield is slightly less than the theoretical yield, the percent yield is just under 100%.

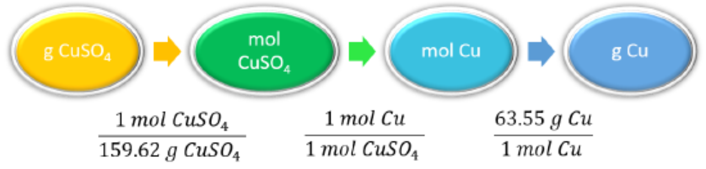
✓ EXAMPLE 3.11.2: OXIDATION OF ZINC

Upon reaction of 1.274 g of copper sulfate with excess zinc metal, 0.392 g copper metal was obtained according to the equation:

$$\text{CuSO}_4(aq)+\text{Zn}(s)\rightarrow\text{Cu}(s)+\text{ZnSO}_4(aq)$$

What is the percent yield?

Solution

Steps for Problem Solving	Example 3.11.1
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 1.274 g $CuSO_4$ Actual yield = 0.392 g Cu Find: Percent yield
List other known quantities.	1 mol $CuSO_4$= 159.62 g/mol 1 mol Cu = 63.55 g/mol Since the amount of product in grams is not required, only the molar mass of the reactants is needed.
Balance the equation.	The chemical equation is already balanced. The balanced equation provides the relationship of 1 mol $CuSO_4$ to 1 mol Zn to 1 mol Cu to 1 mol $ZnSO_4$.
Prepare a concept map and use the proper conversion factor.	 The provided information identifies copper sulfate as the limiting reactant, and so the theoretical yield (g Cu) is found by performing **mass-mass** calculation based on the initial amount of $CuSO_4$.
Cancel units and calculate.	$1.274\ \text{g Cu}_S\cancel{\text{O}_4} \times \frac{1\ \text{mol Cu}\cancel{\text{SO}_4}}{159.62\ \text{g Cu}\cancel{\text{SO}_4}} \times \frac{1\ \text{mol}\ \cancel{\text{Cu}}}{1\ \text{mol Cu}\cancel{\text{SO}_4}} \times \frac{63.55\ \text{g Cu}}{1\ \text{mol}\ \cancel{\text{Cu}}} = 0.5072\ \text{g Cu}$ Using this theoretical yield and the provided value for actual yield, the percent yield is calculated to be: $\text{percent yield} = \left(\frac{\text{actual yield}}{\text{theoretical yield}}\right) \times 100$ $= \left(\frac{0.392\ g\ \text{Cu}}{0.5072\ g\ \text{Cu}}\right) \times 100$ $= 77.3\%$
Think about your result.	Since the actual yield is slightly less than the theoretical yield, the percent yield is just under 100%.

? EXERCISE 3.11.1

What is the percent yield of a reaction that produces 12.5 g of the Freon CF_2Cl_2 from 32.9 g of CCl_4 and excess HF?

$$\text{CCl}_4 + 2\,\text{HF} \rightarrow \text{CF}_2\text{Cl}_2 + 2\,\text{HCl}$$

Answer

48.3%

SUMMARY

Theoretical yield is calculated based on the stoichiometry of the chemical equation. The actual yield is experimentally determined. The percent yield is determined by calculating the ratio of actual yield to theoretical yield.

3.12: Enthalpy Change is a Measure of the Heat Evolved or Absorbed

When physical or chemical changes occur, they are generally accompanied by a transfer of energy. The **law of conservation of energy** states that in any physical or chemical process, energy is neither created nor destroyed. In other words, the entire energy in the universe is conserved. In order to better understand the energy changes taking place during a reaction, we need to define two parts of the universe, called the system and the surroundings. The **system** is the specific portion of matter in a given space that is being studied during an experiment or an observation. The **surroundings** are everything in the universe that is not part of the system. In practical terms for a laboratory chemist, the system is the particular chemicals being reacted, while the surroundings is the immediate vicinity within the room. During most processes, energy is exchanged between the system and the surroundings. If the system loses a certain amount of energy, that same amount of energy is gained by the surroundings. If the system gains a certain amount of energy, that energy is supplied by the surroundings.

A chemical reaction or physical change is **endothermic** if heat is absorbed by the system from the surroundings. In the course of an endothermic process, the system gains heat from the surroundings and so the temperature of the surroundings decreases. The quantity of heat for a process is represented by the letter q. The sign of q for an endothermic process is positive because the system is gaining heat. A chemical reaction or physical change is **exothermic** if heat is released by the system into the surroundings. Because the surroundings are gaining heat from the system, the temperature of the surroundings increases. The sign of q for an exothermic process is negative because the system is losing heat.

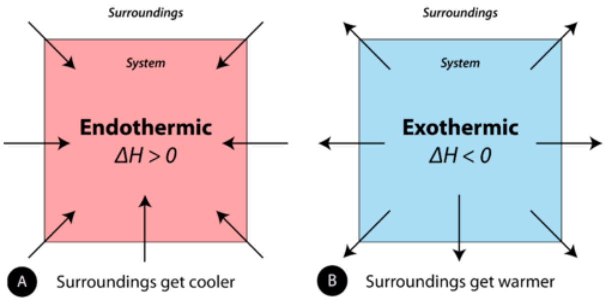


Figure 3.12.1: (A) Endothermic reaction. (B) Exothermic reaction.

Enthalpy

Heat changes in chemical reactions are often measured in the laboratory under conditions in which the reacting system is open to the atmosphere. In that case, the system is at a constant pressure. **Enthalpy** $(\boldsymbol{H})$ is the heat content of a system at constant pressure. Chemists routinely measure changes in enthalpy of chemical systems as reactants are converted into products. The heat that is absorbed or released by a reaction at constant pressure is the same as the enthalpy change, and is given the symbol ΔH. Unless otherwise specified, all reactions in this material are assumed to take place at constant pressure.

The change in enthalpy of a reaction is a measure of the differences in enthalpy of the reactants and products. The enthalpy of a system is determined by the energies needed to break chemical bonds and the energies needed to form chemical bonds. Energy needs to be put into the system in order to break chemical bonds, as they do not come apart spontaneously in most cases. Bond formation to produce products will involve release of energy. The change in enthalpy shows the trade-offs made in these two processes. Does it take more energy to break bonds than that needed to form bonds? If so, the reaction is endothermic and the enthalpy change is positive. If more energy is produced in bond formation than that needed for bond breaking, the reaction is exothermic and the enthalpy is negative.

Several factors influence the enthalpy of a system. Enthalpy is an extensive property, determined in part by the amount of material we work with. The state of reactants and products (solid, liquid, or gas) influences the enthalpy value for a system. The direction of the reaction affects the enthalpy value. A reaction that takes place in the opposite direction has the same numerical enthalpy value, but the opposite sign.

Thermochemical Equations

When methane gas is combusted, heat is released, making the reaction exothermic. Specifically, the combustion of 1 mol of methane releases 890.4 kilojoules of heat energy. This information can be shown as part of the balanced equation:

$$\mathrm{CH_4}\,(g) + 2\mathrm{O_2}\,(g) \rightarrow \mathrm{CO_2}\,(g) + 2\mathrm{H_2O}\,(l) + 890.4\ \mathrm{kJ}$$

The equation tells us that 1 mol of methane combines with 2 mol of oxygen to produce 1 mol of carbon dioxide and 2 mol of water. In the process, 890.4 kJ is released and so it is written as a product of the reaction. A **thermochemical equation** is a chemical equation that includes the enthalpy change of the reaction. The process in the above thermochemical equation can be shown visually in Figure $3.12.2$

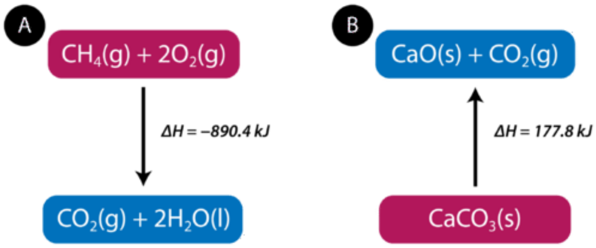


Figure 3.12.2: (A) As reactants are converted to products in an exothermic reaction, enthalpy is released into the surroundings. The enthalpy change of the reaction is negative. (B) As reactants are converted to products in an endothermic reaction, enthalpy is absorbed from the surroundings. The enthalpy change of the reaction is positive.

In the combustion of methane example, the enthalpy change is negative because heat is being released by the system. Therefore, the overall enthalpy of the system decreases. The **heat of reaction** is the enthalpy change for a chemical reaction. In the case above, the heat of reaction is -890.4 kJ. The thermochemical reaction can also be written in this way:

$$\mathrm{CH_4}\left(g\right) + 2\mathrm{O_2}\left(g\right) \rightarrow \mathrm{CO_2}\left(g\right) + 2\mathrm{H_2O}\left(l\right) \qquad \Delta H = -890.4 \text{ kJ}$$

Heats of reaction are typically measured in kilojoules. It is important to include the physical states of the reactants and products in a thermochemical equation as the value of the ΔH depends on those states.

Endothermic reactions absorb energy from the surroundings as the reaction occurs. When 1 mol of calcium carbonate decomposes into 1 mol of calcium oxide and 1 mol of carbon dioxide, 177.8 kJ of heat is absorbed. The process is shown visually in Figure $3.12.2B$. The thermochemical reaction is shown below.

$$\mathrm{CaCO_3}\left(s\right) + 177.8 \text{ kJ} \rightarrow \mathrm{CaO}\left(s\right) + \mathrm{CO_2}\left(g\right)$$

Because the heat is absorbed by the system, the 177.8 kJ is written as a reactant. The heat of reaction is positive for an endothermic reaction.

$$\mathrm{CaCO_3}\left(s\right) \rightarrow \mathrm{CaO}\left(s\right) + \mathrm{CO_2}\left(g\right) \qquad \Delta H = 177.8 \text{ kJ}$$

The way in which a reaction is written influences the value of the enthalpy change for the reaction. Many reactions are reversible, meaning that the product(s) of the reaction are capable of combining and reforming the reactant(s). If a reaction is written in the reverse direction, the sign of the ΔH changes. For example, we can write an equation for the reaction of calcium oxide with carbon dioxide to form calcium carbonate.

$$\mathrm{CaO}\left(s\right) + \mathrm{CO_2}\left(g\right) \rightarrow \mathrm{CaCO_3}\left(s\right) + 177.8 \text{ kJ}$$

The reaction is exothermic and thus the sign of the enthalpy change is negative.

$$\mathrm{CaO}\left(s\right) + \mathrm{CO_2}\left(g\right) \rightarrow \mathrm{CaCO_3}\left(s\right) \qquad \Delta H = -177.8 \text{ kJ}$$

Stoichiometric Calculations and Enthalpy Changes

Chemistry problems that involve enthalpy changes can be solved by techniques similar to stoichiometry problems. Refer again to the combustion reaction of methane. Since the reaction of 1 mol of methane released 890.4 kJ, the reaction of 2 mol of methane would release $2 \times 890.4 \text{ kJ} = 1781 \text{ kJ}$. The reaction of 0.5 mol of methane would release $\frac{890.4 \text{ kJ}}{2} = 445.2 \text{ kJ}$. As with other stoichiometry problems, the moles of a reactant or product can be linked to mass or volume.

✓ Example 3.12.1

Sulfur dioxide gas reacts with oxygen to form sulfur trioxide in an exothermic reaction, according to the following thermochemical equation.

$$2\mathrm{SO_2}\left(g\right) + \mathrm{O_2}\left(g\right) \rightarrow 2\mathrm{SO_3}\left(g\right) + 198 \text{ kJ}$$

Calculate the enthalpy change that occurs when \4.00 \: \text{mol}\) of sulfur dioxide is reacted with excess oxygen.

Solution

Step 1: List the known quantities and plan the problem.

- $4.00 \text{ mol } \text{SO}_2$
- $\Delta H = -198 \text{ kJ}$ for the reaction of $2 \text{ mol } \text{SO}_2$

Unknown

- $\Delta H = ? \text{ kJ}$

The moles of SO_2 is multiplied by the conversion factor of $\left(\frac{-198 \text{ kJ}}{2 \text{ mol } \text{SO}_2} \right)$.

Step 2: Solve.

$$\Delta H = 4.00 \text{ mol } \text{SO}_2 \times \frac{-198 \text{ kJ}}{2 \text{ mol } \text{SO}_2} = -396 \text{ kJ}$$

Step 3: Think about your result.

The sign of ΔH is negative because the reaction is exothermic. Since 4.00 mol is twice the number of mol of sulfur dioxide in the balanced equation, twice the amount of heat is released.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

4: Module 4 - Gases and Liquids

4.1: Pressure - The Result of Constant Molecular Collisions

Learning Objectives

- Define *pressure*.
- Learn the units of pressure and how to convert between them.

The kinetic theory of gases indicates that gas particles are always in motion and are colliding with other particles and the walls of the container holding them. Although collisions with container walls are elastic (i.e., there is no net energy gain or loss because of the collision), a gas particle does exert a force on the wall during the collision. The accumulation of all these forces distributed over the area of the walls of the container causes something we call pressure. **Pressure** (P) is defined as the force of all the gas particle/wall collisions divided by the area of the wall:

$$\text{pressure} = \frac{\text{force}}{\text{area}}$$

All gases exert pressure; it is one of the fundamental measurable quantities of this phase of matter. Even our atmosphere exerts pressure—in this case, the gas is being “held in” by the earth’s gravity, rather than the gas being in a container. The pressure of the atmosphere is about 14.7 pounds of force for every square inch of surface area: 14.7 lb/in^2.

Pressure has a variety of units. The formal, SI-approved unit of pressure is the *pascal* (Pa), which is defined as 1 N/m^2 (one newton of force over an area of one square meter). However, this is usually too small in magnitude to be useful. A common unit of pressure is the **atmosphere** (atm), which was originally defined as the average atmospheric pressure at sea level.

However, “average atmospheric pressure at sea level” is difficult to pinpoint because of atmospheric pressure variations. A more reliable and common unit is **millimeters of mercury** (mmHg), which is the amount of pressure exerted by a column of mercury exactly 1 mm high. An equivalent unit is the **torr**, which equals 1 mmHg. (The torr is named after Evangelista Torricelli, a seventeenth-century Italian scientist who invented the mercury barometer.) With these definitions of pressure, the atmosphere unit is redefined: 1 atm is defined as exactly 760 mmHg, or 760 torr. We thus have the following equivalents:

1 atm=760 mmHg=760 torr

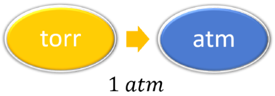
We can use these equivalents as with any equivalence—to perform conversions from one unit to another. Relating these to the formal SI unit of pressure, 1 atm = 101,325 Pa.

Example 4.1.1: Pressure Conversion

How many atmospheres are there in 595 torr?

Solution

Solutions to Example 11.3.1

Steps for Problem Solving	Unit Conversion
Identify the "given” information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 595 torr Find: ? atm
List other known quantities.	1 atm = 760 torr
Prepare a concept map.	 $\frac{1\,atm}{760\,torr}$
Cancel units and calculate.	$595\ \cancel{torr} \times \frac{1\,atm}{760\ \cancel{torr}} = 0.783\,atm$
Think about your result.	595 torr is less than 760 torr so the final answer should be less than 1 atm.

? Exercise 4.1.1

How many atmospheres are there in 1,022 torr?

Answer

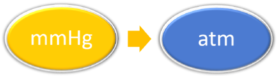
1.345 atm

✓ Example 4.1.2: Mars

The atmosphere on Mars is largely CO_2 at a pressure of 6.01 mmHg. What is this pressure in atmospheres?

Solution

Solutions to Example 11.3.2

Steps for Problem Solving	Unit Conversion
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 6.01mmHg Find: ? atm
List other known quantities.	1 atm = 760 mmHg
Prepare a concept map.	 $\frac{1\ atm}{760\ mmHg}$
Cancel units and calculate.	$6.01\ \cancel{mmHg} \times \frac{1\,atm}{760\ \cancel{mmHg}} = 0.00791\,atm = 7.91 \times 10^{-3} atm$
Think about your result.	6.01 is a very small number relative to 760 mmHg, just like the value in atmospheres.

? Exercise 4.1.2

Atmospheric pressure is low in the eye of a hurricane. In a 1979 hurricane in the Pacific Ocean, a pressure of 0.859 atm was reported inside the eye. What is this pressure in torr?

Answer

652 torr

Summary

- Pressure is a force exerted over an area.
- Pressure has several common units that can be converted.

4.2: Boyle’s Law - Pressure and Volume

Learning Objectives

- Learn what is meant by the term *gas laws*.
- Learn and apply Boyle’s Law.

When seventeenth-century scientists began studying the physical properties of gases, they noticed some simple relationships between some of the measurable properties of the gas. Take pressure (*P*) and volume (*V*), for example. Scientists noted that for a given amount of a gas (usually expressed in units of moles [*n*]), if the temperature (*T*) of the gas was kept constant, pressure and volume were related: as one increases, the other decreases. As one decreases, the other increases. This means that pressure and volume are *inversely related*.

There is more to it, however: pressure and volume of a given amount of gas at constant temperature are *numerically* related. If you take the pressure value and multiply it by the volume value, the product is a constant for a given amount of gas at a constant temperature:

$$P \times V = \text{ constant at constant n and T}$$

If either volume or pressure changes while amount and temperature stay the same, then the other property must change so that the product of the two properties still equals that same constant. That is, if the original conditions are labeled P_1 and V_1 and the new conditions are labeled P_2 and V_2, we have

$$P_1V_1 = \text{constant} = P_2V_2$$

where the properties are assumed to be multiplied together. Leaving out the middle part, we have simply

$$P_1V_1 = P_2V_2 \text{ at constant n and T}$$

This equation is an example of a gas law. A **gas law** is a simple mathematical formula that allows you to model, or predict, the behavior of a gas. This particular gas law is called **Boyle's Law**, after the English scientist Robert Boyle, who first announced it in 1662. Figure 4.2.1 shows two representations of how Boyle’s Law works.

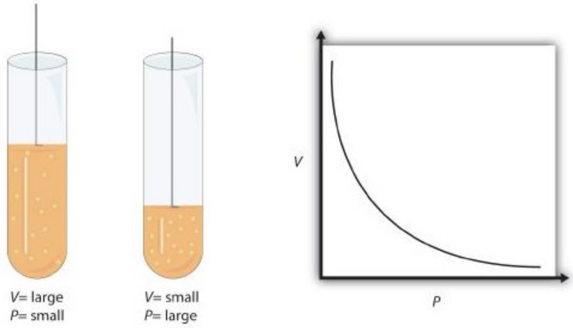


Figure 4.2.1: Boyle’s Law. A piston having a certain pressure and volume (left piston) will have half the volume when its pressure is twice as much (right piston). One can also plot *P* versus *V* for a given amount of gas at a certain temperature; such a plot will look like the graph on the right.

Boyle’s Law is an example of a second type of mathematical problem we see in chemistry—one based on a mathematical formula. Tactics for working with mathematical formulas are different from tactics for working with conversion factors. First, most of the questions you will have to answer using formulas are word-type questions, so the first step is to identify what quantities are known and assign them to variables. Second, in most formulas, some mathematical rearrangements (i.e., algebra) must be performed to solve for an unknown variable. The rule is that to find the value of the unknown variable, you must mathematically isolate the unknown variable *by itself and in the numerator* of one side of the equation. Finally, units must be consistent. For example, in Boyle’s Law there are two pressure variables; they must have the same unit. There are also two volume variables; they also must have the same unit. In most cases, it won’t matter *what* the unit is, but the unit must be the *same* on both sides of the equation.

✓ Example 4.2.1

A sample of gas has an initial pressure of 2.44 atm and an initial volume of 4.01 L. Its pressure changes to 1.93 atm. What is the new volume if temperature and amount are kept constant?

Solution

Solutions to Example 11.8.1

Steps for Problem Solving	
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: P_1 = 2.44 atm and V_1 = 4.01 L P_2 = 1.93 atm Find: V_2 = ? L
List other known quantities.	none
Plan the problem.	First, rearrange the equation algebraically to solve for V_2. $V_2 = \frac{P_1 \times V_1}{P_2}$
Cancel units and calculate.	Now substitute the known quantities into the equation and solve. $V_2 = \frac{2.44 \ \cancel{atm} \times 4.01 \text{ L}}{1.93 \ \cancel{atm}} = 5.07 \text{ L}$
Think about your result.	We know that pressure and volume are inversely related; as one decreases, the other increases. Pressure is decreasing (from 2.44 atm to 1.93 atm), so volume should be increasing to compensate, and it is (from 4.01 L to 5.07 L). So the answer makes sense based on Boyle's Law.

? Exercise 4.2.1

If P_1 = 334 torr, V_1 = 37.8 mL, and P_2 = 102 torr, what is V_2?

Answer

124 mL

As mentioned, you can use any units for pressure and volume, but both pressures must be expressed in the same units, and both volumes must be expressed in the same units.

✓ Example 4.2.2:

A sample of gas has an initial pressure of 722 torr and an initial volume of 88.8 mL. Its volume changes to 0.663 L. What is the new pressure?

Solution

Solutions to Example 11.8.2

Steps for Problem Solving	
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: P_1 = 722 torr and V_1 = 88.8 mL V_2 = 0.633 L Find: P_2 = ? torr
List other known quantities.	1 L = 1000 mL to have the same units for volume.

Steps for Problem Solving	
Plan the problem.	1. Perform the conversion of the second volume unit from L to mL. 2. Rearrange the equation algebraically to solve for P_2. $$P_2 = \frac{P_1 \times V_1}{V_2}$$
Cancel units and calculate.	1. $$0.663\ \cancel{L} \times \frac{1000\,ml}{1\ \cancel{L}} = 663\,ml$$ 2. Substitute the known quantities into the equation and solve. $$P_2 = \frac{722\,\text{torr} \times 88.8\ \cancel{\text{mL}}}{663\ \cancel{\text{mL}}} = 96.7\,\text{torr}$$
Think about your result.	When the volume increased, the pressure decreased, which is as expected for Boyle's Law.

? Exercise 4.2.2

If V_1 = 456 mL, P_1 = 308 torr, and P_2 = 1.55 atm, what is V_2?

Answer

119 mL

Summary

- The behavior of gases can be modeled with gas laws.
- Boyle's Law relates the pressure and volume of a gas at constant temperature and amount.

4.3: Charles’s Law- Volume and Temperature

Learning Objectives

- Learn and apply Charles's Law.

Charles's Law

French physicist Jacques Charles (1746-1823) studied the effect of temperature on the volume of a gas at constant pressure. **Charles's Law** states that the volume of a given mass of gas varies directly with the absolute temperature of the gas when pressure is kept constant. The absolute temperature is temperature measured with the Kelvin scale. The Kelvin scale must be used because zero on the Kelvin scale corresponds to a complete stop of molecular motion.

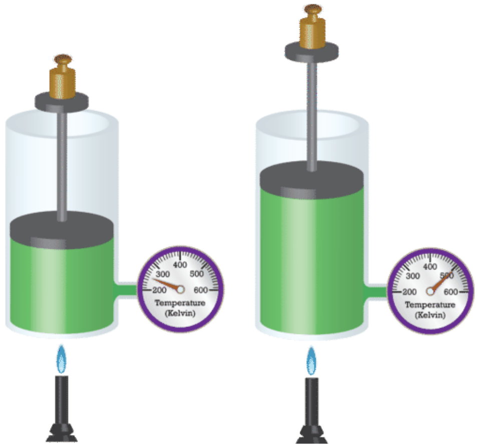


Figure 4.3.1: As a container of confined gas is heated, its molecules increase in kinetic energy and push the movable piston outward, resulting in an increase in volume.

Mathematically, the direct relationship of Charles's Law can be represented by the following equation:

$$\frac{V}{T} = k$$

As with Boyle's Law, k is constant only for a given gas sample. The table below shows temperature and volume data for a set amount of gas at a constant pressure. The third column is the constant for this particular data set and is always equal to the volume divided by the Kelvin temperature.

Table 4.3.1: Temperature-Volume Data

Temperature (K)	**Volume** (mL)	$\boldsymbol{\frac{V}{T} = k} \left(\frac{\mathrm{mL}}{\mathrm{K}}\right)$
50	20	0.40
100	40	0.40
150	60	0.40
200	80	0.40
300	120	0.40
500	200	0.40
1000	400	0.40

When this data is graphed, the result is a straight line, indicative of a direct relationship, shown in the figure below.

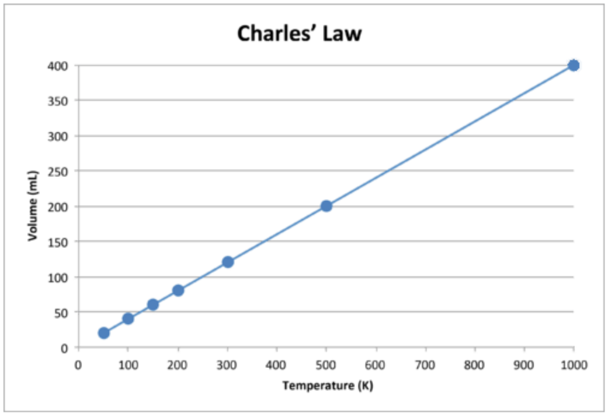


Figure 4.3.2:The volume of a gas increases as the Kelvin temperature increases.

Notice that the line goes exactly toward the origin, meaning that as the absolute temperature of the gas approaches zero, its volume approaches zero. However, when a gas is brought to extremely cold temperatures, its molecules would eventually condense into the liquid state before reaching absolute zero. The temperature at which this change into the liquid state occurs varies for different gases.

Charles's Law can also be used to compare changing conditions for a gas. Now we use V_1 and T_1 to stand for the initial volume and temperature of a gas, while V_2 and T_2 stand for the final volume and temperature. The mathematical relationship of Charles's Law becomes:

$$\frac{V_1}{T_1}=\frac{V_2}{T_2}$$

This equation can be used to calculate any one of the four quantities if the other three are known. The direct relationship will only hold if the temperatures are expressed in Kelvin. Temperatures in Celsius will not work. Recall the relationship that $\mathrm{K}={}^{\circ}\mathrm{C}+273$.

✓ Example 4.3.1:

A balloon is filled to a volume of $2.20 \mathrm{~L}$ at a temperature of $22^{\circ}\mathrm{C}$. The balloon is then heated to a temperature of $71^{\circ}\mathrm{C}$. Find the new volume of the balloon.

Solution

Solutions to Example 11.5.1

Steps for Problem Solving	
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: $V_1=2.20 \mathrm{~L}$ and $T_1=22^{\circ}\mathrm{C}=295 \mathrm{~K}$ $T_2=71^{\circ}\mathrm{C}=344 \mathrm{~K}$ Find: V_2 = ? L
List other known quantities.	The temperatures have first been converted to Kelvin.
Plan the problem.	First, rearrange the equation algebraically to solve for V_2. $V_2=\frac{V_1 \times T_2}{T_1}$
Cancel units and calculate.	Now substitute the known quantities into the equation and solve. $V_2=\frac{2.20 \mathrm{~L} \times 344 \cancel{\mathrm{K}}}{295 \cancel{\mathrm{K}}}=2.57 \mathrm{~L}$

Steps for Problem Solving	
Think about your result.	The volume increases as the temperature increases. The result has three significant figures.

? Exercise 4.3.1

If V_1 = 3.77 L and T_1 = 255 K, what is V_2 if T_2 = 123 K?

Answer

1.82 L

✓ Example 4.3.2:

A sample of a gas has an initial volume of 34.8 L and an initial temperature of −67°C. What must be the temperature of the gas for its volume to be 25.0 L?

Solution

Solutions to Example 11.5.2

Steps for Problem Solving	
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: Given:T_1 = -27ºC and V_1 = 34.8 L V_2 = 25.0 L Find: T_2 = ? K
List other known quantities.	K = -27ºC + 273
Plan the problem.	1. Convert the initial temperature to Kelvin 2. Rearrange the equation algebraically to solve for T_2. $$T_2 = \frac{V_2 \times T_1}{V_1}$$
Cancel units and calculate.	1. −67°C + 273 = 206 K 2. Substitute the known quantities into the equation and solve. $$T_2 = \frac{25.0 \cancel{\text{L}} \times 206 \text{ K}}{34.8 \cancel{\text{L}}} = 148 \text{ K}$$
Think about your result.	This is also equal to −125°C. As temperature decreases, volume decreases—which it does in this example.

? Exercise 4.3.2

If V_1 = 623 mL, T_1 = 255°C, and V_2 = 277 mL, what is T_2?

Answer

235 K, or −38°C

Summary

- Charles's Law relates the volume and temperature of a fixed amount of gas at constant pressure. Volume and temperature are directly proportional.
- When solving gas law problems, remember to convert the temperature to Kelvin.

4.4: Gay-Lussac's Law- Temperature and Pressure

Learning Objectives

- Explain Gay-Lussac's Law.

Gay-Lussac's Law

When the temperature of a sample of gas in a rigid container is increased, the pressure of the gas increases as well. The increase in kinetic energy results in the molecules of gas striking the walls of the container with more force, resulting in a greater pressure. The French chemist Joseph Gay-Lussac (1778-1850) described the relationship between the pressure of a gas and its absolute temperature. **Gay-Lussac's Law** states that the pressure of a given mass of gas varies directly with the absolute temperature of the gas, when the volume is kept constant. Gay-Lussac's Law is very similar to Charles's Law, with the only difference being the type of container. Whereas the container in a Charles's Law experiment is flexible, it is rigid in a Gay-Lussac's Law experiment.

Figure 4.4.1: Joseph Gay-Lussac.

The mathematical expressions for Gay-Lussac's Law are likewise similar to those of Charles's Law:

$$\frac{P}{T} \text{ and } \frac{P_1}{T_1} = \frac{P_2}{T_2}$$

A graph of pressure vs. temperature also illustrates a direct relationship. As a gas is cooled at constant volume, its pressure continually decreases until the gas condenses to a liquid.

Example 4.4.1

The gas in an aerosol can is under a pressure of 3.00 atm at a temperature of 25°C. It is dangerous to dispose of an aerosol can by incineration. What would the pressure in the aerosol can be at a temperature of 845°C?

Solution

Solutions to Example 11.10.1

Steps for Problem Solving	
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: $P_1 = 3.00 \text{ atm}$ $T_1 = 25^\circ\text{C} = 298 \text{ K}$ $T_2 = 845^\circ\text{C} = 1118 \text{ K}$ Find: $P_2 = ? \text{ atm}$
List other known quantities.	The temperatures have first been converted to Kelvin.
Plan the problem.	First, rearrange the equation algebraically to solve for P_2. $$P_2 = \frac{P_1 \times T_2}{T_1}$$
Calculate.	Now substitute the known quantities into the equation and solve. $$P_2 = \frac{3.00 \text{ atm} \times 1118 \cancel{\text{K}}}{298 \cancel{\text{K}}} = 11.3 \text{ atm}$$

Steps for Problem Solving	
Think about your result.	The pressure increases dramatically due to a large increase in temperature.

Summary

- Pressure and temperature at constant volume are directly proportional.

4.5: Avogadro’s Law- Volume and Moles

Avogadro's Law

Avogadro's Law states that the volume of a gas is directly proportional to the number of moles (or number of particles) of gas when the temperature and pressure are held constant. The mathematical expression of Avogadro's Law is:

$$V = k \times n$$

or

$$\frac{V_1}{n_1} = \frac{V_2}{n_2}$$

where n is the number of moles of gas and k is a constant. Avogadro's Law is in evidence whenever you blow up a balloon. The volume of the balloon increases as you add moles of gas to the balloon by blowing it up.

If the container holding the gas is rigid rather than flexible, pressure can be substituted for volume in Avogadro's Law. Adding gas to a rigid container makes the pressure increase.

✓ Example 4.5.1

A balloon has been filled to a volume of $1.90 \text{ L}$with $0.0920 \text{ mol}$of helium gas. If $0.0210 \text{ mol}$of additional helium is added to the balloon while the temperature and pressure are held constant, what is the new volume of the balloon?

Solution

Solutions to Example 11.11.1

Steps for Problem Solving	
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: $V_1 = 1.90 \text{ L}$ $n_1 = 0.0920 \text{ mol}$ Find: $V_2 = ? \text{ L}$
List other known quantities.	Note that the final number of moles has to be calculated by adding the original number of moles to the moles of added helium. $n_2 = 0.0920 + 0.0210 = 0.1130 \text{ mol}$
Plan the problem.	First, rearrange the equation algebraically to solve for V_2. $$V_2 = \frac{V_1 \times n_2}{n_1}$$
Calculate.	Now substitute the known quantities into the equation and solve. $$V_2 = \frac{1.90 \text{ L} \times 0.1130 \ \cancel{\text{mol}}}{0.0920 \ \cancel{\text{mol}}} = 2.33 \text{ L}$$
Think about your result.	Since a relatively small amount of additional helium was added to the balloon, its volume increases slightly.

? Exercise 4.5.1

A 12.8 L volume of gas contains .000498 moles of oxygen gas. At constant temperature and pressure, what volume does .0000136 moles of the gas fill?

Answer

0.350 L

Summary

- Calculations for relationships between volume and number of moles of a gas can be performed using Avogadro's Law.

4.6: The Ideal Gas Law- Pressure, Volume, Temperature, and Moles

Learning Objectives

- Solve calculations using the Ideal Gas Law.

Ideal Gas Law

The **Ideal Gas Law** is a single equation which relates the pressure, volume, temperature, and number of moles of an ideal gas.

$$PV = nRT$$

The variable R in the equation is called the **ideal gas constant**.

Evaluating the Ideal Gas Constant

The value of R, the ideal gas constant, depends on the units chosen for pressure, temperature, and volume in the ideal gas equation. Typically when solving gas law problems, we will use the value R = $0.08206 \text{ L} \cdot \text{atm}/\text{K} \cdot \text{mol}$.

Note that when solving problems with the ideal gas law, the units for P, V, T, and n must match the units of R.

Table 4.6.1: Values of the Ideal Gas Constant

Unit of P	Unit of V	Unit of n	Unit of T	Value and Unit of R
atm	L	mol	K	$0.08206 \text{ L} \cdot \text{atm}/\text{K} \cdot \text{mol}$

The problem below shows how to use the ideal gas law:

Example 4.6.1: Argon Gas

A 4.22 mol sample of Ar has a pressure of 1.21 atm and a temperature of 34°C. What is its volume?

Solution

Steps for Problem Solving	
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: n = 4.22 mol P = 1.21 atm T = 34°C Find: V = ? L
List other known quantities.	none
Plan the problem.	1. The first step is to convert temperature to Kelvin. 2. Then, rearrange the equation algebraically to solve for V $$V = \frac{nRT}{P}$$

Steps for Problem Solving	
Calculate.	1. 34 + 273 = 307 K 2. Now substitute the known quantities into the equation and solve. $V = \frac{(4.22\ \cancel{mol})(0.08205 \frac{L.\ \cancel{atm}}{\cancel{mol}.\ \cancel{K}})(307\ \cancel{K})}{1.21\ \cancel{atm}}$ $= 87.9\,L$
Think about your result.	The number of moles of Ar is large so the expected volume should also be large.

? Exercise 4.6.1

A 0.0997 mol sample of O_2 has a pressure of 0.692 atm and a temperature of 333 K. What is its volume?

Answer

3.94 L

Summary

- The Ideal Gas Law is a single equation which relates the pressure, volume, temperature, and number of moles of an ideal gas.

4.7: Dalton's Law of Partial Pressure

Learning Objectives

- Apply Dalton's Law of Partial Pressures.

Dalton's Law of Partial Pressures

Gas pressure results from collisions between gas particles and the inside walls of their container. If more gas is added to a rigid container, the gas pressure increases. The identities of the two gases do not matter. John Dalton, the English chemist who proposed the atomic theory, also studied mixtures of gases. He found that each gas in a mixture exerts a pressure independently of every other gas in the mixture. For example, our atmosphere is composed of about 78% nitrogen and 21% oxygen, with smaller amounts of several other gases making up the rest. Since nitrogen makes up 78% of the gas particles in a given sample of air, it exerts 78% of the pressure. If the overall atmospheric pressure is 1.00 atm, then the pressure of just the nitrogen in the air is 0.78 atm. The pressure of the oxygen in the air is 0.21 atm.

The **partial pressure** of a gas is the contribution that gas makes to the total pressure when the gas is part of a mixture. The partial pressure of nitrogen is represented by P_{N_2}. **Dalton's Law of Partial Pressures** states that the total pressure of a mixture of gases is equal to the sum of all of the partial pressures of the component gases. Dalton's Law can be expressed with the following equation:

$$P_{\text{total}} = P_1 + P_2 + P_3 + \cdots$$

The figure below shows two gases that are in separate, equal-sized containers at the same temperature and pressure. Each exerts a different pressure, P_1 and P_2, reflective of the number of particles in the container. On the right, the two gases are combined into the same container, with no volume change. The total pressure of the gas mixture is equal to the sum of the individual pressures. If $P_1 = 300 \text{ mm Hg}$ and $P_2 = 500 \text{ mm Hg}$, then $P_{\text{total}} = 800 \text{ mm Hg}$.

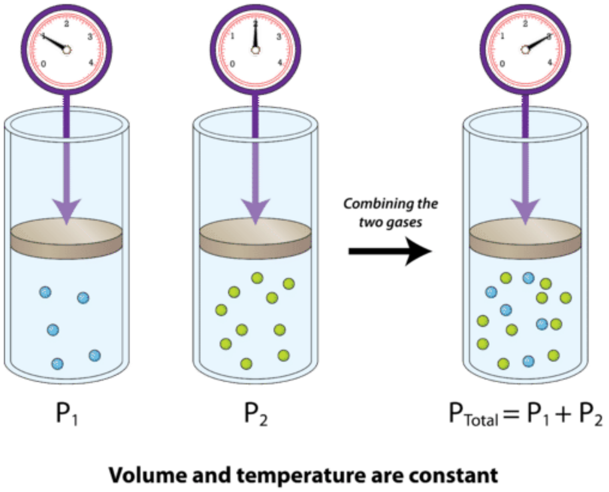


Figure 4.7.1: Dalton's Law states that the pressure of a gas mixture is equal to the partial pressures of the combining gase

---

Example 14.14.1

A mixture of gases contains 0.305 atm Ar, 0.24 atm He, and 1.10 atm Xe. What is the total pressure?

Solution

Step 1: List the known quantities and plan the problem.

Known

- P Ar = 0.303 atm

- P He = 0.24 atm
- P Xe = 1.10 atm

Unknown

- P total

Step 2: Solve.

Since all of the pressures are in units of atm, we do not need to do any conversions before solving.

P total = P Ar + P He + P Xe = 0.303 atm + 0.24 atm + 1.10 atm = 1.64 atm

The answer is reported to two decimal places.

Summary

- Dalton's Law of Partial Pressures states that the total pressure in a system is equal to the sum of the partial pressures of the gases present.

4.7: Dalton's Law of Partial Pressure is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **11.9: Mixtures of Gases - Why Deep-Sea Divers Breathe a Mixture of Helium and Oxygen** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

4.8: Intermolecular Forces

Learning Objectives

- Distinguish between intermolecular forces and covalent bonds.
- Describe the following types of intermolecular forces: dispersion forces, dipole-dipole attractions, and hydrogen bonding
- Identify the types of intermolecular forces experienced by specific molecules based on their structures
- Explain the relation between intermolecular forces and boiling point

Intermolecular Forces and Covalent Bonds

*Intra*molecular forces are those *within* the molecule that keep the molecule together, for example, the bonds between the atoms. *Inter*molecular forces are the attractions *between* molecules, which determine many of the physical properties of a substance. Figure 4.8.4: illustrates these different molecular forces. The strengths of Intermolecular forces between small molecules are weak compared to the intramolecular forces that bond atoms together within a molecule.

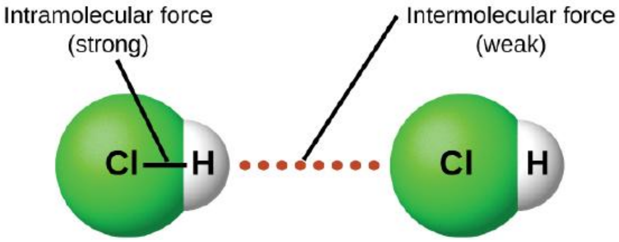


Figure 4.8.4: *Intra*molecular forces keep a molecule intact. *Inter*molecular forces hold multiple molecules together and determine many of a substance's properties.

Dispersion Forces

The first type of intermolecular force we will learn about is called the London dispersion force in honor of German-born American physicist Fritz London who, in 1928, first explained it. This force is often referred to as simply the **dispersion force**. Because the electrons of an atom or molecule are in constant motion (or, alternatively, the electron's location is subject to quantum-mechanical variability), at any moment in time, an atom or molecule can develop a temporary, **instantaneous dipole** if its electrons are distributed asymmetrically. The presence of this dipole can, in turn, distort the electrons of a neighboring atom or molecule, producing an **induced dipole**. These two rapidly fluctuating, temporary dipoles thus result in a relatively weak electrostatic attraction between the species—a so-called dispersion force like that illustrated in Figure 4.8.5.

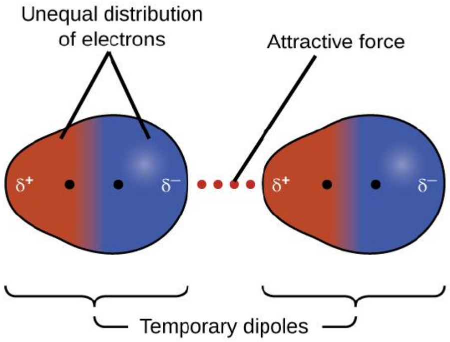


Figure 4.8.5: Dispersion forces result from the formation of temporary dipoles, as illustrated here for two nonpolar diatomic molecules.

Dispersion forces that develop between atoms in different molecules can attract the two molecules to each other. Larger and heavier atoms and molecules exhibit stronger dispersion forces than do smaller and lighter atoms and molecules. F_2 and Cl_2 are gases at room temperature (reflecting weaker attractive forces); Br_2 is a liquid, and I_2 is a solid (reflecting stronger attractive forces). Trends in observed melting and boiling points for the halogens clearly demonstrate this effect, as seen in Table 4.8.1.

Table 4.8.1: Melting and Boiling Points of the Halogens

Halogen	Molar Mass	Atomic Radius	Melting Point	Boiling Point
fluorine, F_2	38 g/mol	72 pm	53 K	85 K
chlorine, Cl_2	71 g/mol	99 pm	172 K	238 K
bromine, Br_2	160 g/mol	114 pm	266 K	332 K
iodine, I_2	254 g/mol	133 pm	387 K	457 K
astatine, At_2	420 g/mol	150 pm	575 K	610 K

The increase in melting and boiling points with increasing atomic/molecular size may be rationalized by considering how the strength of dispersion forces is affected by the electronic structure of the atoms or molecules in the substance. In a larger atom, the valence electrons are, on average, farther from the nuclei than in a smaller atom. Thus, they are less tightly held and can more easily form the temporary dipoles that produce the attraction. The measure of how easy or difficult it is for another electrostatic charge (for example, a nearby ion or polar molecule) to distort a molecule's charge distribution (its electron cloud) is known as polarizability. A molecule that has a charge cloud that is easily distorted is said to be very polarizable and will have large dispersion forces; one with a charge cloud that is difficult to distort is not very polarizable and will have small dispersion forces.

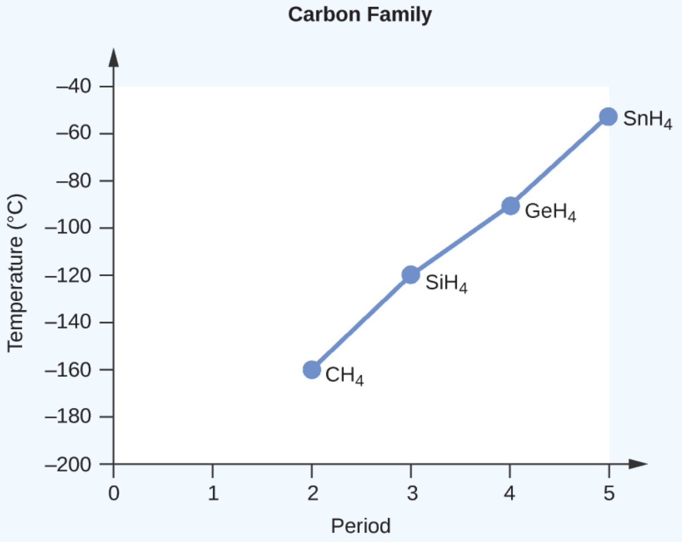
✓ Example 4.8.1: London Forces and Their Effects

Order the following compounds of a group 14 element and hydrogen from lowest to highest boiling point: CH_4, SiH_4, GeH_4, and SnH_4. Explain your reasoning.

Solution

All of these compounds are predicted to be nonpolar, so they may experience only dispersion forces: the smaller the molecule, the less polarizable and the weaker the dispersion forces; the larger the molecule, the larger the dispersion forces. The molar masses of CH_4, SiH_4, GeH_4, and SnH_4 are approximately 16 g/mol, 32 g/mol, 77 g/mol, and 123 g/mol, respectively. Therefore, CH_4 is expected to have the lowest boiling point and SnH_4 the highest boiling point. The ordering from lowest to highest boiling point is expected to be $CH_4 < SiH_4 < GeH_4 < SnH_4$.

A graph of the actual boiling points of these compounds versus the period of the group 14 element shows this prediction to be correct:



? Exercise 4.8.1

Order the following hydrocarbons from lowest to highest boiling point: C_2H_6, C_3H_8, and C_4H_{10}.

Answer

C_2H_6 < C_3H_8 < C_4H_{10}. All of these compounds are nonpolar and only have London dispersion forces: the larger the molecule, the larger the dispersion forces and the higher the boiling point. The ordering from lowest to highest boiling point is therefore C_2H_6 < C_3H_8 < C_4H_{10}.

Dipole-Dipole Attractions

Polar molecules have a partial positive charge on one side and a partial negative charge on the other side of the molecule—a separation of charge called a *dipole*. Consider a polar molecule such as hydrogen chloride, HCl. In the HCl molecule, the more electronegative Cl atom bears the partial negative charge, whereas the less electronegative H atom bears the partial positive charge. An attractive force between HCl molecules results from the attraction between the positive end of one HCl molecule and the negative end of another. This attractive force is called a dipole-dipole attraction—the electrostatic force between the partially positive end of one polar molecule and the partially negative end of another, as illustrated in Figure 4.8.8.

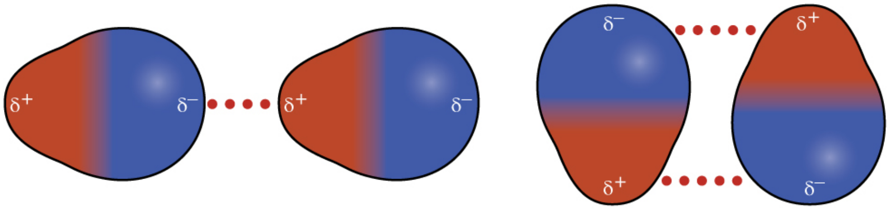


Figure 4.8.8: This image shows two arrangements of polar molecules, such as HCl, that allow an attraction between the partial negative end of one molecule and the partial positive end of another.

The effect of a dipole-dipole attraction is apparent when we compare the properties of HCl molecules to nonpolar F_2 molecules. Both HCl and F_2 consist of the same number of atoms and have approximately the same molecular mass. At a temperature of 150 K, molecules of both substances would have the same average KE. However, the dipole-dipole attractions between HCl molecules are sufficient to cause them to “stick together” to form a liquid, whereas the relatively weaker dispersion forces between nonpolar F_2 molecules are not, and so this substance is gaseous at this temperature. The higher normal boiling point of HCl (188 K) compared to F_2 (85 K) is a reflection of the greater strength of dipole-dipole attractions between HCl molecules, compared to the attractions between nonpolar F_2 molecules.

✓ Example 4.8.2: Dipole-Dipole Forces and Their Effects

Predict which will have the higher boiling point: N_2 or CO. Explain your reasoning.

Solution

CO and N_2 are both diatomic molecules with masses of about 28 amu, so they experience similar London dispersion forces. Because CO is a polar molecule, it experiences dipole-dipole attractions. Because N_2 is nonpolar, its molecules cannot exhibit dipole-dipole attractions. The dipole-dipole attractions between CO molecules are comparably stronger than the dispersion forces between nonpolar N_2 molecules, so CO is expected to have the higher boiling point.

? Exercise 4.8.2

Predict which will have the higher boiling point: ICl or Br_2. Explain your reasoning.

Answer

ICl. ICl and Br_2 have similar masses (~160 amu) and therefore experience similar London dispersion forces. ICl is polar and thus also exhibits dipole-dipole attractions; Br_2 is nonpolar and does not. The relatively stronger dipole-dipole attractions require more energy to overcome, so ICl will have the higher boiling point.

Hydrogen Bonding

Hydrogen bonding is a particularly strong dipole-dipole attraction that may occur when a molecule contains a hydrogen atom bonded to a fluorine, oxygen, or nitrogen atom (the three most electronegative elements). The very large difference in electronegativity between the H atom (2.1) and the atom to which it is bonded (4.0 for an F atom, 3.5 for an O atom, or 3.0 for a N atom), combined with the very small size of a H atom and the relatively small sizes of F, O, or N atoms, leads to *highly concentrated partial charges* with these atoms. Molecules with F-H, O-H, or N-H moieties are very strongly attracted to similar moieties in nearby molecules, a particularly strong type of dipole-dipole attraction called hydrogen bonding. Examples of hydrogen bonds include HF⋯HF, H_2O⋯HOH, and H_3N⋯HNH_2, in which the hydrogen bonds are denoted by dots. Figure 4.8.9 illustrates hydrogen bonding between water molecules.

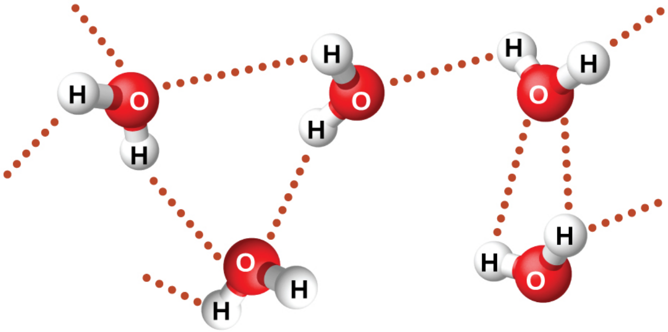


Figure 4.8.9: Water molecules participate in multiple hydrogen-bonding interactions with nearby water molecules.

Despite use of the word "bond," keep in mind that hydrogen bonds are *intermolecular* attractive forces, not *intramolecular* attractive forces (covalent bonds). Hydrogen bonds are much weaker than covalent bonds, only about 5 to 10% as strong, but are generally much stronger than other dipole-dipole attractions and dispersion forces.

Hydrogen bonds have a pronounced effect on the properties of liquids and solids. For example, consider the trends in boiling points for the binary hydrides of group 15 (NH_3, PH_3, AsH_3, and SbH_3), group 16 hydrides (H_2O, H_2S, H_2Se, and H_2Te), and group 17 hydrides (HF, HCl, HBr, and HI). The boiling points of the heaviest three hydrides increase as the molecular mass and strength of the dispersion forces increase. However, the boiling points of NH_3, H_2O, and HF are much higher due to the hydrogen bonding interactions.

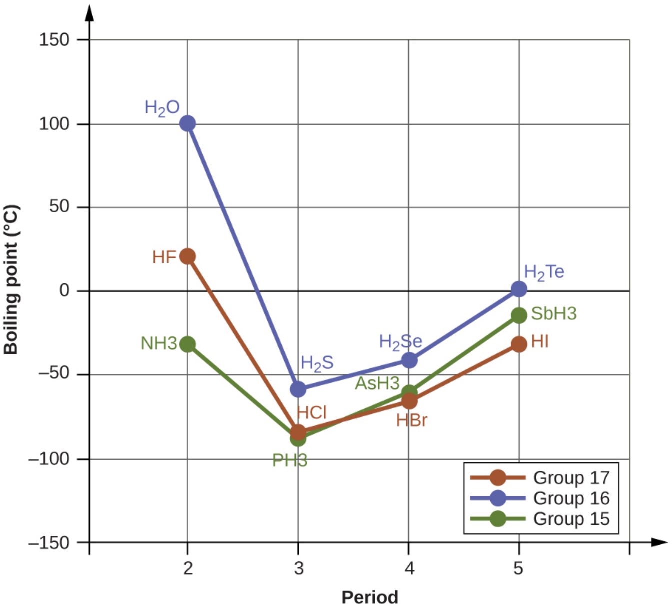


Figure 4.8.11: In comparison to periods 3−5, the binary hydrides of period 2 elements in groups 17, 16 and 15 (F, O and N, respectively) exhibit anomalously high boiling points due to hydrogen bonding.

? Exercise 4.8.3

Ethane (CH_3CH_3) has a boiling point of −89 °C. Would you expect methylamine (CH_3NH_2) to have a higher or lower boiling point than ethane? Explain your reasoning.

Answer

The boiling point for methylamine is predicted to be significantly greater than the boiling point of ethane. CH_3CH_3 and CH_3NH_2 are similar in size and mass, but methylamine possesses an −NH group and can exhibit hydrogen bonding. The actual boiling point of methylamine is −6 °C.

How Sciences Interconnect: Hydrogen Bonding and DNA

Deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) is found in every living organism and contains the genetic information that determines the organism's characteristics, provides the blueprint for making the proteins necessary for life, and serves as a template to pass this information on to the organism's offspring. A DNA molecule consists of two (anti-)parallel chains of repeating nucleotides, which form its well-known double helical structure, as shown in Figure 4.8.12.

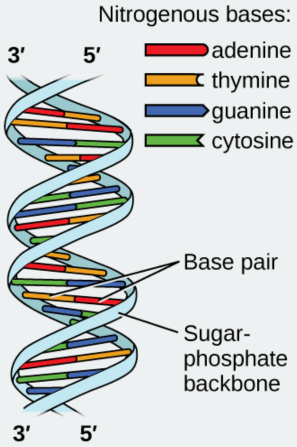


Figure 4.8.12: Two separate DNA molecules form a double-stranded helix in which the molecules are held together via hydrogen bonding. (credit: modification of work by Jerome Walker, Dennis Myts)

Each nucleotide contains a (deoxyribose) sugar bound to a phosphate group on one side, and one of four nitrogenous bases on the other. Two of the bases, cytosine (C) and thymine (T), are single-ringed structures known as pyrimidines. The other two, adenine (A) and guanine (G), are double-ringed structures called purines. These bases form complementary base pairs consisting of one purine and one pyrimidine, with adenine pairing with thymine, and cytosine with guanine. Each base pair is held together by hydrogen bonding. A and T share two hydrogen bonds, C and G share three, and both pairings have a similar shape and structure Figure 4.8.13.

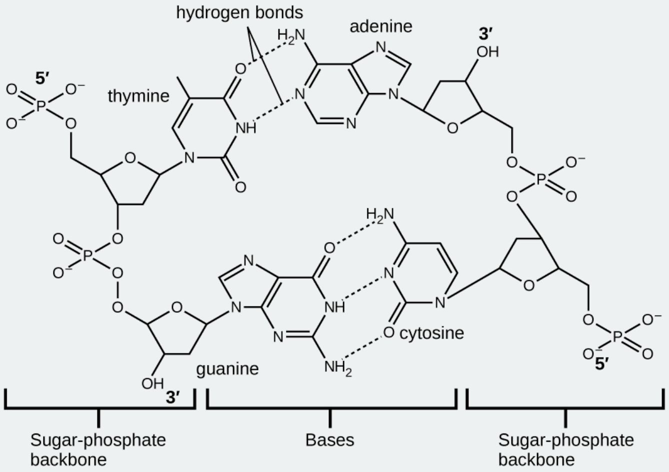


Figure 4.8.13: The geometries of the base molecules result in maximum hydrogen bonding between adenine and thymine (AT) and between guanine and cytosine (GC), so-called "complementary base pairs."

The cumulative effect of millions of hydrogen bonds effectively holds the two strands of DNA together. Importantly, the two strands of DNA can relatively easily "unzip" down the middle since hydrogen bonds are relatively weak compared to the covalent bonds that hold the atoms of the individual DNA molecules together. This allows both strands to function as a template for replication.

4.9: Properties of Liquids

Learning Objectives

- Define viscosity, surface tension, and capillary rise
- Describe the roles of intermolecular attractive forces in each of these properties/phenomena

Viscosity

When you pour a glass of water, or fill a car with gasoline, you observe that water and gasoline flow freely. But when you pour syrup on pancakes or add oil to a car engine, you note that syrup and motor oil do not flow as readily. The **viscosity** of a liquid is a measure of its resistance to flow. Water, gasoline, and other liquids that flow freely have a low viscosity. Honey, syrup, motor oil, and other liquids that do not flow freely, like those shown in Figure 4.9.1, have higher viscosities. We can measure viscosity by measuring the rate at which a metal ball falls through a liquid (the ball falls more slowly through a more viscous liquid) or by measuring the rate at which a liquid flows through a narrow tube (more viscous liquids flow more slowly).

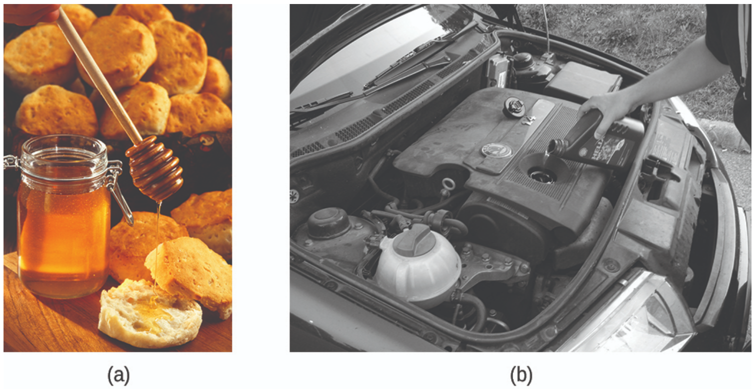


Figure 4.9.1: (a) Honey and (b) motor oil are examples of liquids with high viscosities; they flow slowly. (credit a: modification of work by Scott Bauer; credit b: modification of work by David Nagy)

The IMFs between the molecules of a liquid, the size and shape of the molecules, and the temperature determine how easily a liquid flows. As Table 4.9.1 shows, the more structurally complex are the molecules in a liquid and the stronger the IMFs between them, the more difficult it is for them to move past each other and the greater is the viscosity of the liquid. As the temperature increases, the molecules move more rapidly and their kinetic energies are better able to overcome the forces that hold them together; thus, the viscosity of the liquid decreases.

Table 4.9.1: Viscosities of Common Substances at 25 °C

Substance	Formula	Viscosity (mPa·s)
water	H_2O	0.890
mercury	Hg	1.526
ethanol	C_2H_5OH	1.074
octane	C_8H_{18}	0.508
ethylene glycol	$CH_2(OH)CH_2(OH)$	16.1
honey	variable	~2,000–10,000
motor oil	variable	~50–500

The various IMFs between identical molecules of a substance are examples of cohesive forces. The molecules within a liquid are surrounded by other molecules and are attracted equally in all directions by the cohesive forces within the liquid. However, the molecules on the surface of a liquid are attracted only by about one-half as many molecules. Because of the unbalanced molecular attractions on the surface molecules, liquids contract to form a shape that minimizes the number of molecules on the surface—that is, the shape with the minimum surface area. A small drop of liquid tends to assume a spherical shape, as shown in Figure 4.9.2, because in a sphere, the ratio of surface area to volume is at a minimum. Larger drops are more greatly affected by gravity, air resistance, surface interactions, and so on, and as a result, are less spherical.

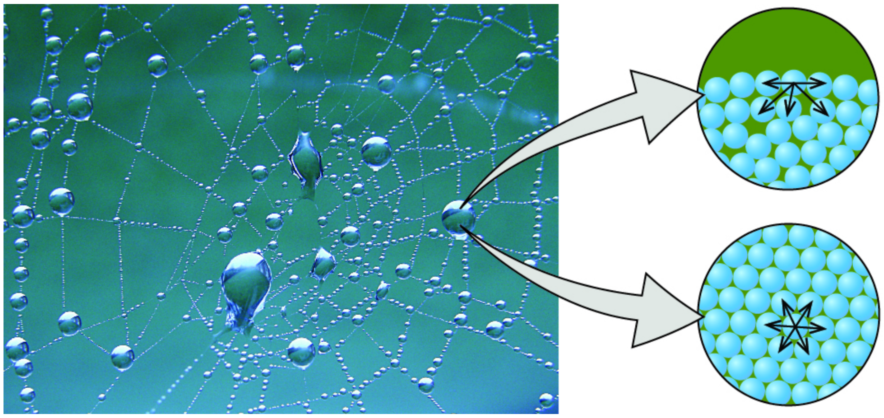


Figure 4.9.2: Attractive forces result in a spherical water drop that minimizes surface area; cohesive forces hold the sphere together; adhesive forces keep the drop attached to the web. (credit photo: modification of work by “OliBac”/Flickr)

Surface tension

Surface tension is defined as the energy required to increase the surface area of a liquid, or the force required to increase the length of a liquid surface by a given amount. This property results from the cohesive forces between molecules at the surface of a liquid, and it causes the surface of a liquid to behave like a stretched rubber membrane. Surface tensions of several liquids are presented in Table 4.9.2. Among common liquids, water exhibits a distinctly high surface tension due to strong hydrogen bonding between its molecules. As a result of this high surface tension, the surface of water represents a relatively “tough skin” that can withstand considerable force without breaking. A steel needle carefully placed on water will float. Some insects, like the one shown in Figure 4.9.3, even though they are denser than water, move on its surface because they are supported by the surface tension.

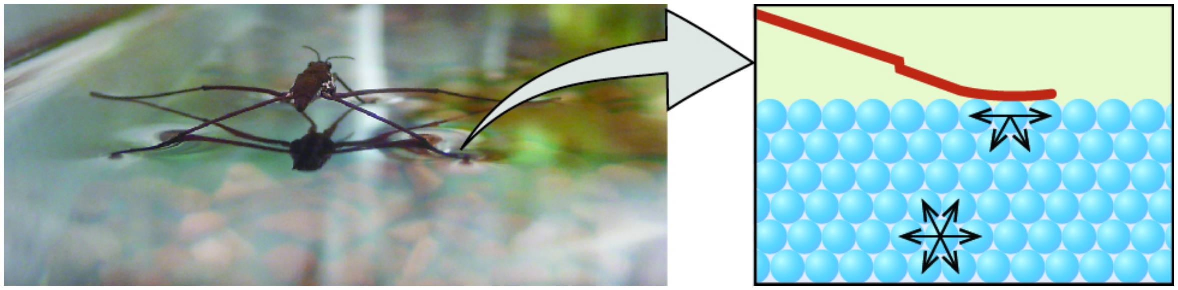


Figure 4.9.3: Surface tension (right) prevents this insect, a “water strider,” from sinking into the water.

Capillary action

If you place one end of a paper towel in spilled wine, as shown in Figure 4.9.5, the liquid wicks up the paper towel. A similar process occurs in a cloth towel when you use it to dry off after a shower. These are examples of **capillary action**—when a liquid flows within a porous material due to the attraction of the liquid molecules to the surface of the material and to other liquid molecules. The adhesive forces between the liquid and the porous material, combined with the cohesive forces within the liquid, may be strong enough to move the liquid upward against gravity.

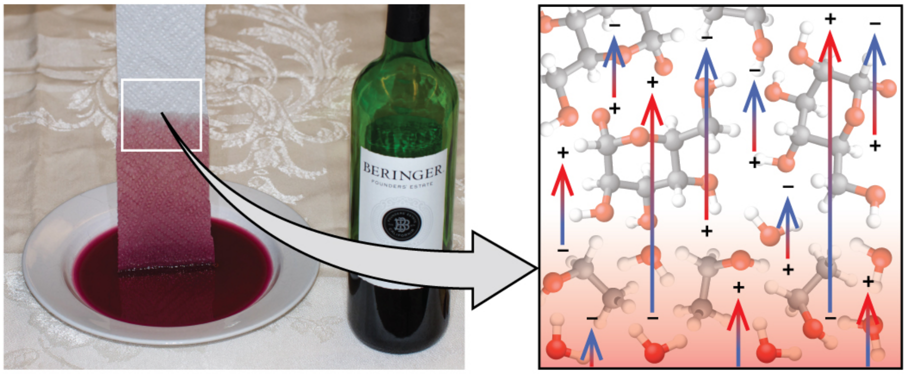


Figure 4.9.5: Wine wicks up a paper towel (left) because of the strong attractions of water (and ethanol) molecules to the −OH groups on the towel's cellulose fibers and the strong attractions of water molecules to other water (and ethanol) molecules (right). (credit photo: modification of work by Mark Blaser)

Towels soak up liquids like water because the fibers of a towel are made of molecules that are attracted to water molecules. Most cloth towels are made of cotton, and paper towels are generally made from paper pulp. Both consist of long molecules of cellulose that contain many −OH groups. Water molecules are attracted to these −OH groups and form hydrogen bonds with them, which draws the H_2O molecules up the cellulose molecules. The water molecules are also attracted to each other, so large amounts of water are drawn up the cellulose fibers.

Capillary action can also occur when one end of a small diameter tube is immersed in a liquid, as illustrated in Figure 4.9.6. If the liquid molecules are strongly attracted to the tube molecules, the liquid creeps up the inside of the tube until the weight of the liquid and the adhesive forces are in balance. The smaller the diameter of the tube is, the higher the liquid climbs. It is partly by capillary action occurring in plant cells called xylem that water and dissolved nutrients are brought from the soil up through the roots and into a plant. Capillary action is the basis for thin layer chromatography, a laboratory technique commonly used to separate small quantities of mixtures. You depend on a constant supply of tears to keep your eyes lubricated and on capillary action to pump tear fluid away.

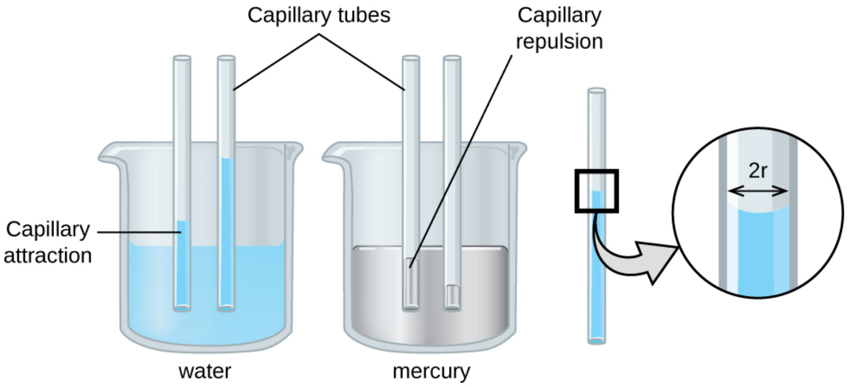


Figure 4.9.6: Depending upon the relative strengths of adhesive and cohesive forces, a liquid may rise (such as water) or fall (such as mercury) in a glass capillary tube. The extent of the rise (or fall) is directly proportional to the surface tension of the liquid and inversely proportional to the density of the liquid and the radius of the tube.

4.10: Phase Transitions

Learning Objectives

- Define phase transitions (vaporization, condensation, melting, freezing, sublimation, deposition)
- Relate the vapor pressure of a liquid to the strength of its intermolecular forces
- Relate boiling points to intermolecular forces

Vaporization and Condensation

Vaporization is the phase change from a liquid to a gas, and **condensation** is the phase change from a gas to a liquid.

When a liquid vaporizes in a closed container, gas molecules cannot escape. As these gas phase molecules move randomly about, they will occasionally collide with the surface of the condensed phase, and in some cases, these collisions will result in the molecules re-entering the condensed phase. The change from the gas phase to the liquid is called **condensation**. When the rate of condensation becomes equal to the rate of **vaporization**, neither the amount of the liquid nor the amount of the vapor in the container changes. The vapor in the container is then said to be *in equilibrium* with the liquid. Keep in mind that this is not a static situation, as molecules are continually exchanged between the condensed and gaseous phases. Such is an example of a **dynamic equilibrium**, the status of a system in which reciprocal processes (for example, vaporization and condensation) occur at equal rates. The pressure exerted by the vapor in equilibrium with a liquid in a closed container at a given temperature is called the liquid's **vapor pressure** (or equilibrium vapor pressure).

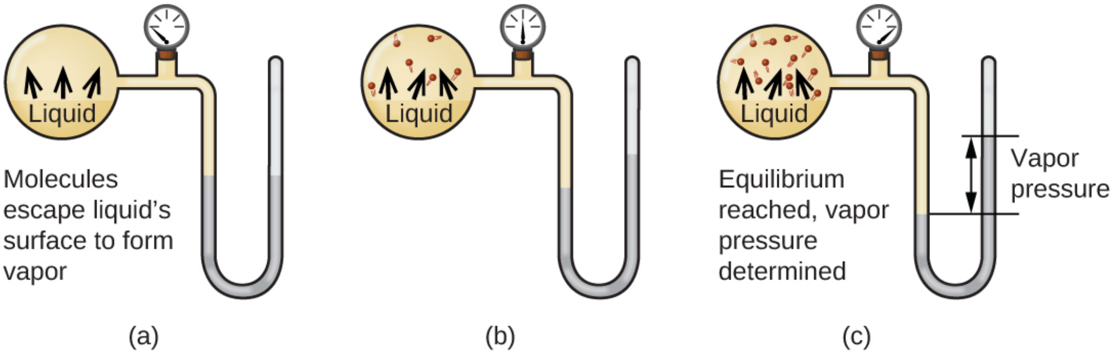
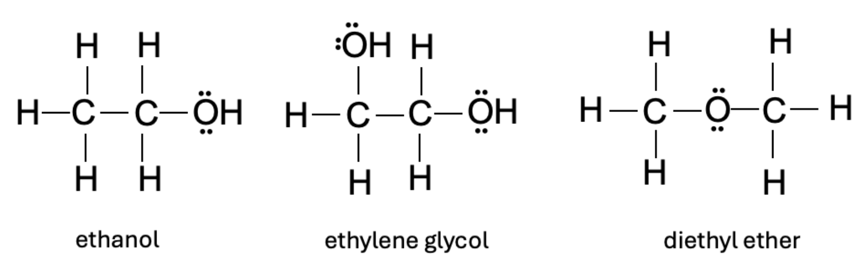


Figure 4.10.1: In a closed container, dynamic equilibrium is reached when (a) the rate of molecules escaping from the liquid to become the gas (b) increases and eventually (c) equals the rate of gas molecules entering the liquid. When this equilibrium is reached, the vapor pressure of the gas is constant, although the vaporization and condensation processes continue.

The chemical identities of the molecules in a liquid determine the types (and strengths) of intermolecular attractions possible; consequently, different substances will exhibit different equilibrium vapor pressures. Relatively strong intermolecular attractive forces will serve to impede vaporization, resulting in a relatively low vapor pressure. Weak intermolecular attractions correspond to relatively high vapor pressures.

Example 4.10.1: Explaining Vapor Pressure in Terms of IMFs

Given the shown structural formulas for these three compounds, predict which would have the lowest vapor pressure and which would have the highest vapor pressure. Relate the vapor pressures to the strengths of the intermolecular forces present.



Solution

Ethanol: has London dispersion forces, dipole-dipole forces, and hydrogen bonding. Because ethanol is smaller than ethylene glycol and has fewer -OH groups, its IMFs will be weaker than the IMFs in ethylene glycol.

Ethylene glycol: has London dispersion forces, dipole-dipole forces, and hydrogen bonding. Ethylene glycol has two −OH group, so its overall IMFs are the strongest, meaning its vapor pressure will be the lowest.

Diethyl ether: has London dispersion forces and dipole-dipole forces. Its IMFs are the weakest and, as a result, its molecules most readily escape from the liquid, so it has the highest vapor pressure.

Boiling Points

When the vapor pressure increases enough to equal the external atmospheric pressure, the liquid reaches its **boiling point**. The boiling point of a liquid is the temperature at which its equilibrium vapor pressure is equal to the external pressure. The **normal boiling point** of a liquid is defined as its boiling point when surrounding pressure is equal to 1 atm (101.3 kPa). Figure 4.10.3 shows the variation in vapor pressure with temperature for several different substances. Note that ethylene glycol has the strongest intermolecular forces and the highest boiling point.

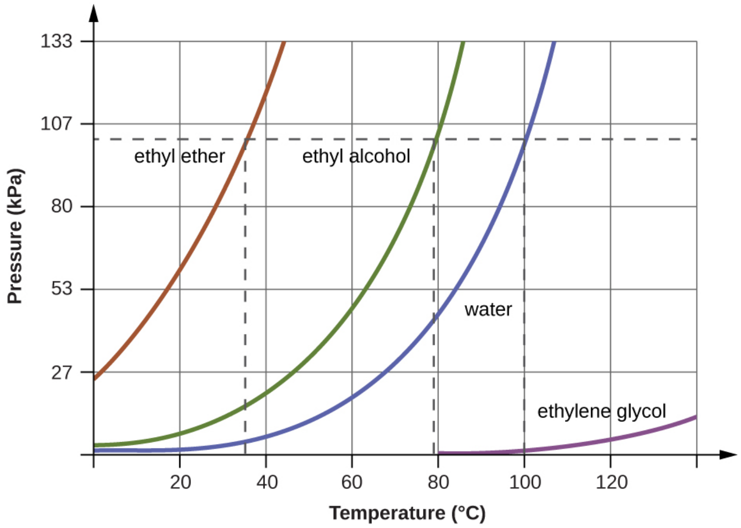


Figure 4.10.3: The boiling points of liquids are the temperatures at which their equilibrium vapor pressures equal the pressure of the surrounding atmosphere. Normal boiling points are those corresponding to a pressure of 1 atm (101.3 kPa.)

✓ Example 4.10.5: Sweat and evaporation

One way our body is cooled is by evaporation of the water in sweat (Figure 4.10.4). In very hot climates, we can lose as much as 1.5 L of sweat per day. Heat is removed when sweat evaporates.

Figure 4.10.4: Evaporation of sweat helps cool the body. (credit: “Kullez”/Flickr)

Melting and Freezing

Melting is the phase transition from solid to liquid, and **freezing** is the phase transition from liquid to solid. Because melting requires breaking intermolecular forces, melting requires an input of energy. The temperature at which the solid and liquid phases of a given substance are in equilibrium is called the melting point of the solid or the freezing point of the liquid.

Sublimation and Deposition

Some solids can transition directly into the gaseous state, bypassing the liquid state, via a process known as **sublimation**. At room temperature and standard pressure, a piece of dry ice (solid CO_2) sublimes, appearing to gradually disappear without ever forming any liquid. The reverse of sublimation is called **deposition**, a process in which gaseous substances condense directly into the solid state, bypassing the liquid state. Like vaporization and melting, the process of sublimation requires an input of energy to overcome intermolecular attractions. Phase changes occur at a constant temperature - heat is either used to break intermolecular attractions or heat is released when intermolecular attractions are formed.

Figure 4.10.6: Sublimation of solid iodine in the bottom of the tube produces a purple gas that subsequently deposits as solid iodine on the colder part of the tube above. (credit: modification of work by Mark Ott)

4.11: Phase Diagrams

Learning Objectives

- Use phase diagrams to identify stable phases at given temperatures and pressures
- Identify the following on a phase diagram: solid, liquid, gas, triple point, critical point

A **phase diagram** is a plot of pressure versus temperature for a substance. These diagrams indicate the physical states that exist under specific conditions of pressure and temperature, and also provide the pressure dependence of the phase-transition temperatures (melting points, sublimation points, boiling points). A typical phase diagram for a pure substance is shown in Figure 4.11.1.

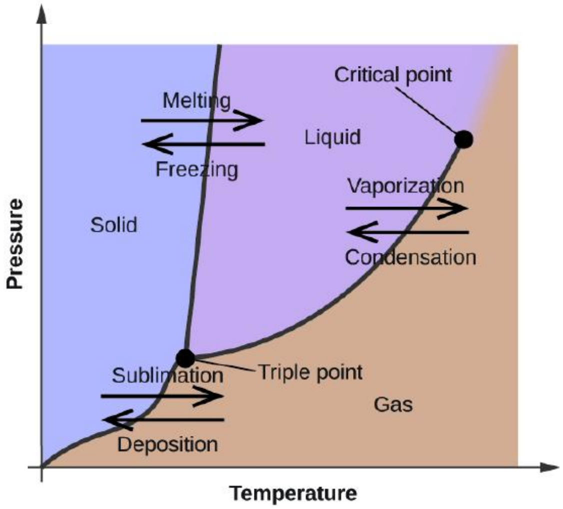


Figure 4.11.1: The physical state of a substance and its phase-transition temperatures are represented graphically in a phase diagram.

Consider the phase diagram for water shown in Figure 4.11.2.

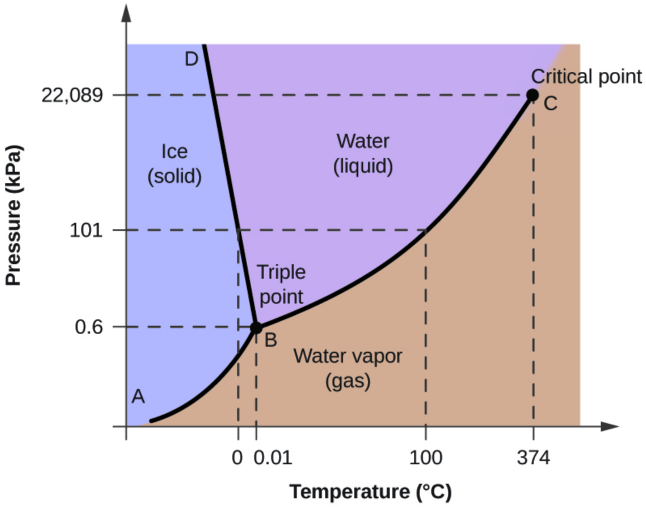


Figure 4.11.2: The pressure and temperature axes on this phase diagram of water are not drawn to constant scale in order to illustrate several important properties.

We can use the phase diagram to identify the physical state of a sample of water under specified conditions of pressure and temperature. For example, a pressure of 50 kPa and a temperature of −10 °C correspond to the region of the diagram labeled "ice." Under these conditions, water exists only as a solid (ice). A pressure of 50 kPa and a temperature of 50 °C correspond to the "water" region—here, water exists only as a liquid. At 25 kPa and 200 °C, water exists only in the gaseous state. Note that on the

H_2O phase diagram, the pressure and temperature axes are not drawn to a constant scale in order to permit the illustration of several important features as described here.

The curve BC in Figure 4.11.2 is the plot of vapor pressure versus temperature as described in the previous module of this chapter. This "liquid-vapor" curve separates the liquid and gaseous regions of the phase diagram and provides the boiling point for water at any pressure. For example, at 1 atm, the boiling point is 100 °C. Notice that the liquid-vapor curve terminates at a temperature of 374 °C and a pressure of 218 atm, indicating that water cannot exist as a liquid above this temperature, regardless of the pressure. The physical properties of water under these conditions are intermediate between those of its liquid and gaseous phases. This unique state of matter is called a supercritical fluid, a topic that will be described in the next section of this module.

The solid-vapor curve, labeled AB in Figure 4.11.2, indicates the temperatures and pressures at which ice and water vapor are in equilibrium. These temperature-pressure data pairs correspond to the sublimation, or deposition, points for water. If we could zoom in on the solid-gas line in Figure 4.11.2, we would see that ice has a vapor pressure of about 0.20 kPa at −10 °C. Thus, if we place a frozen sample in a vacuum with a pressure less than 0.20 kPa, ice will sublime. This is the basis for the "freeze-drying" process often used to preserve foods, such as the ice cream shown in Figure 4.11.3.

Figure 4.11.3: Freeze-dried foods, like this ice cream, are dehydrated by sublimation at pressures below the triple point for water. (credit: ″lwao″/Flickr)

The solid-liquid curve labeled BD shows the temperatures and pressures at which ice and liquid water are in equilibrium, representing the melting/freezing points for water. Note that this curve exhibits a slight negative slope (greatly exaggerated for clarity), indicating that the melting point for water decreases slightly as pressure increases. Water is an unusual substance in this regard, as most substances exhibit an increase in melting point with increasing pressure. This behavior is partly responsible for the movement of glaciers, like the one shown in Figure 4.11.4. The bottom of a glacier experiences an immense pressure due to its weight that can melt some of the ice, forming a layer of liquid water on which the glacier may more easily slide.

Figure 4.11.4: The immense pressures beneath glaciers result in partial melting to produce a layer of water that provides lubrication to assist glacial movement. This satellite photograph shows the advancing edge of the Perito Moreno glacier in Argentina. (credit: NASA)

The point of intersection of all three curves is labeled B in Figure 4.11.2. At the pressure and temperature represented by this point, three phases of water coexist in equilibrium. This temperature-pressure data pair is called the triple point. At pressures lower than the triple point, water cannot exist as a liquid, regardless of the temperature.

✓ Example 4.11.1: Determining the State of Water

Using the phase diagram for water given in Figure 4.11.2, determine the state of water at the following temperatures and pressures:

a. −10 °C and 50 kPa
b. 25 °C and 90 kPa
c. 50 °C and 40 kPa
d. 80 °C and 5 kPa
e. −10 °C and 0.3 kPa
f. 50 °C and 0.3 kPa

Solution

Using the phase diagram for water, we can determine that the state of water at each temperature and pressure given are as follows: (a) solid; (b) liquid; (c) liquid; (d) gas; (e) solid; (f) gas.

Consider the phase diagram for carbon dioxide shown in Figure 4.11.5 as another example. The solid-liquid curve exhibits a positive slope, indicating that the melting point for CO_2 increases with pressure as it does for most substances (water being a notable exception as described previously). Notice that the triple point is well above 1 atm, indicating that carbon dioxide cannot exist as a liquid under ambient pressure conditions. Instead, cooling gaseous carbon dioxide at 1 atm results in its deposition into the solid state. Likewise, solid carbon dioxide does not melt at 1 atm pressure but instead sublimes to yield gaseous CO_2.

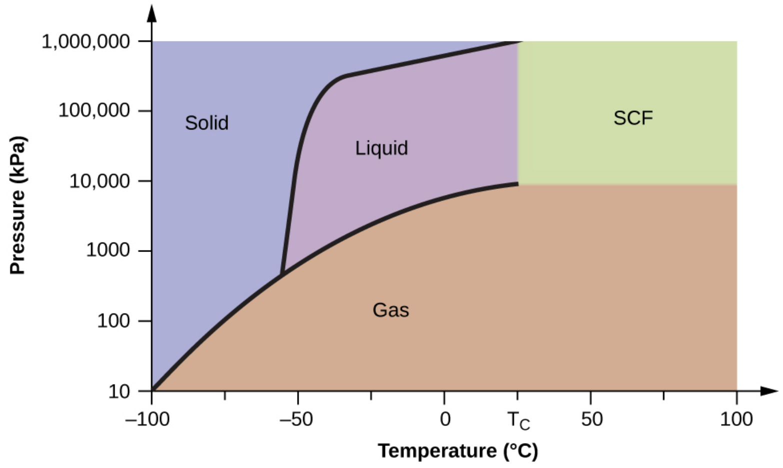


Figure 4.11.5: A phase diagram for carbon dioxide is shown. The pressure axis is plotted on a logarithmic scale to accommodate the large range of values.

✓ Example 4.11.2: Determining the State of Carbon Dioxide

Using the phase diagram for carbon dioxide shown in Figure 4.11.5, determine the state of CO_2 at the following temperatures and pressures:

a. −30 °C and 2000 kPa
b. −90 °C and 1000 kPa
c. −60 °C and 100 kPa
d. −40 °C and 1500 kPa
e. 0 °C and 100 kPa
f. 20 °C and 100 kPa

Solution

Using the phase diagram for carbon dioxide provided, we can determine that the state of CO_2 at each temperature and pressure given are as follows: (a) liquid; (b) solid; (c) gas; (d) liquid; (e) gas; (f) gas.

4.12: Water - A Remarkable Molecule

Learning Objectives

- Describe several unique properties of water.

Earth is the only known body in our solar system that has liquid water existing freely on its surface; life on Earth would not be possible without the presence of liquid water. Water has several properties that make it a unique substance among substances. It is an excellent solvent; it dissolves many other substances and allows those substances to react when in solution. In fact, water is sometimes called the *universal solvent* because of this ability. Water has unusually high melting and boiling points (0°C and 100°C, respectively) for such a small molecule.

Unlike most substances, the solid form of water is less dense than its liquid form, which allows ice to float on water. In colder weather, lakes and rivers freeze from the top, allowing animals and plants to continue to live underneath. Water also requires an unusually large amount of energy to change temperature.

Phase Diagram for Water

Water is a unique substance in many ways. One of these special properties is the fact that solid water (ice) is less dense than liquid water just above the freezing point. The phase diagram for water is shown in the figure below.

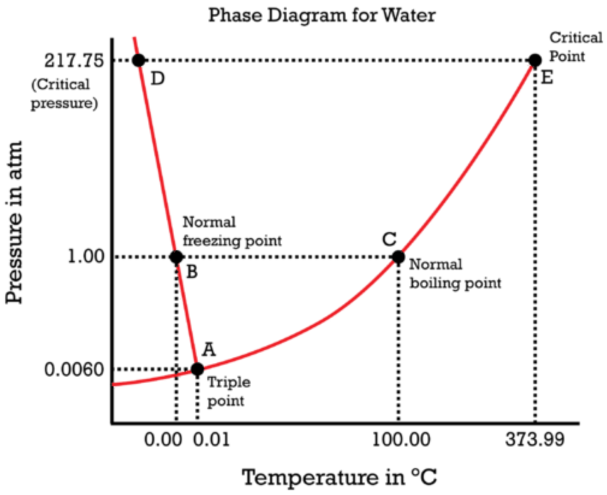


Figure 4.12.1: Phase diagram for water.

In the phase diagram for water, the slope of the line between the solid and liquid states is negative rather than positive. The reason for this is that water is an unusual substance, as its solid state is less dense than the liquid state. Ice floats in liquid water. Therefore, a pressure change has the opposite effect on those two phases. If ice is relatively near its melting point, it can be changed into liquid water by the application of pressure. The water molecules are actually closer together in the liquid phase than they are in the solid phase.

Summary

- Solid water is less dense than liquid water just above the freezing point.
- Many substances are soluble in water.

4.12: Water - A Remarkable Molecule is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **12.8: Water - A Remarkable Molecule** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

5: Module 5 - Solution Chemistry

5.1: SOLUTIONS - HOMOGENEOUS MIXTURES

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Learn terminology involving solutions.
- Explain the significance of the statement "like dissolves like."
- Explain why certain substances dissolve in other substances.

The major component of a solution is called the **solvent.** The minor component of a solution is called the **solute**. By major and minor we mean whichever component has the greater or lesser presence by mass or by moles. Sometimes this becomes confusing, especially with substances with very different molar masses. However, here we will confine the discussion to solutions for which the major component and the minor component are obvious.

Figure 5.1.1: Making a saline water solution by dissolving table salt (NaCl) in water. The salt is the solute and the water the solvent. (CC-BY-SA 3.0; Chris 73).

Solutions exist for every possible phase of the solute and the solvent. Salt water, for example, is a solution of solid NaCl in liquid water, while air is a solution of a gaseous solute (O_2) in a gaseous solvent (N_2). In all cases, however, the overall phase of the solution is the same phase as the solvent. Table 5.1.1 lists some common types of solutions, with examples of each.

Table 5.1.1: Types of Solutions

Solvent Phase	Solute Phase	Example
gas	gas	air
liquid	gas	carbonated beverages
liquid	liquid	ethanol (C_2H_5OH) in H_2O (alcoholic beverages)
liquid	solid	salt water
solid	gas	H_2 gas absorbed by Pd metal
solid	liquid	Hg(ℓ) in dental fillings
solid	solid	steel alloys

EXAMPLE 5.1.1: SUGAR AND WATER

A solution is made by dissolving 1.00 g of sucrose ($C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$) in 100.0 g of liquid water. Identify the solvent and solute in the resulting solution.

Solution

Either by mass or by moles, the obvious minor component is **sucrose**, so it is **the solute**. **Water**—the majority component—is **the solvent**. The fact that the resulting solution is the same phase as water also suggests that water is the solvent.

EXERCISE 5.1.1

A solution is made by dissolving 3.33 g of $\mathrm{HCl(g)}$ in 40.0 g of liquid methyl alcohol (CH_3OH). Identify the solvent and solute in the resulting solution.

Answer

solute: $\mathrm{HCl(g)}$

solvent: CH_3OH

LIKE DISSOLVES LIKE

A simple way to predict which compounds will dissolve in other compounds is the phrase "like dissolves like". What this means is that polar compounds dissolve polar compounds, nonpolar compounds dissolve nonpolar compounds, but polar and nonpolar do not dissolve in each other.

Even some nonpolar substances dissolve in water but only to a limited degree. Have you ever wondered why fish are able to breathe? Oxygen gas, a nonpolar molecule, does dissolve in water—it is this oxygen that the fish take in through their gills. The reason we can enjoy carbonated sodas is also due to a nonpolar compound that dissolves in water. Pepsi-cola and all the other sodas have carbon dioxide gas, CO_2, a nonpolar compound, dissolved in a sugar-water solution. In this case, to keep as much gas in solution as possible, the sodas are kept under pressure.

This general trend of "like dissolves like" is summarized in the following table:

Table 5.1.2: Summary of Solubilities

Solute (Polarity of Compound)	Solvent (Polarity of Compound)	Dominant Intermolecular Force	Is Solution Formed?
Polar	Polar	Dipole-Dipole Force and/or Hydrogen Bond	yes
Non-polar	Non-polar	Dispersion Force	yes
Polar	Non-polar		no
Non-polar	Polar		no
Ionic	Polar	Ion-Dipole	yes
Ionic	Non-polar		no

Note that every time charged particles (ionic compounds or polar substances) are mixed, a solution is formed. When particles with no charges (nonpolar compounds) are mixed, they will form a solution. However, if substances with charges are mixed with other substances without charges, a solution does not form. When an ionic compound is considered "insoluble", it doesn't necessarily mean the compound is completely untouched by water. All ionic compounds dissolve to some extent. An insoluble compound just doesn't dissolve in any noticeable or appreciable amount.

What is it that makes a solute soluble in some solvents but not others?

The answer is intermolecular interactions. The intermolecular interactions include London dispersion forces, dipole-dipole interactions, and hydrogen bonding (as described in Chapter 10). From experimental studies, it has been determined that if molecules of a solute experience the same intermolecular forces that the solvent does, the solute will likely dissolve in that solvent. So, NaCl—a very polar substance because it is composed of ions—dissolves in water, which is very polar, but not in oil, which is generally nonpolar. Nonpolar wax dissolves in nonpolar hexane, but not in polar water.

Figure 5.1.2: Water (clear liquid) and oil (yellow) do not form liquid solutions. (CC BY-SA 1.0 Generic; Victor Blacus)

✓ EXAMPLE 5.1.2: POLAR AND NONPOLAR SOLVENTS

Would I_2 be more soluble in CCl_4 or H_2O? Explain your answer.

Solution

I_2 is nonpolar. Of the two solvents, CCl_4 is nonpolar and H_2O is polar, so I_2 would be expected to be more soluble in CCl_4.

? EXERCISE 5.1.2

Would C_3H_7OH be more soluble in CCl_4 or H_2O? Explain your answer.

Answer

H_2O, because both experience hydrogen bonding.

✓ EXAMPLE 5.1.3

Water is considered a polar solvent. Which substances should dissolve in water?

a. methanol (CH_3OH)
b. sodium sulfate (\ce{Na2SO4}\))
c. octane (C_8H_{18})

Solution

Because water is polar, substances that are polar or ionic will dissolve in it.

a. Because of the OH group in methanol, we expect its molecules to be polar. Thus, we expect it to be soluble in water. As both water and methanol are liquids, the word *miscible* can be used in place of *soluble*.
b. Sodium sulfate is an ionic compound, so we expect it to be soluble in water.
c. Like other hydrocarbons, octane is nonpolar, so we expect that it would not be soluble in water.

? EXERCISE 5.1.3: TOLUENE

Toluene ($C_6H_5CH_3$) is widely used in industry as a nonpolar solvent. Which substances should dissolve in toluene?

a. water (H_2O)
b. sodium sulfate (Na_2SO_4)
c. octane (C_8H_{18})

Answer

Octane (C_8H_{18}) will dissolve. It is also non-polar.

SUMMARY

- Solutions are composed of a solvent (major component) and a solute (minor component).
- “Like dissolves like” is a useful rule for deciding if a solute will be soluble in a solvent.

5.2: Specifying Solution Concentration- Mass Percent

Learning Objectives

- Express the amount of solute in a solution in various concentration units.

To define a solution precisely, we need to state its concentration: how much solute is dissolved in a certain amount of solvent. Words such as *dilute* or *concentrated* are used to describe solutions that have a little or a lot of dissolved solute, respectively, but these are relative terms with meanings that depend on various factors.

Introduction

Concentration is the measure of how much of a given substance is mixed with another substance. Solutions are said to be either dilute or concentrated. When we say that vinegar is 5% acetic acid in water, we are giving the concentration. If we said the mixture was 10% acetic acid, this would be more concentrated than the vinegar solution.

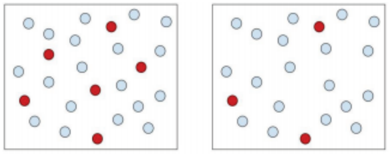


Figure $5.2.1$: The solution on the left is more concentrated than the solution on the right because there is a greater ratio of solute (red balls) to solvent (blue balls) particles. The solution particles are closer together. The solution on the right is more dilute (less concentrated). (CC-SA-BY-3.0 Tracy Poulsen).

A **concentrated** solution is one in which there is a large amount of solute in a given amount of solvent. A **dilute** solution is one in which there is a small amount of solute in a given amount of solvent. A dilute solution is a concentrated solution that has been, in essence, watered down. Think of the frozen juice containers you buy in the grocery store. To make juice, you have to mix the frozen juice concentrate from inside these containers with three or four times the container size full of water. Therefore, you are diluting the concentrated juice. In terms of solute and solvent, the concentrated solution has a lot of solute versus the dilute solution that would have a smaller amount of solute.

The terms "concentrated" and "dilute" provide qualitative methods of describing concentration. Although qualitative observations are necessary and have their place in every part of science, including chemistry, we have seen throughout our study of science that there is a definite need for quantitative measurements in science. This is particularly true in solution chemistry. In this section, we will explore some quantitative methods of expressing solution concentration.

Mass Percent

There are several ways of expressing the concentration of a solution by using a percentage. The mass/mass percent (% m/m) is defined as the mass of a solute divided by the mass of a solution times 100:

$$\%\ \mathrm{m/m} = \frac{\text{mass of solute}}{\text{mass of solution}} \times 100\%$$

mass of solution = mass of solute + mass solvent

If you can measure the masses of the solute and the solution, determining the mass/mass percent is easy. Each mass must be expressed in the same units to determine the proper concentration.

Suppose that a solution was prepared by dissolving 25.0 g of sugar into 100.0 g of water.

The mass of the solution is

mass of solution = 25.0g sugar + 100.0g water = 125.0 g

The percent by mass would be calculated by:

$$\text{Percent by mass} = \frac{25.0\text{ g sugar}}{125.0\text{ g solution}} \times 100\% = 20.0\%\text{ sugar}$$

Example 5.2.1

A saline solution with a mass of 355 g has 36.5 g of NaCl dissolved in it. What is the mass/mass percent concentration of the solution?

Solution

We can substitute the quantities given in the equation for mass/mass percent:

$$\%\,\mathrm{m/m} = \frac{36.5\ \mathrm{g}}{355\ \mathrm{g}} \times 100\% = 10.3\%$$

Exercise 5.2.1

A dextrose (also called D-glucose, $C_6H_{12}O_6$) solution with a mass of 2.00×10^2 g has 15.8 g of dextrose dissolved in it. What is the mass/mass percent concentration of the solution?

Answer

7.90 %

Using Mass Percent in Calculations

Sometimes you may want to make up a particular mass of solution of a given percent by mass and need to calculate what mass of the solute to use. Using mass percent as a conversion can be useful in this type of problem. The mass percent can be expressed as a conversion factor in the form $\frac{g\ \text{solute}}{100\ \text{gsolution}}$ or $\frac{100\ \text{gsolution}}{g\ \text{solute}}$

For example, if you need to make $3000.0\ \text{g}$of a 5.00%solution of sodium chloride, the mass of solute needs to be determined.

Solution

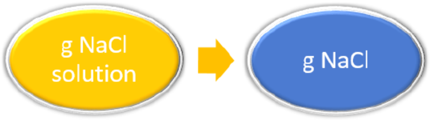
Given: 3000.0 g NaCl solution

5.00% NaCl solution

Find: mass of solute = ? g NaCl

Other known quantities: 5.00 g NaCl is to 100 g solution

The appropriate conversion factor (based on the given mass percent) can be used follows:



$$\frac{5.00\ g\ NaCl}{100\ g\ NaCl\ solution}$$

To solve for the mass of NaCl, the given mass of solution is multiplied by the conversion factor.

$$gNaCl = 3,000.0\ g\ NaCl\ \cancel{solution} \times \frac{5.00\ g\ NaCl}{100\ g\ NaCl\ \cancel{solution}} = 150.0g\ NaCl$$

You would need to weigh out $150\ \text{g}$ of NaCl and add it to $2850\ \text{g}$ of water. Notice that it was necessary to subtract the mass of the $\text{NaCl}\ (150\ \text{g})$ from the mass of solution $(3000\ \text{g})$ to calculate the mass of the water that would need to be added.

Exercise 5.2.1

What is the amount (in g) of hydrogen peroxide (H_2O_2) needed to make a 6.00 kg, 3.00 % (by mass) H_2O_2 solution?

Answer

180 g H_2O_2

Contributors and Attributions

5.2: Specifying Solution Concentration- Mass Percent is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **13.5: Specifying Solution Concentration- Mass Percent** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

5.3: Specifying Solution Concentration- Molarity

Learning Objectives

- Use molarity to determine quantities in chemical reactions.
- Use molarity as a conversion factor in calculations.

Another way of expressing concentration is to give the number of moles of solute per unit volume of solution. Of all the quantitative measures of concentration, molarity is the one used most frequently by chemists. **Molarity** is defined as the number of moles of solute per liter of solution.

$$\text{molarity} = \frac{\text{number of moles of solute}}{\text{number of liters of solution}} \tag{5.3.1}$$

The symbol for molarity is M or moles/liter. Chemists also use square brackets to indicate a reference to the molarity of a substance. For example, the expression $\left[\mathrm{Ag^{+}}\right]$ refers to the molarity of the silver ion in solution. Solution concentrations expressed in molarity are the easiest to perform calculations with, but the most difficult to make in the lab. Such concentration units are useful for discussing chemical reactions in which a solute is a product or a reactant. Molar mass can then be used as a conversion factor to convert amounts in moles to amounts in grams.

It is important to remember that “mol” in this expression refers to moles of solute and that “L” refers to liters of solution. For example, if you have 1.5 mol of NaCl dissolved in 0.500 L of solution, its molarity is

$$\frac{1.5 \text{ mol NaCl}}{0.500 \text{ L solution}} = 3.0 \text{ M NaCl}$$

Sometimes (aq) is added when the solvent is water, as in “3.0 M NaCl (aq).” This is read as "a 3.00 ***molar*** sodium chloride solution," meaning that there are 3.00 moles of NaOH dissolved per one liter of solution.

> *Be sure to note that molarity is calculated as the total volume of the* ***entire*** *solution, not just volume of solvent! The solute contributes to total volume.*

If the quantity of the solute is given in mass units, you must convert mass units to mole units before using the definition of molarity to calculate concentration. For example, what is the molar concentration of a solution of 22.4 g of HCl dissolved in 1.56 L?

Step 1: First, convert the mass of solute to moles using the molar mass of HCl (36.5 g/mol):

$$22.4\ g\cancel{HCl} \times \frac{1\ mol\ HCl}{36.5\ g\cancel{HCl}} = 0.614\,mol\ HCl$$

Step 2: Now we can use the definition of molarity to determine a concentration:

$$M\ =\frac{0.614\,mol\ HCl}{1.56L\ solution} = 0.394\,M HCl$$

Before a molarity concentration can be calculated, the amount of the solute must be expressed in moles, and the volume of the solution must be expressed in liters, as demonstrated in the following example.

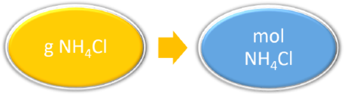
Example 5.3.1

A solution is prepared by dissolving 42.23 g of $\mathrm{NH_4Cl}$ into enough water to make 500.0 mL of solution. Calculate its molarity.

Solution

Solutions to Example 13.6.1

Steps for Problem Solving	
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: Mass $= 42.23\text{ g NH}_4\text{Cl}$ Volume solution $= 500.0\text{ mL} = 0.5000\text{ L}$ Find: Molarity = ? M
List other known quantities.	Molar mass $\mathrm{NH_4Cl} = 53.50\text{ g/mol}$

Steps for Problem Solving	
Plan the problem.	1. The mass of the ammonium chloride is first converted to moles.  $\frac{1\ mol\ NH_4Cl}{53.50 g\ NH_4Cl}$ 2. Then the molarity is calculated by dividing by liters. Note the given volume has been converted to liters. $\mathrm{M} = \frac{\mathrm{mol\ NH_4Cl}}{\mathrm{L\ solution}}$
Cancel units and calculate.	Now substitute the known quantities into the equation and solve. $42.23\ \cancel{\mathrm{g\ NH_4Cl}} \times \frac{1\ \mathrm{mol\ NH_4Cl}}{53.50\ \cancel{\mathrm{g\ NH_4Cl}}} = 0.7893\ \mathrm{mol\ NH_4Cl}$ $\frac{0.7893\ \mathrm{mol\ NH_4Cl}}{0.5000\ \mathrm{L\ solution}} = 1.579\ \mathrm{M}$
Think about your result.	The molarity is $1.579\ \mathrm{M}$, meaning that a liter of the solution would contain $1.579\ \mathrm{mol\ NH_4Cl}$. Four significant figures are appropriate.

? Exercise $5.3.1A$

What is the molarity of a solution made when 66.2 g of $C_6H_{12}O_6$ are dissolved to make 235 mL of solution?

Answer

1.57 M $C_6H_{12}O_6$

? Exercise $5.3.1B$

What is the concentration, in $\mathrm{mol/L}$, where $137\ \mathrm{g}$ of NaCl has been dissolved in enough water to make $500\ \mathrm{mL}$ of solution?

Answer

4.69 M NaCl

Using Molarity in Calculations

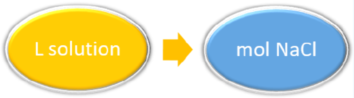
Concentration can be a conversion factor between the amount of solute and the amount of solution or solvent (depending on the definition of the concentration unit). As such, concentrations can be useful in a variety of stoichiometry problems. In many cases, it is best to use the original definition of the concentration unit; it is that definition that provides the conversion factor.

A simple example of using a concentration unit as a conversion factor is one in which we use the definition of the concentration unit and rearrange; we can do the calculation again as a unit conversion, rather than as a definition.

✓ Example $5.3.2$: Determining Moles of Solute, Given the Concentration and Volume of a Solution

For example, suppose we ask how many moles of solute are present in 0.108 L of a 0.887 M NaCl solution. Because 0.887 M means 0.887 mol/L, we can use this second expression for the concentration as a conversion factor:

Solution



$$\frac{.887\ mol\ NaCl}{1\ L\ solution}$$

$$0.108\ L\ \cancel{solution} \times \frac{0.887\ mol\ NaCl}{1 L\ \cancel{solution}} = 0.0958\ mol\ NaCl$$

If we used the definition approach, we get the same answer, but now we are using conversion factor skills.

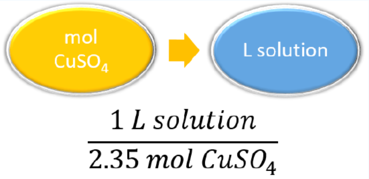
Like any other conversion factor that relates two different types of units, the reciprocal of the concentration can be also used as a conversion factor.

✓ Example 5.3.3: Determining Volume of a Solution, Given the Concentration and Moles of Solute

Using concentration as a conversion factor, how many liters of 2.35 M $CuSO_4$ are needed to obtain 4.88 mol of $CuSO_4$?

Solution

This is a one-step conversion, but the concentration must be written as the reciprocal for the units to work out:



$$4.88\ mol\ \cancel{CuSO_4} \times \frac{1\ L\ solution}{2.35\ mol\ \cancel{CuSO_4}} = 2.08\ L\ of\ solution$$

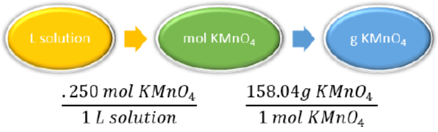
In a laboratory situation, a chemist must frequently prepare a given volume of solutions of a known molarity. The task is to calculate the mass of the solute that is necessary. The molarity equation can be rearranged to solve for moles, which can then be converted to grams. The following example illustrates this.

✓ Example 5.3.4

A chemist needs to prepare $3.00\ \text{L}$ of a $0.250\ \text{M}$ solution of potassium permanganate (KMnO_4). What mass of KMnO_4 does she need to make the solution?

Solution

Solutions to Example 13.6.4

Steps for Problem Solving	
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: $\text{Molarity} = 0.250\ \text{M}$ $\text{Volume} = 3.00\ \text{L}$ Find: Mass $\text{KMnO}_4 = ?\ \text{g}$
List other known quantities.	Molar mass $\text{KMnO}_4 = 158.04\ \text{g/mol}$ 0.250 mol $KMnO_4$ to 1 L of $KMnO_4$ solution
Plan the problem.	
Cancel units and calculate.	Now substitute the known quantities into the equation and solve. $\text{mol KMnO}_4 = 0.250\ \text{M KMnO}_4 \times 3.00\ \text{L} = 0.750\ \text{mol}$ $3.00\ \cancel{L\ solution} \times \frac{0.250\ \text{mol}\ \cancel{\text{KMnO}_4}}{1\ \cancel{L\ solution}} \times \frac{158.04\ \text{g KMnO}_4}{1\ \text{mol}\ \cancel{\text{KMnO}_4}} = 119\ \text{g KM}$
Think about your result.	When 119 g of potassium permanganate is dissolved into water to make 3.00 L of solution, the molarity is 0.250 M.

? Exercise 5.3.4A

Using concentration as a conversion factor, how many liters of 0.0444 M CH_2O are needed to obtain 0.0773 mol of CH_2O?

Answer

1.74 L

Exercise $5.3.4B$

Answer the problems below using concentration as a conversion factor.

a. What mass of solute is present in 1.08 L of 0.0578 M H_2SO_4?
b. What volume of 1.50 M HCl solution contains 10.0 g of hydrogen chloride?

Answer a

6.12 g

Answer b

183 mL or 0.183L

How to Indicate Concentration

- Square brackets are often used to represent concentration, e.g., [NaOH] = 0.50 M.
- Use the capital letter M for molarity, not a lower case m (this is a different concentration unit called *molality*).

Watch as the Flinn Scientific Tech Staff demonstrates "How To Prepare Solutions."

It is important to note that there are many different ways you can set up and solve your chemistry equations. Some students prefer to answer multi-step calculations in one long step, while others prefer to work out each step individually. Neither method is necessarily better or worse than the other method—whichever makes the most sense to ***you*** is the one that you should use. In this text, we will typically use unit analysis (also called dimension analysis or factor analysis).

Contributors and Attributions

- Peggy Lawson (Oxbow Prairie Heights School). Funded by Saskatchewan Educational Technology Consortium.

5.3: Specifying Solution Concentration- Molarity is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **13.6: Specifying Solution Concentration- Molarity** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

5.4: SOLUTION DILUTION

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Explain how concentrations can be changed in the lab.
- Understand how stock solutions are used in the laboratory.

We are often concerned with how much solute is dissolved in a given amount of solution. We will begin our discussion of solution concentration with two related and relative terms: **dilute** and **concentrated**.

- A **dilute** solution is one in which there is a relatively small amount of solute dissolved in the solution.
- A **concentrated** solution contains a relatively large amount of solute.

These two terms do not provide any quantitative information (actual numbers), but they are often useful in comparing solutions in a more general sense. These terms also do not tell us whether or not the solution is saturated or unsaturated, or whether the solution is "strong" or "weak". These last two terms will have special meanings when we discuss acids and bases, so be careful not to confuse them.

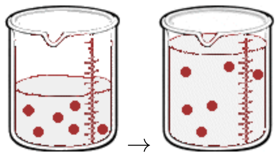
STOCK SOLUTIONS

It is often necessary to have a solution with a concentration that is very precisely known. Solutions containing a precise mass of solute in a precise volume of solution are called **stock (or standard) solutions.** To prepare a standard solution, a piece of lab equipment called a volumetric flask should be used. These flasks range in size from 10 mL to 2000 mL and are carefully calibrated to a single volume. On the narrow stem is a **calibration mark**. The precise mass of solute is dissolved in a bit of the solvent, and this is added to the flask. Then, enough solvent is added to the flask until the level reaches the calibration mark.

Often, it is convenient to prepare a series of solutions of known concentrations by first preparing a single **stock solution**, as described in the previous section. **Aliquots** (carefully measured volumes) of the stock solution can then be diluted to any desired volume. In other cases, it may be inconvenient to weigh a small mass of sample accurately enough to prepare a small volume of a dilute solution. Each of these situations requires that a solution be diluted to obtain the desired concentration.

DILUTIONS OF STOCK (OR STANDARD) SOLUTIONS

Imagine we have a salt water solution with a certain concentration. That means we have a certain amount of salt (a certain mass or a certain number of moles) dissolved in a certain volume of solution. Next, we will dilute this solution. This is done by adding more water, not more salt:



Before Dilution and After Dilution

The molarity of solution 1 is

$$M_1 = \frac{\text{moles}_1}{\text{liter}_1}$$

and the molarity of solution 2 is

$$M_2 = \frac{\text{moles}_2}{\text{liter}_2}$$

rearrange the equations to find moles:

$$\text{moles}_1 = M_1 \text{liter}_1$$

and

$$\text{moles}_2 = M_2 \text{liter}_2$$

What stayed the same and what changed between the two solutions? By adding more water, we changed the volume of the solution. Doing so also changed its concentration. **However, the number of moles of solute did not change.** So,

$$moles_1 = moles_2$$

Therefore

$$\boxed{M_1V_1 = M_2V_2} \tag{5.4.1}$$

where

- M_1 and M_2 are the concentrations of the original and diluted solutions
- V_1 and V_2 are the volumes of the two solutions

Preparing dilutions is a common activity in the chemistry lab and elsewhere. Once you understand the above relationship, the calculations are simple.

Suppose that you have $100.\text{ mL}$ of a 2.0 M solution of HCl. You dilute the solution by adding enough water to make the solution volume $500.\text{ mL}$. The new molarity can easily be calculated by using the above equation and solving for M_2.

$$M_2 = \frac{M_1 \times V_1}{V_2} = \frac{2.0\text{ M} \times 100.\text{ mL}}{500.\text{ mL}} = 0.40\text{ M HCl}$$

The solution has been diluted by one-fifth since the new volume is five times as great as the original volume. Consequently, the molarity is one-fifth of its original value.

Another common dilution problem involves calculating what amount of a highly concentrated solution is required to make a desired quantity of solution of lesser concentration. The highly concentrated solution is typically referred to as the stock solution.

✓ EXAMPLE 5.4.1: DILUTING NITRIC ACID

Nitric acid $\left(\text{HNO}_3\right)$ is a powerful and corrosive acid. When ordered from a chemical supply company, its molarity is 16 M. How much of the stock solution of nitric acid needs to be used to make 8.00 L of a 0.50 M solution?

Solution

Solutions to Example13.7.1

Steps for Problem Solving	
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: M_1, Stock $\text{HNO}_3 = 16\text{ M}$ $V_2 = 8.00\text{ L}$ $M_2 = 0.50\text{ M}$ Find: Volume stock HNO_3 $(V_1) = ?\text{ L}$
List other known quantities.	none
Plan the problem.	First, rearrange the equation algebraically to solve for V_1. $$V_1 = \frac{M_2 \times V_2}{M_1}$$
Calculate and cancel units.	Now substitute the known quantities into the equation and solve. $$V_1 = \frac{0.50\text{ M} \times 8.00\text{ L}}{16\text{ M}} = 0.25\text{ L} \tag{5.4.2}$$
Think about your result.	0.25 L (250 mL) of the stock HNO_3 needs to be diluted with water to a final volume of 8.00 L. The dilution is by a factor of 32 to go from 16 M to 0.5 M.

? EXERCISE 5.4.1

A 0.885 M solution of KBr with an initial volume of 76.5 mL has more water added until its concentration is 0.500 M. What is the new volume of the solution?

Answer

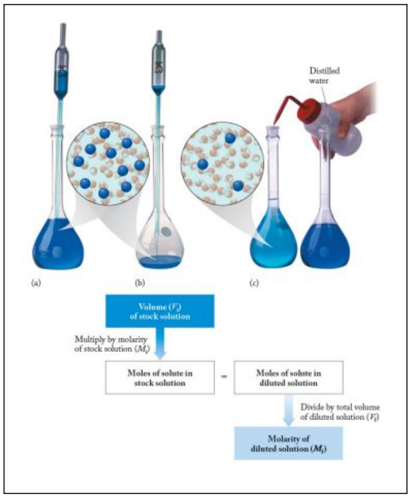
135.4 mL

> *Note that the calculated volume will have the same dimensions as the input volume, and dimensional analysis tells us that in this case we don't need to convert to liters, since L cancels when we divide M (mol/L) by M (mol/L).*

DILUTING AND MIXING SOLUTIONS

Diluting and Mixing Solutions

How to Dilute a Solution by CarolinaBiological

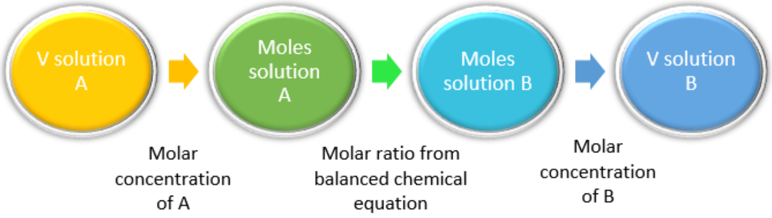


5.5: SOLUTION STOICHIOMETRY

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Determine amounts of reactants or products in aqueous solutions.

As we learned previously, double replacement reactions involve the reaction between ionic compounds in solution and, in the course of the reaction, the ions in the two reacting compounds are “switched” (they *replace* each other). Because these reactions occur in aqueous solution, we can use the concept of molarity to directly calculate the number of moles of reactants or products that will be formed, and therefore their amounts (i.e. volume of solutions or mass of precipitates).



As an example, lead (II) nitrate and sodium chloride react to form sodium nitrate and the *insoluble* compound, lead (II) chloride.

$$\mathrm{Pb(NO_3)_2(aq) + 2\,NaCl(aq) \rightarrow PbCl_2(s) + 2\,NaNO_3(aq)} \tag{5.5.1}$$

In the reaction shown above, if we mixed 0.123 L of a 1.00 M solution of NaCl with 1.50 M solution of $\mathrm{Pb(NO_3)_2}$, we could calculate the volume of $\mathrm{Pb(NO_3)_2}$ solution needed to completely precipitate the $\mathrm{Pb^{2+}}$ ions.

The molar concentration can also be expressed as the following:

$$1.00\ M\ \mathrm{NaCl} = \frac{1.00\ mol\ \mathrm{NaCl}}{1\ L\ \mathrm{NaCl\ solution}}$$

and

$$1.50\ M\ \mathrm{Pb(NO_3)_2} = \frac{1.50\ mol\ \mathrm{Pb(NO_3)_2}}{1\ L\ \mathrm{Pb(NO_3)_2 solution}}$$

First, we must examine the reaction stoichiometry in the balanced reaction (Equation 5.5.1). In this reaction, one mole of $\mathrm{Pb(NO_3)_2}$ reacts with two moles of NaCl to give one mole of $\mathrm{PbCl_2}$ precipitate. Thus, the concept map utilizing the stoichiometric ratios is:

so the volume of lead (II) nitrate that reacted is calculated as:

$$0.123\ L\ \mathrm{NaCl solution} \times \frac{1.00\ mol\ \mathrm{NaCl}}{1\ L\ \mathrm{NaCl\ solution}} \times \frac{1\ mol\ \mathrm{Pb(NO_3)_2}}{2\ mol\ \mathrm{NaCl}} \times \frac{1\ L\ \mathrm{Pb(NO_3)_2\ solution}}{1.5\ mol\ \mathrm{Pb(NO_3)_2}} = 0.041\ \mathrm{Pb(NO_3)_2}$$

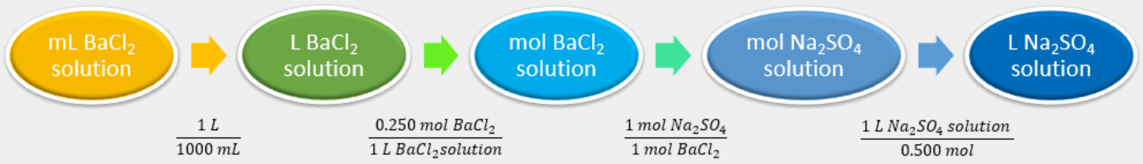
$$L\ \mathrm{solution}$$

This volume makes intuitive sense for two reasons: (1) the number of moles of $\mathrm{Pb(NO_3)_2}$ required is half of the number of moles of NaCl, based off of the stoichiometry in the balanced reaction (Equation 5.5.1); (2) the concentration of $\mathrm{Pb(NO_3)_2}$ solution is 50% greater than the NaCl solution, so less volume is needed.

✓ EXAMPLE 5.5.1

What volume (in L) of 0.500 M sodium sulfate will react with 275 mL of 0.250 M barium chloride to completely precipitate all $\mathrm{Ba^{2+}}$ in the solution?

Solution

Steps for Problem Solving	Example 5.5.1
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 275 mL $BaCl_2$ 0.250 M $BaCl_2$ or $\frac{0.250\ mol BaCl_2}{1\ L\ BaCl_2\ solution}$ 0.500 M Na_2SO_4 or $\frac{0.500\ mol Na_2SO_4}{1\ L\ Na_2SO_4\ solution}$ Find: Volume Na_2SO_4 solution.
Set up and balance the chemical equation.	$Na_2SO_4(aq) + BaCl_2(aq) \longrightarrow BaSO_4(s) + \underline{2}NaCl(aq)$ An insoluble product is formed after the reaction.
List other known quantities.	1 mol of Na_2SO_4 to 1 mol $BaCl_2$ 1000 mL = 1 L
Prepare a concept map and use the proper conversion factor.	
Cancel units and calculate.	$275\ \cancel{mL\ BaCl_2\ solution} \times \frac{1\ \cancel{L}}{1000\ \cancel{mL}} \times \frac{0.250\ \cancel{mol\ BaCl_2}}{1\ \cancel{L\ BaCl_2\ solution}} \times \frac{1\ \cancel{mol\ Na_2SO_4}}{1\ \cancel{mol\ BaCl_2}} \times \frac{1\ L\ Na_2SO_4\ solution}{0.500\ \cancel{mol Na_2SO_4}}$ = 0.1375 L sodium sulfate
Think about your result.	The lesser amount (almost half) of sodium sulfate is to be expected as it is more concentrated than barium chloride. Also, the units are correct.

? EXERCISE 5.5.1

What volume of 0.250 M lithium hydroxide will completely react with 0.500 L of 0.250 M of sulfuric acid solution?

Answer

0.250 L LiOH solution

5.6: Electrolytes

Learning Objectives

- Determine whether a substance is a strong, weak, or nonelectrolyte.
- Relate electrolyte strength to the number of ions in solution.

When some substances are dissolved in water, they undergo either a physical or a chemical change that yields ions in solution. These substances are called **electrolytes**. Substances that do not yield ions when dissolved are called **nonelectrolytes**. If the physical or chemical process that generates the ions is essentially 100% efficient (all of the dissolved compound yields ions), then the substance is known as a **strong electrolyte**. If only a relatively small fraction of the dissolved substance undergoes the ion-producing process, it is called a **weak electrolyte**.

Substances may be identified as strong, weak, or nonelectrolytes by measuring the electrical conductance of an aqueous solution containing the substance. To conduct electricity, a substance must contain freely mobile, charged species. Most familiar is the conduction of electricity through metallic wires, in which case the mobile, charged entities are electrons. Solutions may also conduct electricity if they contain dissolved ions, with conductivity increasing as ion concentration increases. Applying a voltage to electrodes immersed in a solution permits assessment of the relative concentration of dissolved ions, either quantitatively, by measuring the electrical current flow, or qualitatively, by observing the brightness of a light bulb included in the circuit (Figure $5.6.1$).

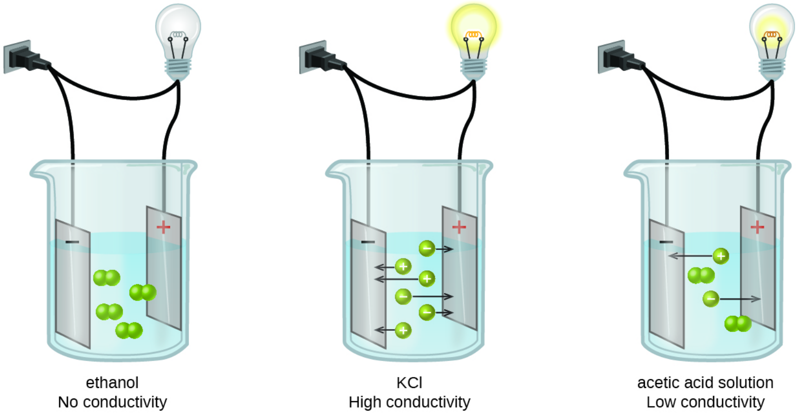


***Figure $5.6.1$**: Solutions of nonelectrolytes such as ethanol do not contain dissolved ions and cannot conduct electricity. Solutions of electrolytes contain ions that permit the passage of electricity. The conductivity of an electrolyte solution is related to the strength of the electrolyte.*

Ionic Electrolytes

Water and other polar molecules are attracted to ions, as shown in Figure $5.6.2$. The electrostatic attraction between an ion and a molecule with a dipole is called an ion-dipole attraction. These attractions play an important role in the dissolution of ionic compounds in water.

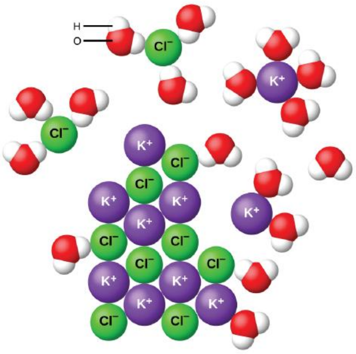


Figure 5.6.2: *As potassium chloride (KCl) dissolves in water, the ions are hydrated. The polar water molecules are attracted by the charges on the K^+ and Cl^- ions. Water molecules in front of and behind the ions are not shown.*

When ionic compounds dissolve in water, the ions in the solid separate and disperse uniformly throughout the solution because water molecules surround and solvate the ions, reducing the strong electrostatic forces between them. This process represents a physical change known as dissociation. Under most conditions, ionic compounds will dissociate nearly completely when dissolved, and so they are classified as strong electrolytes.

When solid KCl is added to water, the positive (hydrogen) end of the polar water molecules is attracted to the negative chloride ions, and the attract the negative (oxygen) ends of the water molecules is attracted to the positive potassium ions. The water molecules penetrate between individual K^+ and Cl^- ions and surround them, reducing the strong interionic forces that bind the ions together and letting them move off into solution as solvated ions.

Some ionic solids are insoluble, for example, calcium carbonate (limestone), calcium phosphate (the inorganic component of bone), and iron oxide (rust). These substances are not electrolytes since they do not dissolve in solution to form ions.

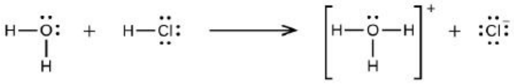
Covalent Electrolytes

Pure water is an extremely poor conductor of electricity because it is only very slightly ionized—only about two out of every 1 billion molecules ionize at 25 °C. Water ionizes when one molecule of water gives up a proton to another molecule of water, yielding hydronium and hydroxide ions.

$$\mathrm{H_2O}_{(l)} + \mathrm{H_2O}_{(l)} \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}_{(aq)} + \mathrm{OH^-}_{(aq)} \tag{5.6.1}$$

Some solutions prepared from covalent compounds conduct electricity because the solute molecules react chemically with the solvent to produce ions. For example, pure hydrogen chloride is a gas consisting of covalent HCl molecules. This gas contains no ions. However, when we dissolve hydrogen chloride in water, we find that the solution is a very good conductor. The water molecules play an essential part in forming ions: Solutions of hydrogen chloride in many other solvents, such as benzene, do not conduct electricity and do not contain ions.

Hydrogen chloride is an *acid*, and so its molecules react with water, transferring H^+ ions to form hydronium ions (H_3O^+) and chloride ions (Cl^-):



This reaction is essentially 100% complete for HCl (i.e., it is a *strong acid* and, consequently, a strong electrolyte). Likewise, weak acids and bases that only react partially generate relatively low concentrations of ions when dissolved in water and are classified as weak electrolytes. The reader may wish to review the discussion of strong and weak acids provided in the earlier chapter of this text on reaction classes and stoichiometry.

Summary

- Electrolytes conduct electricity because they form ions in solution.
- Soluble ionic substances are electrolytes.
- Strong acids are strong electrolytes.
- Weak acids and weak bases are weak electrolytes.
- Covalent substances that are neither acids nor bases are nonelectrolytes.

Contributors

- edited by Spencer Berger
- Paul Flowers (University of North Carolina - Pembroke), Klaus Theopold (University of Delaware) and Richard Langley (Stephen F. Austin State University) with contributing authors. Textbook content produced by OpenStax College is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution License 4.0 license. Download for free at http://cnx.org/contents/85abf193-2bd...a7ac8df6@9.110).

5.7: Molecular Definitions of Acids and Bases

Learning Objectives

- Identify an Arrhenius acid and an Arrhenius base.
- Identify a Brønsted-Lowry acid and a Brønsted-Lowry base.
- Identify conjugate acid-base pairs in an acid-base reaction.

There are three major classifications of substances known as acids or bases. The theory developed by Svante Arrhenius in 1883, the Arrhenius definition, states that an acid produces H^+ in solution and a base produces OH^-. Later, two more sophisticated and general theories were proposed. These theories are the Brønsted-Lowry and Lewis definitions of acids and bases. This section will cover the Arrhenius and Brønsted-Lowry theories; the Lewis theory is discussed elsewhere.

The Arrhenius Theory of Acids and Bases

In 1884, the Swedish chemist Svante Arrhenius proposed two specific classifications of compounds, termed acids and bases. When dissolved in an aqueous solution, certain ions were released into the solution. An **Arrhenius acid** is a compound that **increases the concentration of** $\mathrm{H^+}$ **ions** that are present when added to water. These H^+ ions form the hydronium ion (H_3O^+) when they combine with water molecules. This process is represented in a chemical equation by adding H_2O to the reactants side.

$$\mathrm{HCl(aq) \rightarrow H^+(aq) + Cl^-(aq)}$$

In this reaction, hydrochloric acid (HCl) dissociates completely into hydrogen (H^+) and chlorine (Cl^-) ions when dissolved in water, thereby releasing H^+ ions into solution. Formation of the hydronium ion equation:

$$\mathrm{HCl(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightarrow H_3O^+(aq) + Cl^-(aq)}$$

An **Arrhenius base** is a compound that **increases the concentration of** $\mathrm{OH^-}$ **ions** that are present when added to water. The dissociation is represented by the following equation:

$$\mathrm{NaOH\ (aq) \rightarrow Na^+\ (aq) + OH^-\ (aq)}$$

In this reaction, sodium hydroxide (NaOH) disassociates into sodium ($\mathrm{Na^+}$) and hydroxide ($\mathrm{OH^-}$) ions when dissolved in water, thereby releasing OH^- ions into solution.

> *Arrhenius acids are substances which produce hydrogen ions in solution and Arrhenius bases are substances which produce hydroxide ions in solution.*

Limitations to the Arrhenius Theory

The Arrhenius theory has many more limitations than the other two theories. The theory does not explain the weak base ammonia (NH_3), which in the presence of water, releases hydroxide ions into solution, but does not contain OH- itself. The Arrhenius definition of acid and base is also limited to aqueous (i.e., water) solutions.

The Brønsted-Lowry Theory of Acids and Bases

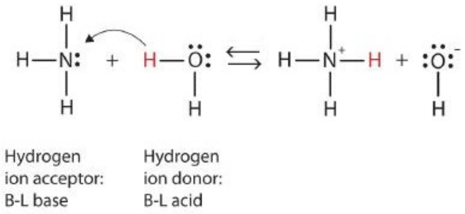
In 1923, Danish chemist Johannes Brønsted and English chemist Thomas Lowry independently proposed new definitions for acids and bases, ones that focus on proton transfer. A **Brønsted-Lowry acid** is any species that can donate a proton ($\mathrm{H^+}$) to another molecule. A **Brønsted-Lowry base** is any species that can accept a proton from another molecule. In short, **a Brønsted-Lowry acid** is a **proton donor (PD)**, while **a Brønsted-Lowry base** is a **proton acceptor (PA)**.

> *A Brønsted-Lowry acid is a proton donor, while a Brønsted-Lowry base is a proton acceptor.*

Let us use the reaction of ammonia in water to demonstrate the Brønsted-Lowry definitions of an acid and a base. Ammonia and water molecules are reactants, while the ammonium ion and the hydroxide ion are products:

$$\mathrm{NH_3(aq) + H_2O(\ell) \rightleftharpoons NH_4^+(aq) + OH^-(aq)} \tag{5.7.1}$$

What has happened in this reaction is that the original water molecule has donated a hydrogen ion to the original ammonia molecule, which in turn has accepted the hydrogen ion. We can illustrate this as follows:

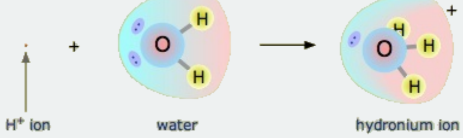


Because the water molecule donates a hydrogen ion to the ammonia, it is the Brønsted-Lowry acid, while the ammonia molecule—which accepts the hydrogen ion—is the Brønsted-Lowry base. Thus, ammonia acts as a base in both the Arrhenius sense and the Brønsted-Lowry sense.

Is an Arrhenius acid like hydrochloric acid still an acid in the Brønsted-Lowry sense? Yes, but it requires us to understand what really happens when HCl is dissolved in water. Recall that the hydrogen *atom* is a single proton surrounded by a single electron. To make the hydrogen *ion*, we remove the electron, leaving a bare proton. Do we *really* have bare protons floating around in aqueous solution? No, we do not. What really happens is that the H^+ ion attaches itself to H_2O to make H_3O^+, which is called the *hydronium ion*. For most purposes, H^+ and H_3O^+ represent the same species, but writing H_3O^+ instead of H^+ shows that we understand that there are no bare protons floating around in solution. Rather, these protons are actually attached to solvent molecules.

The Hydronium Ion

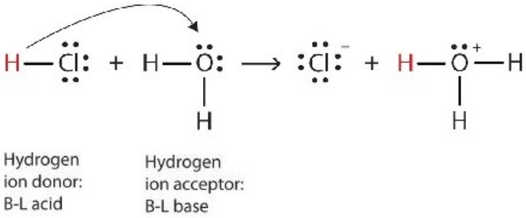
A proton in aqueous solution may be surrounded by more than one water molecule, leading to formulas like $H_5O_2^+$ or $H_9O_4^+$ rather than H_3O^+. It is simpler, however, to use H_3O^+ to represent the hydronium ion.



With this in mind, how do we define HCl as an acid in the Brønsted-Lowry sense? Consider what happens when HCl is dissolved in H_2O:

$$HCl(g) + H_2O(\ell) \rightarrow H_3O^+(aq) + Cl^-(aq) \tag{5.7.2}$$

We can depict this process using Lewis electron dot diagrams:



Now we see that a hydrogen ion is transferred from the HCl molecule to the H_2O molecule to make chloride ions and hydronium ions. As the hydrogen ion donor, HCl acts as a Brønsted-Lowry acid; as a hydrogen ion acceptor, H_2O is a Brønsted-Lowry base. So HCl is an acid not just in the Arrhenius sense, but also in the Brønsted-Lowry sense. Moreover, by the Brønsted-Lowry definitions, H_2O is a base in the formation of aqueous HCl. So the Brønsted-Lowry definitions of an acid and a base classify the dissolving of HCl in water as a reaction between an acid and a base—although the Arrhenius definition would not have labeled H_2O a base in this circumstance.

- A Brønsted-Lowry acid is a proton (hydrogen ion) donor.
- A Brønsted-Lowry base is a proton (hydrogen ion) acceptor.

- All Arrhenius acids and bases are Brønsted-Lowry acids and bases as well. However, not all Brønsted-Lowry acids and bases are Arrhenius acids and bases.

✓ Example 5.7.1

Aniline ($C_6H_5NH_2$) is slightly soluble in water. It has a nitrogen atom that can accept a hydrogen ion from a water molecule, just like the nitrogen atom in ammonia does. Write the chemical equation for this reaction and identify the Brønsted-Lowry acid and base.

Solution

$C_6H_5NH_2$ and H_2O are the reactants. When $C_6H_5NH_2$ accepts a proton from H_2O, it gains an extra H and a positive charge and leaves an OH^- ion behind. The reaction is as follows:

$$\mathrm{C_6H_5NH_2(aq) + H_2O(\ell) \rightleftharpoons C_6H_5NH_3^+(aq) + OH^-(aq)}$$

Because $C_6H_5NH_2$ accepts a proton, it is the Brønsted-Lowry base. The H_2O molecule, because it donates a proton, is the Brønsted-Lowry acid.

? Exercise 5.7.1

Identify the Brønsted-Lowry acid and the Brønsted-Lowry base in this chemical equation.

$$\mathrm{H_2PO_4^- + H_2O \rightleftharpoons HPO_4^{2-} + H_3O^+}$$

Answer

Brønsted-Lowry acid: $H_2PO_4^-$; Brønsted-Lowry base: H_2O

? Exercise 5.7.2

Which of the following compounds is a Bronsted-Lowry base?

a. HCl
b. HPO_4^{2-}
c. H_3PO_4
d. NH_4^+
e. $CH_3NH_3^+$

Answer

A Brønsted-Lowry Base is a proton acceptor, which means it will take in an H^+. This eliminates HCl, $\mathrm{H_3PO_4}$, $\mathrm{NH_4^+}$ and $\mathrm{CH_3NH_3^+}$ because they are Bronsted-Lowry acids. They all give away protons. In the case of $\mathrm{HPO_4^{2-}}$, consider the following equation:

$$\mathrm{HPO_4^{2-}(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightarrow PO_4^{3-}(aq) + H_3O^+(aq)}$$

Here, it is clear that HPO_4^{2-} is the acid since it donates a proton to water to make H_3O^+ and PO_4^{3-}. Now consider the following equation:

$$\mathrm{HPO_4^{2-}(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightarrow H_2PO_4^- + OH^-(aq)}$$

In this case, HPO_4^{2-} is the base since it accepts a proton from water to form $H_2PO_4^-$ and OH^-. Thus, HPO_4^{2-} is an acid and base together, making it amphoteric.

Since HPO_4^{2-} is the only compound from the options that can act as a base, the answer is **(b) HPO_4^{2-}.**

- **14.4: Molecular Definitions of Acids and Bases** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

5.8: Acids- Properties and Examples

Learning Objectives

- Identify properties of acids.

Many people enjoy drinking coffee. A cup first thing in the morning helps start the day. But keeping the coffee maker clean can be a problem. Lime deposits build up after a while and slow down the brewing process. The best cure for this is to put vinegar (dilute acetic acid) in the pot and run it through the brewing cycle. The vinegar dissolves the deposits and cleans the maker, which will speed up the brewing process back to its original rate. Just be sure to run water through the brewing process after the vinegar, or you will get some really horrible coffee.

Acids

Acids are very common in some of the foods that we eat. Citrus fruits such as oranges and lemons contain citric acid and ascorbic acid, which is better known as vitamin C. Carbonated sodas contain phosphoric acid. Vinegar contains acetic acid. Your own stomach utilizes hydrochloric acid to digest food. Acids are a distinct class of compounds because of the properties of their aqueous solutions as outlined below:

1. Aqueous solutions of acids are electrolytes, meaning that they conduct electrical current. Some acids are strong electrolytes because they ionize completely in water, yielding a great many ions. Other acids are weak electrolytes that exist primarily in a non-ionized form when dissolved in water.
2. Acids have a sour taste. Lemons, vinegar, and sour candies all contain acids.
3. Acids change the color of certain acid-base indicates. Two common indicators are litmus and phenolphthalein. Blue litmus turns red in the presence of an acid, while phenolphthalein turns colorless.
4. Acids react with active metals to yield hydrogen gas. Recall that an activity series is a list of metals in descending order of reactivity. Metals that are above hydrogen in the activity series will replace the hydrogen from an acid in a single-replacement reaction, as shown below:

$$\text{Zn}\,(s) + \text{H}_2\text{SO}_4\,(aq) \rightarrow \text{ZnSO}_4\,(aq) + \text{H}_2\,(g) \tag{5.8.1}$$

5. Acids react with bases to produce a salt compound and water. When equal moles of an acid and a base are combined, the acid is neutralized by the base. The products of this reaction are an ionic compound, which is labeled as a salt, and water.

It should not be hard for you to name several common acids (but you might find that listing bases is a little more difficult). Below is a partial list of some common acids, along with some chemical formulas:

Table 5.8.1: Common Acids and Their Uses

Chemist Name	Common Name	Uses
hydrochloric acid, HCl	muriatic acid (used in pools) and stomach acid is HCl	Used in cleaning (refining) metals, in maintenance of swimming pools, and for household cleaning.
sulfuric acid, H_2SO_4		Used in car batteries, and in the manufacture of fertilizers.
nitric acid, HNO_3		Used in the manufacture of fertilizers, explosives and in extraction of gold.
acetic acid, $HC_2H_3O_2$	vinegar	Main ingredient in vinegar.
carbonic acid, H_2CO_3	responsible for the "fizz" in carbonated drinks	As an ingredient in carbonated drinks.
citric acid, $C_6H_8O_7$		Used in food and dietary supplements. Also added as an acidulant in creams, gels, liquids, and lotions.
acetylsalicylic acid, $C_6H_4(OCOCH_3)CO_2H$	aspirin	The active ingredient in aspirin.

What exactly makes an acid an acid, and what makes a base act as a base? Take a look at the formulas given in the above table and take a guess.

Hydrochloric Acid

Hydrochloric acid is a corrosive, strong mineral acid with many industrial uses. A colorless, highly pungent solution of hydrogen chloride (HCl) in water. Hydrochloric acid is usually prepared by treating HCl with water.

$$\mathrm{HCl(g) + H_2O(l) \longrightarrow H_3O^+(aq) + Cl^-(aq)}$$

Hydrochloric acid can therefore be used to prepare chloride salts. Hydrochloric acid is a strong acid, since it is completely dissociated in water. Hydrochloric acid is the preferred acid in titration for determining the amount of bases.

Sulfuric Acid

Sulfuric acid is a highly corrosive strong mineral acid with the molecular formula $\mathrm{H_2SO_4}$. Sulfuric acid is a diprotic acid and has a wide range of applications including use in domestic acidic drain cleaners,[as an electrolyte in lead-acid batteries, and in various cleaning agents. It is also a central substance in the chemical industry.

Figure 5.8.1: Drops of concentrated sulfuric acid rapidly decompose a piece of cotton towel by dehydration. (CC BY-SA 3.0; Toxic Walker).

Because the hydration of sulfuric acid is thermodynamically favorable (and is highly exothermic) and the affinity of it for water is sufficiently strong, sulfuric acid is an excellent dehydrating agent. Concentrated sulfuric acid has a very powerful dehydrating property, removing water ($\mathrm{H_2O}$) from other compounds including sugar and other carbohydrates and producing carbon, heat, steam. Sulfuric acid behaves as a typical acid in its reaction with most metals by generating hydrogen gas (Equation 5.8.2).

$$\mathrm{M + H_2SO_4 \rightarrow M(SO_4) + H_2} \tag{5.8.2}$$

Nitric Acid

Nitric acid ($\mathrm{HNO_3}$) is a highly corrosive mineral acid and is also commonly used as a strong oxidizing agent. Nitric acid is normally considered to be a strong acid at ambient temperatures. Nitric acid can be made by reacting nitrogen dioxide ($\mathrm{NO_2(g)}$) with water.

$$\mathrm{3\,NO_2(g) + H_2O(l) \rightarrow 2\,HNO_3(ag) + NO(g)}$$

Nitric acid reacts with most metals, but the details depend on the concentration of the acid and the nature of the metal. Dilute nitric acid behaves as a typical acid in its reaction with most metals (e.g., nitric acid with magnesium, manganese or zinc will liberate $\mathrm{H_2}$ gas):

$$\mathrm{Mg + 2\,HNO_3 \rightarrow Mg(NO_3)_2 + H_2}$$

$$\mathrm{Mn + 2\,HNO_3 \rightarrow Mn(NO_3)_2 + H_2}$$

$$\mathrm{Zn + 2\,HNO_3 \rightarrow Zn(NO_3)_2 + H_2}$$

Nitric acid is a corrosive acid and a powerful oxidizing agent. The major hazard it poses is chemical burn, as it carries out acid hydrolysis with proteins (amide) and fats (ester) which consequently decomposes living tissue (Figure 5.8.2). Concentrated nitric acid stains human skin yellow due to its reaction with the keratin

Figure 5.8.2: Second degree burn caused by nitric acid. (CC BY-SA 3.0; Alcamán).

Carbonic Acid

Carbonic acid is a chemical compound with the chemical formula H_2CO_3 and is also a name sometimes given to solutions of carbon dioxide in water (carbonated water), because such solutions contain small amounts of $H_2CO_3(aq)$. Carbonic acid, which is a weak acid, forms two kinds of salts: the carbonates and the bicarbonates. In geology, carbonic acid causes limestone to dissolve, producing calcium bicarbonate—which leads to many limestone features such as stalactites and stalagmites. Carbonic acid is a polyprotic acid, specifically it is diprotic, meaning that it has two protons which may dissociate from the parent molecule.

When carbon dioxide dissolves in water, it exists in chemical equilibrium (discussed in Chapter 15), producing carbonic acid:

$$CO_2 + H_2O \rightleftharpoons H_2CO_3$$

The reaction can be pushed to favor the reactants to generate $CO_2(g)$ from solution, which is key to the bubbles observed in carbonated beverages (Figure 5.8.3).

Figure 5.8.3: A glass of sparkling water. (CC BY-SA 3.0; Nevit Dilmen).

Formic Acid

Formic acid (HCO_2H) is the simplest carboxylic acid and is an important intermediate in chemical synthesis and occurs naturally, most notably in some ants. The word "formic" comes from the Latin word for ant, formica, referring to its early isolation by the distillation of ant bodies. Formic acid occurs widely in nature as its conjugate base formate.

Citric Acid

Citric acid ($C_6H_8O_7$) is a weak organic tricarboxylic acid that occurs naturally in citrus fruits. The citrate ion is an intermediate in the TCA cycle (Krebs cycle), a central metabolic pathway for animals, plants and bacteria. Because it is one of the stronger edible acids, the dominant use of citric acid is used as a flavoring and preservative in food and beverages, especially soft drinks.

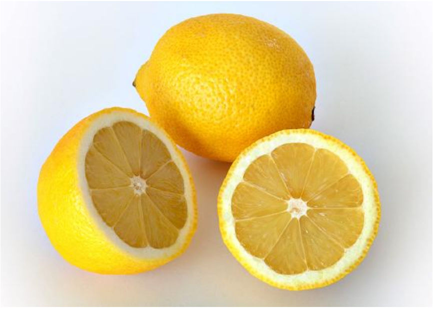


Figure 5.8.4: Lemons, oranges, limes, and other citrus fruits possess high concentrations of citric acid (CC BY-SA 2.5; André Karwath).

Acetylsalicylic Acid

Acetylsalicylic acid (also known as aspirin) is a medication used to treat pain, fever, and inflammation. Aspirin, in the form of leaves from the willow tree, has been used for its health effects for at least 2,400 years.

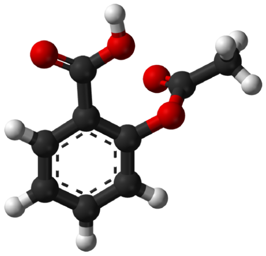


Figure 5.8.5: Ball-and-stick model of the aspirin molecule. (Public Domain; Ben Mills).

Aspirin is a white, crystalline, weakly acidic substance.

Summary

A brief summary of key aspects of several acids commonly encountered by students was given. Acids are a distinct class of compounds because of the properties of their aqueous solutions.

Contributions & Attributions

-
- Peggy Lawson (Oxbow Prairie Heights School). Funded by Saskatchewan Educational Technology Consortium.

5.9: Bases- Properties and Examples

Learning Objectives

- Examine properties of bases.

Perhaps you have eaten too much pizza and felt very uncomfortable hours later. This feeling is due to excess stomach acid being produced. The discomfort can be dealt with by taking an antacid. The base in the antacid will react with the HCl in the stomach and neutralize it, taking care of that unpleasant feeling.

Bases

Bases have properties that mostly contrast with those of acids.

1. Aqueous solutions of bases are also electrolytes. Bases can be either strong or weak, just as acids can.
2. Bases often have a bitter taste and are found in foods less frequently than acids. Many bases, like soaps, are slippery to the touch.
3. Bases also change the color of indicators. Litmus turns blue in the presence of a base, while phenolphthalein turns pink.
4. Bases do not react with metals in the way that acids do.
5. Bases react with acids to produce a salt and water.

Figure $5.9.1$: Phenolphthalein indicator in presence of base.

Warning!

Tasting chemicals and touching them are NOT good lab practices and should be avoided—in other words—don't do this at home.

Bases are less common as foods, but they are nonetheless present in many household products. Many cleaners contain ammonia, a base. Sodium hydroxide is found in drain cleaner. **Antacids**, which combat excess stomach acid, are comprised of bases such as magnesium hydroxide or sodium hydrogen carbonate. Various common bases and corresponding uses are given in Table $5.9.2$.

Table $5.9.1$: Common Bases and Corresponding Uses

Some Common Bases	Uses
sodium hydroxide, $NaOH$ (lye or caustic soda)	Used in the manufacture of soaps and detergents, and as the main ingredient in oven and drain cleaners.
potassium hydroxide, KOH (lye or caustic potash)	Used in the production of liquid soaps and soft soaps. Used in alkaline batteries.
magnesium hydroxide, $Mg(OH)_2$ (milk of magnesia)	Used as an ingredient in laxatives, antacids, and deodorants. Also used in the neutralization of acidic wastewater.
calcium hydroxide, $Ca(OH)_2$ (slaked lime)	Used in the manufacture of cement and lime water. Also, added to neutralize acidic soil.
aluminum hydroxide	Used in water purification and as an ingredient in antacids.

Some Common Bases	Uses
ammonia, NH_3	Used as a building block for the synthesis of many pharmaceutical products and in many commercial cleaning products. Used in the manufacture of fertilizers.

Sodium Hydroxide

Sodium hydroxide, also known as lye and caustic soda, is an inorganic compound with formula NaOH. It is a white solid ionic compound consisting of sodium cations $\mathrm{Na^+}$ and hydroxide anions $\mathrm{OH^-}$.

Dissolution of solid sodium hydroxide in water is a highly exothermic reaction:

$$\mathrm{NaOH(s)} \rightarrow \mathrm{Na^+(aq)} + \mathrm{OH^-(aq)}$$

The resulting solution is usually colorless and odorless and feels slippery when it comes in contact with skin.

Figure 5.9.1: Sample of sodium hydroxide as pellets in a watch glass. (Public Domain; Walkerma.)

Potassium Hydroxide

Potassium hydroxide is an inorganic compound with the formula KOH, and is commonly called caustic potash. Along with sodium hydroxide (NaOH), this colorless solid is a prototypical strong base. It has many industrial and niche applications, most of which exploit its corrosive nature and its reactivity toward acids. Its dissolution in water is strongly exothermic.

$$\mathrm{KOH(s)} \rightarrow \mathrm{K^+(aq)} + \mathrm{OH^-(aq)}$$

Concentrated aqueous solutions are sometimes called *potassium lyes*.

Magnesium Hydroxide

Magnesium hydroxide is the inorganic compound with the chemical formula $\mathrm{Mg(OH)_2}$. Magnesium hydroxide is a common component of antacids, such as milk of magnesia, as well as laxatives.

Figure 5.9.1: Bottle of Antacid tablets. (CC BY 2.,5; Midnightcomm).

It is a white solid with low solubility in water. Combining a solution of many magnesium salts with basic water induces precipitation of solid $\mathrm{Mg(OH)_2}$. However, a weak concentration of dissociated ions can be found in solution:

$$\mathrm{Mg(OH)_2(s)} \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Mg^{2+}(aq)} + 2\,\mathrm{OH^-(aq)}$$

Calcium Hydroxide

Calcium hydroxide (traditionally called slaked lime) is an inorganic compound with the chemical formula $Ca(OH)_2$. It is a colorless crystal or white powder. It has many names including hydrated lime, caustic lime, builders' lime, slaked lime, cal, or pickling lime. Calcium hydroxide is used in many applications, including food preparation. Limewater is the common name for a saturated solution of calcium hydroxide.

Calcium hydroxide is relatively insoluble in water, but is large enough that its solutions are basic according to the following reaction:

$$Ca(OH)_2(s) \rightleftharpoons Ca^{2+}(aq) + 2\,OH^-(aq)$$

Ammonia

Ammonia is a compound of nitrogen and hydrogen with the formula NH_3 and is a colorless gas with a characteristic pungent smell. It is the active product of “smelling salts,” and can quickly revive the faint of heart and light of head. Although common in nature and in wide use, ammonia is both caustic and hazardous in its concentrated form.

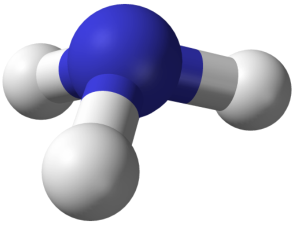


Figure 5.9.1: Ball-and-stick model of the ammonia molecule. (Public Domain; Ben Mills).

In aqueous solution, ammonia acts as a base, acquiring hydrogen ions from H_2O to yield ammonium and hydroxide ions:

$$NH_3(g) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons NH_4^+(aq) + OH^-(aq)$$

Ammonia is also a building block for the synthesis of many pharmaceutical products and is used in many commercial cleaning products.

Summary

- A brief summary of properties of bases was given.
- The properties of bases mostly contrast those of acids.
- Bases have many, varied uses.

5.10: Strong and Weak Acids and Bases

Learning Objectives

- Define a strong and a weak acid and base.
- Recognize an acid or a base as strong or weak.
- Determine if a salt produces an acidic or a basic solution.

Strong and Weak Acids

Except for their names and formulas, so far we have treated all acids as equals, especially in a chemical reaction. However, acids can be very different in a very important way. Consider HCl(aq). When HCl is dissolved in H_2O, it completely dissociates into H^+(aq) and Cl^-(aq) ions; all the HCl molecules become ions:

$$HCl \overset{100\%}{\rightarrow} H^+(aq) + Cl^-(aq)$$

Any acid that dissociates 100% into ions is called a **strong acid**. If it does not dissociate 100%, it is a **weak acid**. $HC_2H_3O_2$ is an example of a weak acid:

$$HC_2H_3O_2 \xrightarrow{\sim 5\%} H^+(aq) + C_2H_3O_2^-(aq)$$

Because this reaction does not go 100% to completion, it is more appropriate to write it as **a reversible reaction**:

$$HC_2H_3O_2 \rightleftharpoons H^+(aq) + C_2H_3O_2^-(aq)$$

As it turns out, there are very few strong acids, which are given in Table $5.10.1$. If an acid is not listed here, it is a weak acid. It may be 1% ionized or 99% ionized, but it is still classified as a weak acid.

> *Any acid that dissociates 100% into ions is called a strong acid. If it does not dissociate 100%, it is a weak acid.*

Table 5.10.1: Strong Acids and Bases

Acids	Bases
HCl	LiOH
HBr	NaOH
HI	KOH
HNO_3	RbOH
H_2SO_4	CsOH
$HClO_3$	$Mg(OH)_2$
$HClO_4$	$Ca(OH)_2$
	$Sr(OH)_2$
	$Ba(OH)_2$

Strong and Weak Bases

The issue is similar with bases: a **strong base** is a base that is 100% ionized in solution. If it is less than 100% ionized in solution, it is a **weak base**. There are very few strong bases (Table $5.10.1$); any base not listed is a weak base. All strong bases are OH^- compounds. So a base based on some other mechanism, such as NH_3 (which does not contain OH^- ions as part of its formula), will be a weak base.

Example $5.10.1$: Identifying Strong and Weak Acids and Bases

Identify each acid or base as strong or weak.

a. HCl
b. $Mg(OH)_2$
c. C_5H_5N

Solution

a. Because HCl is listed in Table $5.10.1$, it is a strong acid.
b. Because $Mg(OH)_2$ is listed in Table $5.10.1$, it is a strong base.
c. The nitrogen in C_5H_5N would act as a proton acceptor and therefore can be considered a base, but because it does not contain an OH compound, it cannot be considered a strong base; it is a weak base.

Exercise $5.10.1$

Identify each acid or base as strong or weak.

a. RbOH
b. HNO_2

Answer a

strong base

Answer b

weak acid

Example $5.10.2$: Characterizing Base Ionization

Write the balanced chemical equation for the dissociation of $Ca(OH)_2$ and indicate whether it proceeds 100% to products or not.

Solution

This is an ionic compound of Ca^{2+} ions and OH^- ions. When an ionic compound dissolves, it separates into its constituent ions:

$$\mathrm{Ca(OH)_2 \rightarrow Ca^{2+}(aq) + 2\,OH^-(aq)}$$

Because $Ca(OH)_2$ is listed in Table 5.10.1, this reaction proceeds 100% to products.

Exercise 5.10.2

Write the balanced chemical equation for the dissociation of hydrazoic acid (HN_3) and indicate whether it proceeds 100% to products or not.

Answer a

The reaction is as follows:

$$HN_3 \rightarrow H^+(aq) + N_3^-(aq)$$

It does not proceed 100% to products because hydrazoic acid is not a strong acid.

Key Takeaways

- Strong acids and bases are 100% ionized in aqueous solution.
- Weak acids and bases are less than 100% ionized in aqueous solution.
- Salts of weak acids or bases can affect the acidity or basicity of their aqueous solutions.

Contributions & Attributions

5.10: Strong and Weak Acids and Bases is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **14.7: Strong and Weak Acids and Bases** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

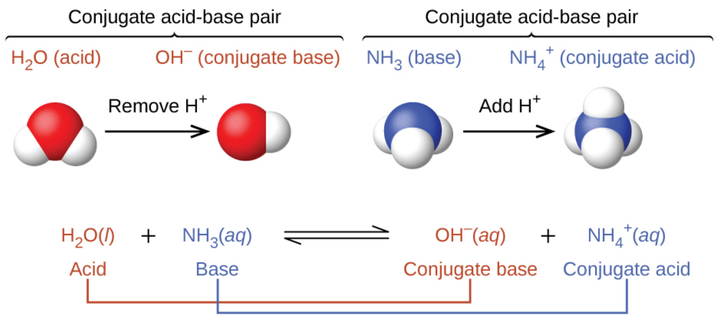
5.11: Conjugate Acids and Bases

Learning Objectives

- Identify conjugate acid-base pairs.
- Determine the formula of the conjugate acid or conjugate base.

Conjugate Acid-Base Pairs

All acid-base reactions involve the transfer of protons between acids and bases. For example, consider the acid-base reaction that takes place when ammonia is dissolved in water. A water molecule (functioning as an acid) transfers a proton to an ammonia molecule (functioning as a base), yielding the conjugate base of water, $\mathrm{OH^-}$, and the conjugate acid of ammonia, $\mathrm{NH_4^+}$:



This figure has three parts in two rows. In the first row, two diagrams of acid-base pairs are shown. On the left, a space filling model of H subscript 2 O is shown with a red O atom at the center and two smaller white H atoms attached in a bent shape. Above this model is the label “H subscript 2 O (acid)” in purple. An arrow points right, which is labeled “Remove H superscript plus.” To the right is another space filling model with a single red O atom to which a single smaller white H atom is attached. The label in purple above this model reads, “O H superscript negative (conjugate base).” Above both of these red and white models is an upward pointing bracket that is labeled “Conjugate acid-base pair.” To the right is a space filling model with a central blue N atom to which three smaller white H atoms are attached in a triangular pyramid arrangement. A label in green above reads “N H subscript 3 (base).” An arrow labeled “Add H superscript plus” points right. To the right of the arrow is another space filling model with a blue central N atom and four smaller white H atoms in a tetrahedral arrangement. The green label above reads “N H subscript 3 superscript plus (conjugate acid).” Above both of these blue and white models is an upward pointing bracket that is labeled “Conjugate acid-base pair.” The second row of the figure shows the chemical reaction, H subscript 2 O (l) is shown in purple, and is labeled below in purple as “acid,” plus N H subscript 3 (a q) in green, labeled below in green as “base,” followed by a double sided arrow arrow and O H superscript negative (a q) in purple, labeled in purple as “conjugate base,” plus N H subscript 4 superscript plus (a q)” in green, which is labeled in green as “conjugate acid.” The acid on the left side of the equation is connected to the conjugate base on the right with a purple line. Similarly, the base on the left is connected to the conjugate acid on the right side.

In the reaction of ammonia with water to give ammonium ions and hydroxide ions, ammonia acts as a base by accepting a proton from a water molecule, which in this case means that water is acting as an acid. In the reverse reaction, an ammonium ion acts as an acid by donating a proton to a hydroxide ion, and the hydroxide ion acts as a base. The conjugate acid–base pairs for this reaction are NH_4^+/NH_3 and H_2O/OH^-.

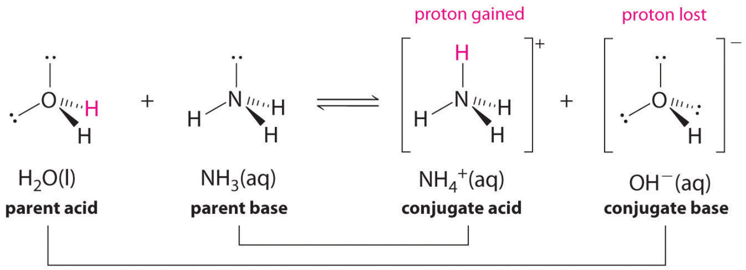


Figure 5.11.1. The pairing of parent acids and bases with conjugate acids and bases.

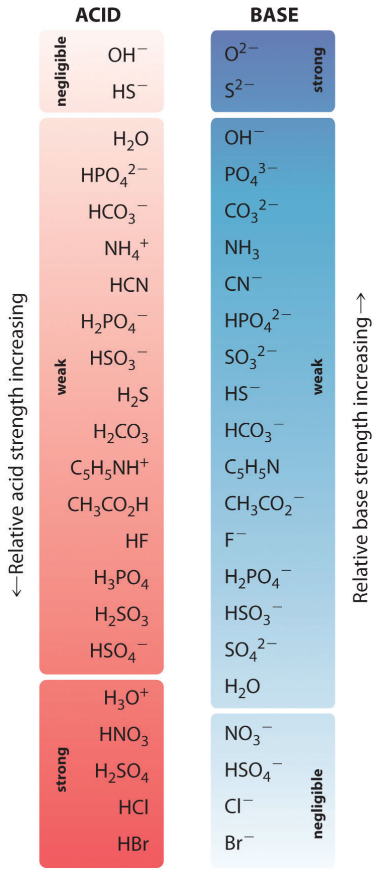


Figure 5.11.1: The Relative Strengths of Some Common Conjugate Acid-Base Pairs. The strongest acids are at the bottom left, and the strongest bases are at the top right. The conjugate base of a strong acid is a very weak base, and, conversely, the conjugate acid of a strong base is a very weak acid.

✓ Example 5.11.1

Identify the conjugate acid-base pairs in this equilibrium.

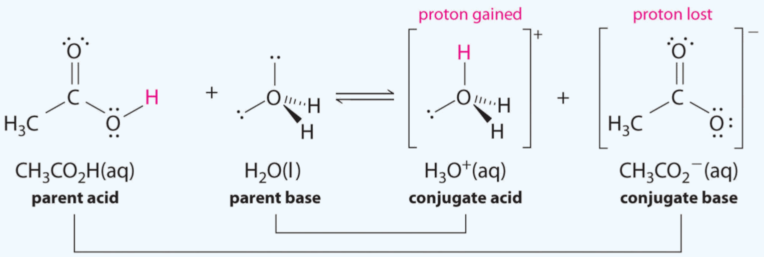
$$CH_3CO_2H + H_2O \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+ + CH_3CO_2^-$$

Solution

Similarly, in the reaction of acetic acid with water, acetic acid **donates** a proton to water, which acts as the base. In the reverse reaction, H_3O^+ is the acid that donates a proton to the acetate ion, which acts as the base.

Once again, we have two conjugate acid-base pairs:

- the parent acid and its conjugate base ($CH_3CO_2H/CH_3CO_2^-$) and
- the parent base and its conjugate acid (H_3O^+/H_2O).



✓ Example 5.11.2

Identify the conjugate acid-base pairs in this equilibrium.

$$(CH_3)_3N + H_2O \rightleftharpoons (CH_3)_3NH^+ + OH^-$$

Solution

One pair is H_2O and OH^-, where H_2O has one more H^+ and is the conjugate acid, while OH^- has one less H^+ and is the conjugate base.

The other pair consists of $(CH_3)_3N$ and $(CH_3)_3NH^+$, where $(CH_3)_3NH^+$ is the conjugate acid (it has an additional proton) and $(CH_3)_3N$ is the conjugate base.

? Exercise 5.11.1

Identify the conjugate acid-base pairs in this equilibrium.

$$NH_2^- + H_2O \rightleftharpoons NH_3 + OH^-$$

Answer

H_2O (acid) and OH^- (base); NH_2^- (base) and NH_3 (acid)

Formulas of Conjugate Acids and Bases

Notice in the examples above that an acid and its conjugate base are only different by a proton (H^+), similarly, a base and its conjugate acid also only differ by a proton.

The formula of the conjugate base is the acid MINUS a proton. For example, the conjugate base of H_2O is OH^-, and the conjugate base of NH_3 is NH_2^-.

The formula of the conjugate acid is the base PLUS a proton. For example, the conjugate acid of NH_3 is NH_4^+, and the conjugate acid of H_2O is H_3O^+.

? Exercise 5.11.2

Identify the conjugate base of the following:

a. H_2CO_3

b. HCN

c. $H_2PO_4^-$

Answer

a. HCO_3^- b. CN^- c. HPO_4^{2-}

? Exercise 5.11.3

Identify the conjugate acid of the following:

a. NO_3^-

b. PO_4^{3-}

c. HSO_4^-

Answer

a. HNO_3 b. HPO_4^{2-} c. H_2SO_4

5.12: Reactions of Acids and Bases

Learning Objectives

- Write acid-base neutralization reactions.
- Predict the formula of the salt that would be produced from an acid-base reaction.

Neutralization Reactions

The reaction that happens when an acid, such as HCl, is mixed with a base, such as NaOH:

$$\mathrm{HCl(aq) + NaOH(aq) \rightarrow NaCl(aq) + H_2O(l)}$$

When an acid and a base are combined, water and a salt are the products. Salts are ionic compounds containing a positive ion other than $\mathrm{H^+}$ and a negative ion other than the hydroxide ion, $\mathrm{OH^-}$. Double displacement reactions of this type are called **neutralization reactions**. We can write an expanded version of this equation, with aqueous substances written in their longer form:

$$\mathrm{H^+(aq) + Cl^-(aq) + Na^+(aq) + OH^-(aq) \rightarrow Na^+(aq) + Cl^-(aq) + H_2O(l)}$$

After removing the spectator ions, we get the net ionic equation:

$$\mathrm{H^+(aq) + OH^-(aq) \rightarrow H_2O(l)}$$

When a strong acid and a strong base are combined in the proper amounts—when $[\mathrm{H^+}]$ equals $[\mathrm{OH^-}]$\)—a neutral solution results in which pH = 7. The acid and base have neutralized each other, and the acidic and basic properties are no longer present.

Salt solutions do not always have a pH of 7, however. Through a process known as **hydrolysis**, the ions produced when an acid and base combine may react with the water molecules to produce a solution that is slightly acidic or basic. As a general concept, if a strong acid is mixed with a weak base, the resulting solution will be slightly acidic. If a strong base is mixed with a weak acid, the solution will be slightly basic.

Video: Equimolar (~0.01 M) and equivolume solutions of HCl and NaOH are combined to make salt water. https://youtu.be/TS-I9KrUjB0

Example 5.12.1: Propionic Acid + Calcium Hydroxide

Calcium propionate is used to inhibit the growth of molds in foods, tobacco, and some medicines. Write a balanced chemical equation for the reaction of aqueous propionic acid ($CH_3CH_2CO_2H$) with aqueous calcium hydroxide [$Ca(OH)_2$].

Solution

Solutions to Example 14.5.1

Steps	Reaction
Write the unbalanced equation. The cations and anions swap to create the water and the salt.	$CH_3CH_2CO_2H(aq) + Ca(OH)_2(aq) \rightarrow (CH_3CH_2CO_2)_2Ca(aq) + H_2O(l)$

Steps	Reaction
Balance the equation. Because there are two OH^- ions in the formula for $Ca(OH)_2$, we need two moles of propionic acid, $CH_3CH_2CO_2H$, to provide H^+ ions.	$\underline{\mathbf{2}}CH_3CH_2CO_2H(aq) + Ca(OH)_2(aq) \rightarrow (CH_3CH_2CO_2)_2Ca(aq) + \underline{\mathbf{2}}H_2O(l)$

? Exercise 5.12.1

Write a balanced chemical equation for the reaction of solid barium hydroxide with dilute acetic acid.

Answer

$$\mathrm{Ba(OH)_2(s) + 2\,CH_3CO_2H(aq) \rightarrow Ba(CH_3CO_2)_2(aq) + 2\,H_2O(l)}$$

5.13: Acid–Base Titration

Learning Objectives

- Understand the use of indicators.
- Perform a titration calculation correctly.

The reaction of an acid with a base to make a salt and water is a common reaction in the laboratory, partly because so many compounds can act as acids or bases. Another reason that acid-base reactions are so prevalent is because they are often used to determine quantitative amounts of one or the other. Performing chemical reactions quantitatively to determine the exact amount of a reagent is called a **titration**. A titration can be performed with almost any chemical reaction for which the balanced chemical equation is known. Here, we will consider titrations that involve acid-base reactions.

During an acid-base titration, an acid with a known concentration (a **standard solution**) is slowly added to a base with an unknown concentration (or vice versa). A few drops of indicator solution are added to the base. The indicator will signal, by color change, when the base has been neutralized (when $[H^+] = [OH^-]$). At that point—called the **equivalence point,** or **end point**—the titration is stopped. By knowing the volumes of acid and base used, and the concentration of the standard solution, calculations allow us to determine the concentration of the other solution.

> It is important to accurately measure volumes when doing titrations. The instrument you would use is called a burette (or buret).

Figure 5.13.1: Equipment for Titrations. A burette is a type of liquid dispensing system that can accurately indicate the volume of liquid dispensed.

For example, suppose 25.66 mL (or 0.02566 L) of 0.1078 M HCl was used to titrate an unknown sample of NaOH. What mass of NaOH was in the sample? We can calculate the number of moles of HCl reacted:

mol HCl = (0.02566 L)(0.1078 M) = 0.002766 mol HCl

We also have the balanced chemical reaction between HCl and NaOH:

$$\mathrm{HCl + NaOH \rightarrow NaCl + H_2O}$$

So we can construct a conversion factor to convert to number of moles of NaOH reacted:

$$0.002766\ mol\ \cancel{HCl} \times \frac{1\ mol\ NaOH}{1\ mol\ \cancel{HCl}} = 0.002766\ mol\ NaOH$$

Then we convert this amount to mass, using the molar mass of NaOH (40.00 g/mol):

$$0.002766\ mol\ \cancel{HCl} \times \frac{40.00\ g\ NaOH}{1\ mol\ \cancel{HCl}} = 0.1106\ g\ NaOH$$

This type of calculation is performed as part of a titration.

Example 5.13.1: Equivalence Point

What mass of $Ca(OH)_2$ is present in a sample if it is titrated to its equivalence point with 44.02 mL of 0.0885 M HNO_3? The balanced chemical equation is as follows:

$$\mathrm{2\,HNO_3 + Ca(OH)_2 \rightarrow Ca(NO_3)_2 + 2\,H_2O}$$

Solution

In liters, the volume is 0.04402 L. We calculate the number of moles of titrant:

moles HNO_3 = (0.04402 L)(0.0885 M) = 0.00390 mol HNO_3

Using the balanced chemical equation, we can determine the number of moles of $Ca(OH)_2$ present in the analyte:

$$0.00390\ mol\,\cancel{HNO_3} \times \frac{1\,mol\,Ca(OH)_2}{2\ mol\,\cancel{HNO_3}} = 0.00195\,mol\,Ca(OH)_2$$

Then we convert this to a mass using the molar mass of $Ca(OH)_2$:

$$0.00195\ mol\,\cancel{Ca(OH)_2} \times \frac{74.1\,g\,Ca(OH)_2}{mol\,\cancel{Ca(OH)_2}} = 0.144\,g\,Ca(OH)_2$$

? Exercise 5.13.1

What mass of $H_2C_2O_4$ is present in a sample if it is titrated to its equivalence point with 18.09 mL of 0.2235 M NaOH? The balanced chemical reaction is as follows:

$$\mathrm{H_2C_2O_4 + 2\,NaOH \rightarrow Na_2C_2O_4 + 2\,H_2O}$$

Answer

0.182 g

? Exercise 5.13.2

If 25.00 mL of HCl solution with a concentration of 0.1234 M is neutralized by 23.45 mL of NaOH, what is the concentration of the base?

Answer

0.1316 M NaOH

? Exercise 5.13.3

A 20.0 mL solution of strontium hydroxide, $Sr(OH)_2$, is placed in a flask and a drop of indicator is added. The solution turns color after 25.0 mL of a standard 0.0500 M HCl solution is added. What was the original concentration of the $Sr(OH)_2$ solution?

Answer

$3.12 \times 10^{-2}\ M$ $Sr(OH)_2$

Indicator Selection for Titrations

The indicator used depends on the type of titration performed. The indicator of choice should change color when enough of one substance (acid or base) has been added to exactly use up the other substance. Only when a strong acid and a strong base are produced will the resulting solution be neutral. The three main types of acid-base titrations, and suggested indicators, are:

The three main types of acid-base titrations, suggested indicators, and explanations

Titration between . . .	Indicator	Explanation
strong acid and strong base	any	
strong acid and weak base	methyl orange	changes color in the acidic range (3.2 - 4.4)
weak acid and strong base	phenolphthalein	changes color in the basic range (8.2 - 10.6)

Summary

A titration is the quantitative reaction of an acid and a base. Indicators are used to show that all the analyte has reacted with the titrant.

Contributions & Attributions

- Peggy Lawson (Oxbow Prairie Heights School). Funded by Saskatchewan Educational Technology Consortium.

5.14: Water - Acid and Base in One

Learning Objectives

- Describe the autoionization of water.
- Calculate the concentrations of H_3O^+ and OH^- in aqueous solutions, knowing the other concentration.

We have already seen that H_2O can act as an acid or a base:

$$\underbrace{NH_3}_{\text{base}} + \underbrace{H_2O}_{\text{acid}} \rightleftharpoons NH_4^+ + OH^-$$

where H_2O acts as an acid (in red).

$$\underbrace{HCl}_{\text{acid}} + \underbrace{H_2O}_{\text{base}} \longrightarrow H_3O^+ + Cl^-$$

where H_2O acts as an base (in blue).

It may not surprise you to learn, then, that within any given sample of water, some H_2O molecules are acting as acids, and other H_2O molecules are acting as bases. The chemical equation is as follows:

$$\underbrace{H_2O}_{\text{acid}} + \underbrace{H_2O}_{\text{base}} \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+ + OH^- \tag{5.14.1}$$

This occurs only to a very small degree: only about 6 in 10^8 H_2O molecules are participating in this process, which is called the **autoionization of water**.

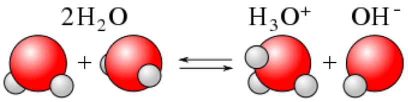


Figure 5.14.1: Autoionization of water, resulting in hydroxide and hydronium ions.

At this level, the concentration of both $H_3O^+(aq)$ and $OH^-(aq)$ in a sample of pure H_2O is about 1.0×10^{-7} M (at room temperature). If we use square brackets—[ ]—around a dissolved species to imply the molar concentration of that species, we have

$$[H_3O^+] = [OH^-] = 1.0 \times 10^{-7} \tag{5.14.2}$$

for *any* sample of pure water because H_2O can act as both an acid and a base. The product of these two concentrations is 1.0×10^{-14}:

$$[H_3O^+] \times [OH^-] = (1.0 \times 10^{-7})(1.0 \times 10^{-7}) = 1.0 \times 10^{-14}$$

- For acids, the concentration of $H_3O^+(aq)$ (i.e., $[H_3O^+]$) is greater than 1.0×10^{-7} M.
- For bases the concentration of $OH^-(aq)$ (i.e., $[OH^-]$) is greater than 1.0×10^{-7} M.

However, the *product* of the two concentrations—$[H_3O^+][OH^-]$—is *always* equal to 1.0×10^{-14}, no matter whether the aqueous solution is an acid, a base, or neutral:

$$[H_3O^+][OH^-] = 1.0 \times 10^{-14}$$

This value of the product of concentrations is so important for aqueous solutions that it is called the **autoionization constant of water** and is denoted K_w:

$$K_w = [H_3O^+][OH^-] = 1.0 \times 10^{-14} \tag{5.14.3}$$

This means that if you know $[H_3O^+]$ for a solution, you can calculate what $[OH^-]$) has to be for the product to equal 1.0×10^{-14}; or if you know $[OH^-]$), you can calculate $[H_3O^+]$. This also implies that as one concentration goes up, the other must go down to compensate so that their product always equals the value of K_w.

Warning: Temperature Matters

The degree of autoionization of water (Equation 5.14.1)—and hence the value of K_w—changes with temperature, so Equations 5.14.2 - 5.14.3 are accurate only at room temperature.

Example 5.14.1: Hydroxide Concentration

What is $[\mathrm{OH^-}]$) of an aqueous solution if $[\mathrm{H_3O^+}]$ is $1.0 \times 10^{-4}\,M$?

Solution

Solutions to Example 14.7.1

Steps for Problem Solving	
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: $[\mathrm{H_3O^+}] = 1.0 \times 10^{-4}\ M$ Find: $[\mathrm{OH^-}]$ = ? M
List other known quantities.	none
Plan the problem.	Using the expression for K_w, (Equation 5.14.3), rearrange the equation algebraically to solve for $[\mathrm{OH^-}]$. $$[\mathrm{OH^-}] = \frac{1.0 \times 10^{-14}}{[H_3O^+]}$$
Calculate.	Now substitute the known quantities into the equation and solve. $$[\mathrm{OH^-}] = \frac{1.0 \times 10^{-14}}{1.0 \times 10^{-4}} = 1.0 \times 10^{-10}\,M$$ It is assumed that the concentration unit is molarity, so $[\mathrm{OH^-}]$ is 1.0×10^{-10} M.
Think about your result.	The concentration of the acid is high (> 1 x 10^{-7} M), so $[\mathrm{OH^-}]$ should be low.

Exercise 5.14.1

What is $[\mathrm{OH^-}]$ in a 0.00032 M solution of H_2SO_4?

Hint

Assume **both** protons ionize from the molecule...although this is not the case.

Answer

$3.1 \times 10^{-11}\ M$

When you have a solution of a particular acid or base, you need to look at the formula of the acid or base to determine the number of H_3O^+ or OH^- ions in the formula unit because $[\mathrm{H_3O^+}]$ or $[\mathrm{OH^-}]$) may not be the same as the concentration of the acid or base itself.

Example 5.14.2: Hydronium Concentration

What is $[\mathrm{H_3O^+}]$ in a 0.0044 M solution of $\mathrm{Ca(OH)_2}$?

Solution

Solutions to Example 14.7.2

Steps for Problem Solving	

Steps for Problem Solving	
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: $[\mathrm{Ca(OH)_2}] = 0.0044\,M$ Find: $[\mathrm{H_3O^+}]$ = ? M
List other known quantities.	We begin by determining $[\mathrm{OH^-}]$. The concentration of the solute is 0.0044 M, but because $\mathrm{Ca(OH)_2}$ is a strong base, there are two $\mathrm{OH^-}$ ions in solution for every formula unit dissolved, so the actual $[\mathrm{OH^-}]$ is two times this: $$[\mathrm{OH^-}]{=}2\ \times 0\cdot 0044\ \mathrm{M}{=}0\cdot 0088\ \mathrm{M}\cdot$$
Plan the problem.	Use the expression for K_w (Equation 5.14.3) and rearrange the equation algebraically to solve for $[\mathrm{H_3O^+}]$. $$[H_3O^+] = \frac{1.0 \times 10^{-14}}{[OH^-]}$$
Calculate.	Now substitute the known quantities into the equation and solve. $$[H_3O^+] = \frac{1.0 \times 10^{-14}}{(0.0088)} = 1.1 \times 10^{-12}\,M$$ $[\mathrm{H_3O^+}]$ has decreased significantly in this basic solution.
Think about your result.	The concentration of the base is high (> 1 x 10^{-7} M) so $[\mathrm{H_3O^+}]$ should be low.

? Exercise 5.14.2

What is $[\mathrm{H_3O^+}]$ of an aqueous solution if $[\mathrm{OH^-}]$ is $1.0 \times 10^{-9}\ M$?

Answer

1.0×10^{-5} M

In any aqueous solution, the product of $[\mathrm{H_3O^+}]$ and $[\mathrm{OH^-}]$ equals 1.0×10^{-14} (at room temperature).

Contributions & Attributions

5.14: Water - Acid and Base in One is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **14.8: Water - Acid and Base in One** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

5.15: The pH and pOH Scales - Ways to Express Acidity and Basicity

Learning Objectives

- Define pH and pOH.
- Determine the pH of acidic and basic solutions.
- Determine the hydronium ion concentration and pOH from pH.

As we have seen, $[H_3O^+]$ and $[OH^-]$ values can be markedly different from one aqueous solution to another. So chemists defined a new scale that succinctly indicates the concentrations of either of these two ions.

pH is a logarithmic function of $[H_3O^+]$:

$$pH = -\log[H_3O^+] \tag{5.15.1}$$

pH is usually (but not always) between 0 and 14. Knowing the dependence of pH on $[H_3O^+]$, we can summarize as follows:

- If pH < 7, then the solution is acidic.
- If pH = 7, then the solution is neutral.
- If pH > 7, then the solution is basic.

This is known as the pH scale. The pH scale is the range of values from 0 to 14 that describes the acidity or basicity of a solution. You can use pH to make a quick determination whether a given aqueous solution is acidic, basic, or neutral. Figure $5.15.1$ illustrates this relationship, along with some examples of various solutions. Because hydrogen ion concentrations are generally less than one (for example $1.3 \times 10^{-3}\ M$), the log of the number will be a negative number. To make pH even easier to work with, pH is defined as the ***negative* log of** $[H_3O^+]$, which will give a positive value for pH.

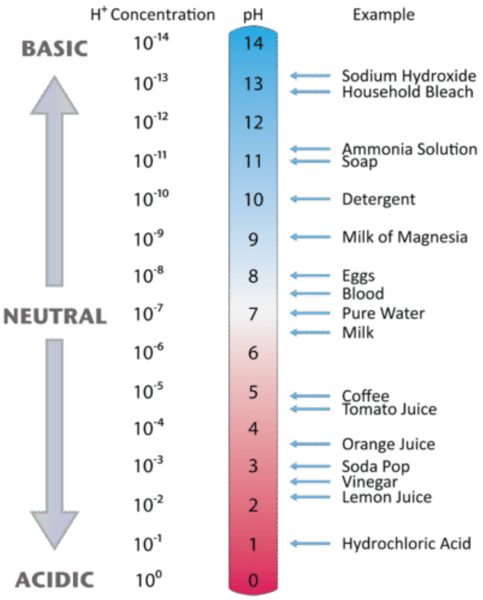


Figure $5.15.1$: The pH values for several common materials.

Example $5.15.1$

Label each solution as acidic, basic, or neutral based only on the stated pH.

a. milk of magnesia, pH = 10.5
b. pure water, pH = 7
c. wine, pH = 3.0

Answer

a. With a pH greater than 7, milk of magnesia is basic. (Milk of magnesia is largely Mg(OH)2.)
b. Pure water, with a pH of 7, is neutral.

c. With a pH of less than 7, wine is acidic.

? Exercise 5.15.1

Identify each substance as acidic, basic, or neutral based only on the stated pH.

a. human blood with pH = 7.4
b. household ammonia with pH = 11.0
c. cherries with pH = 3.6

Answer a

basic

Answer b

basic

Answer c

acidic

Calculating pH from Hydronium Concentration

The pH of solutions can be determined by using logarithms as illustrated in the next example for stomach acid. Stomach acid is a solution of HCl with a hydronium ion concentration of $1.2 \times 10^{-3}\ M$, what is the pH of the solution?

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{pH} &= -\log[\mathrm{H_3O^+}] \\ &= -\log(1.2 \times 10^{-3}) \\ &= -(-2.92) = 2.92 \end{aligned}$$

Logarithms

To get the **log value** on your calculator, enter the number (in this case, the hydronium ion concentration) first, then press the LOG key.

If the number is 1.0 x 10^{-5} (for $[H_3O^+]$ = 1.0 x 10^{-5} M) you should get an answer of "-5".

If you get a different answer, or an error, try pressing the LOG key before you enter the number.

✓ Example 5.15.2: Converting Ph to Hydronium Concentration

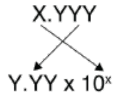
Find the pH, given the $[H_3O^+]$ of the following:

a. 1×10^{-3} M
b. 2.5×10^{-11} M
c. 4.7×10^{-9} M

Solution

Solutions to Example 14.9.2

Steps for Problem Solving	
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: a. $[H_3O^+] = 1 \times 10^{-3}$ M b. $[H_3O^+] = 2.5 \times 10^{-11}$ M c. $[H_3O^+] = 4.7 \times 10^{-9}$ M Find: ? pH
Plan the problem.	Need to use the expression for pH (Equation 5.15.1). pH = - log $[H_3O^+]$

Steps for Problem Solving	
Calculate.	Now substitute the known quantity into the equation and solve. a. pH = - log [$\underline{1} \times 10^{-3}$] = 3.$\underline{0}$ (1 decimal places since 1 has 1 significant figure) b. pH = - log [$\underline{2.5} \times 10^{-11}$] = 10.$\underline{60}$ (2 decimal places since 2.5 has 2 significant figures) c. pH = - log [$\underline{4.7} \times 10^{-9}$] = 8.$\underline{30}$ (2 decimal places since 4.7 has 2 significant figures) The other issue that concerns us here is significant figures. Because the number(s) before the decimal point in a logarithm relate to the power on 10, the number of digits *after* the decimal point is what determines the number of significant figures in the final answer: 

Exercise 5.15.2

Find the pH, given [H_3O^+] of the following:

a. 5.8×10^{-4} M
b. 1.0×10^{-7}

Answer a

3.22

Answer b

7.00

Calculating Hydronium Concentration from pH

Sometimes you need to work "backwards"—you know the pH of a solution and need to find $[H_3O^+]$, or even the concentration of the acid solution. How do you do that? To convert pH into $[H_3O^+]$ we solve Equation 5.15.1 for $[H_3O^+]$. This involves taking the antilog (or inverse log) of the negative value of pH .

$$[\mathrm{H_3O^+}] = \text{antilog}(-pH)$$

or

$$[\mathrm{H_3O^+}] = 10^{-pH} \tag{5.15.2}$$

As mentioned above, different calculators work slightly differently—make sure you can do the following calculations using ***your*** calculator.

Calculator Skills

We have a solution with a pH = 8.3. What is [H_3O^+] ?

With some calculators you will do things in the following order:

1. Enter 8.3 as a negative number (use the key with both the +/- signs, not the subtraction key).
2. Use your calculator's 2nd or Shift or INV (inverse) key to type in the symbol found above the LOG key. The shifted function should be 10^x.
3. You should get the answer **5.0×10^{-9}**.

Other calculators require you to enter keys in the order they appear in the equation.

1. Use the Shift or second function to key in the 10^x function.
2. Use the +/- key to type in a negative number, then type in 8.3.
3. You should get the answer **5.0×10^{-9}**.

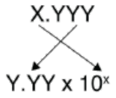
If neither of these methods work, try rearranging the order in which you type in the keys. Don't give up—you must master your calculator!

✓ Example 5.15.3: Calculating Hydronium Concentration from pH

Find the hydronium ion concentration in a solution with a pH of 12.6. Is this solution an acid or a base? How do you know?

Solution

Solutions to Example 14.9.3

Steps for Problem Solving	
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: pH = 12.6 Find: $[H_3O^+]$ = ? M
Plan the problem.	Need to use the expression for $[H_3O^+]$ (Equation 5.15.2). $[H_3O^+]$ = antilog (-pH) or $[H_3O^+] = 10^{-pH}$
Calculate.	Now substitute the known quantity into the equation and solve. $[H_3O^+]$ = antilog (12.$\underline{60}$) = $\underline{2.5}$ x 10^{-13} M (2 significant figures since 4.7 has 12.60 2 decimal places) or $[H_3O^+] = 10^{-12.\underline{60}}$ = $\underline{2.5}$ x 10^{-13} M (2 significant figures since 4.7 has 12.60 2 decimal places) The other issue that concerns us here is significant figures. Because the number(s) before the decimal point in a logarithm relate to the power on 10, the number of digits *after* the decimal point is what determines the number of significant figures in the final answer: 

? Exercise 5.15.3

If moist soil has a pH of 7.84, what is $[H_3O^+]$ of the soil solution?

Answer

1.5 x 10^{-8} M

The pOH scale

As with the hydrogen-ion concentration, the concentration of the hydroxide ion can be expressed logarithmically by the pOH. The **pOH** of a solution is the negative logarithm of the hydroxide-ion concentration.

$$\mathrm{pOH} = -\log\left[\mathrm{OH}^-\right]$$

The relation between the hydronium and hydroxide ion concentrations expressed as p-functions is easily derived from the K_w expression:

$$K_\mathrm{w} = [\mathrm{H_3O^+}][\mathrm{OH^-}] \tag{5.15.3}$$

$$-\log K_\mathrm{w} = -\log([\mathrm{H_3O^+}][\mathrm{OH^-}]) = -\log[\mathrm{H_3O^+}] + -\log[\mathrm{OH^-}] \tag{5.15.4}$$

$$\mathrm{p}K_{\mathrm{w}} = \mathrm{pH} + \mathrm{pOH} \tag{5.15.5}$$

At 25 °C, the value of K_w is 1.0×10^{-14}, and so:

$$14.00 = \mathrm{pH} + \mathrm{pOH} \tag{5.15.6}$$

The hydronium ion molarity in pure water (or any neutral solution) is $1.0 \times 10^{-7}\ M$ at 25 °C. The pH and pOH of a neutral solution at this temperature are therefore:

$$\mathrm{pH} = -\log[\mathrm{H_3O^+}] = -\log(1.0 \times 10^{-7}) = 7.00 \tag{5.15.7}$$

$$\mathrm{pOH} = -\log[\mathrm{OH^-}] = -\log(1.0 \times 10^{-7}) = 7.00 \tag{5.15.8}$$

And so, at this temperature, acidic solutions are those with hydronium ion molarities greater than $1.0 \times 10^{-7}\ M$ and hydroxide ion molarities less than $1.0 \times 10^{-7}\ M$ (corresponding to pH values less than 7.00 and pOH values greater than 7.00). Basic solutions are those with hydronium ion molarities less than $1.0 \times 10^{-7}\ M$ and hydroxide ion molarities greater than $1.0 \times 10^{-7}\ M$ (corresponding to pH values greater than 7.00 and pOH values less than 7.00).

✓ Example 5.15.4:

Find the pOH of a solution with a pH of 4.42.

Solution

Solutions to Example 14.9.4

Steps for Problem Solving	
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: pH =4.42 Find: ? pOH
Plan the problem.	Need to use the expression pOH = 14 - pH
Calculate.	Now substitute the known quantity into the equation and solve. pOH=14−4.42=9.58
Think about your result.	The pH is that of an acidic solution, and the resulting pOH is the difference after subtracting from 14. The answer has two significant figures because the given pH has two decimal places.

? Exercise 5.15.4

The pH of a solution is 8.22. What is the pOH?

Answer

5.78

The diagram below shows all of the interrelationships between [H3O+][H3O+], [OH−][OH−], pH, and pOH.

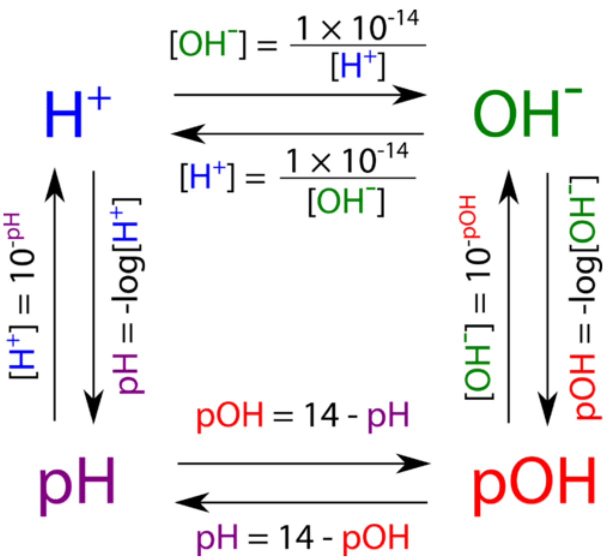


Figure 5.15.1: Relationships between hydrogen ion concentration, hydroxide ion concentration, pH and pOH.

Contributions & Attributions

- Peggy Lawson (Oxbow Prairie Heights School). Funded by Saskatchewan Educational Technology Consortium.
-
- Template:OpenStax

5.16: Buffers- Solutions that Resist pH Change

Learning Objective

- Define *buffer* and describe how it reacts with an acid or a base.
- Determine which pair of solutions would act as a buffer.

Weak acids are relatively common, even in the foods we eat. But we occasionally come across a strong acid or base, such as stomach acid, that has a strongly acidic pH of 1–2. By definition, strong acids and bases can produce a relatively large amount of hydrogen or hydroxide ions and, as a consequence, have marked chemical activity. In addition, very small amounts of strong acids and bases can change the pH of a solution very quickly. If 1 mL of stomach acid [which we will approximate as 0.05 M HCl(aq)] is added to the bloodstream, and if no correcting mechanism is present, the pH of the blood would go from about 7.4 to about 4.9—a pH that is not conducive to life. Fortunately, the body has a mechanism for minimizing such dramatic pH changes.

This mechanism involves a buffer, a solution that resists dramatic changes in pH. Buffers do so by being composed of certain pairs of solutes: either a weak acid plus a salt derived from that weak acid, or a weak base plus a salt of that weak base. For example, a buffer can be composed of dissolved acetic acid ($HC_2H_3O_2$, a weak acid) and sodium acetate ($NaC_2H_3O_2$, a salt derived from that acid). Another example of a buffer is a solution containing ammonia (NH_3, a weak base) and ammonium chloride (NH_4Cl, a salt derived from that base).

Let us use an acetic acid–sodium acetate buffer to demonstrate how buffers work. If a strong base—a source of $OH^-(aq)$ ions—is added to the buffer solution, those hydroxide ions will react with the acetic acid in an acid-base reaction:

$$HC_2H_3O_2(aq) + OH^-(aq) \rightarrow H_2O(\ell) + C_2H_3O_2^-(aq) \tag{5.16.1}$$

Rather than changing the pH dramatically by making the solution basic, the added hydroxide ions react to make water, and the pH does not change much.

If a strong acid—a source of H^+ ions—is added to the buffer solution, the H^+ ions will react with the anion from the salt. Because $HC_2H_3O_2$ is a weak acid, it is not ionized much. This means that if lots of hydrogen ions and acetate ions (from sodium acetate) are present in the same solution, they will come together to make acetic acid:

$$H^+(aq) + C_2H_3O_2^-(aq) \rightarrow HC_2H_3O_2(aq) \tag{5.16.2}$$

Rather than changing the pH dramatically and making the solution acidic, the added hydrogen ions react to make molecules of a weak acid. Figure 5.16.1 illustrates both actions of a buffer.

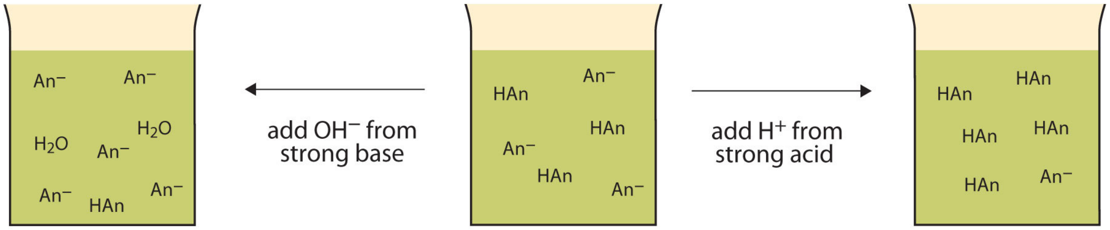


Figure 5.16.1: The Action of Buffers. Buffers can react with both strong acids (top) and strong bases (bottom) to minimize large changes in pH.

Buffers made from weak bases and salts of weak bases act similarly. For example, in a buffer containing NH_3 and NH_4Cl, ammonia molecules can react with any excess hydrogen ions introduced by strong acids:

$$NH_3(aq) + H^+(aq) \rightarrow NH_4^+(aq) \tag{5.16.3}$$

while the **ammonium ion** ($NH_4^+(aq)$) can react with any hydroxide ions introduced by strong bases:

$$NH_4^+(aq) + OH^-(aq) \rightarrow NH_3(aq) + H_2O(\ell) \tag{5.16.4}$$

✓ Example 5.16.1: Making Buffer Solutions

Which solute combinations can make a buffer solution? Assume that all are aqueous solutions.

a. $HCHO_2$ and $NaCHO_2$
b. HCl and NaCl
c. CH_3NH_2 and CH_3NH_3Cl
d. NH_3 and NaOH

Solution

a. Formic acid ($HCHO_2$) is a weak acid, while $NaCHO_2$ is the salt made from the anion of the weak acid—the formate ion (CHO_2^-). The combination of these two solutes would make a buffer solution.
b. Hydrochloric acid (HCl) is a strong acid, not a weak acid, so the combination of these two solutes would not make a buffer solution.
c. Methylamine (CH_3NH_2) is like ammonia with one of its hydrogen atoms substituted with a CH_3 (methyl) group. Because it is not on our list of strong bases, we can assume that it is a weak base. The compound CH_3NH_3Cl is a salt made from that weak base, so the combination of these two solutes would make a buffer solution.
d. Ammonia (NH_3) is a weak base, but NaOH is a strong base. The combination of these two solutes would not make a buffer solution.

? Exercise 5.16.1

Which solute combinations can make a buffer solution? Assume that all are aqueous solutions.

a. $NaHCO_3$ and NaCl
b. H_3PO_4 and NaH_2PO_4
c. NH_3 and $(NH_4)_3PO_4$
d. NaOH and NaCl

Answer a

Yes.

Answer b

No. Need a weak acid or base and a salt of its conjugate base or acid.

Answer c

Yes.

Answer d

No. Need a weak base or acid.

Human blood has a buffering system to minimize extreme changes in pH. One buffer in blood is based on the presence of HCO_3^- and H_2CO_3 [H_2CO_3 is another way to write $CO_2(aq)$]. With this buffer present, even if some stomach acid were to find its way directly into the bloodstream, the change in the pH of blood would be minimal. Inside many of the body's cells, there is a buffering system based on phosphate ions.

Summary

- Buffers consist of a weak acid and its conjugate base (or a weak base and its conjugate acid).
- Buffers are resistant to changes in pH.

Contributions & Attributions

- edited by Spencer Berger

- **14.10: Buffers- Solutions that Resist pH Change** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

Index

Glossary

Sample Word 1 | Sample Definition 1

Detailed Licensing

Overview

Title: Bellingham Technical College CHEM 121

Webpages: 92

Applicable Restrictions: Noncommercial

All licenses found:

- CK-12 License: 59.8% (55 pages)
- Undeclared: 18.5% (17 pages)
- CC BY-NC-SA 3.0: 10.9% (10 pages)
- CC BY 4.0: 4.3% (4 pages)
- Unknown License: 3.3% (3 pages)
- CC BY-SA 4.0: 2.2% (2 pages)
- Public Domain: 1.1% (1 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)

By Page

- Bellingham Technical College CHEM 121 - *Undeclared*
  - Front Matter - *Undeclared*
    - TitlePage - *Undeclared*
    - InfoPage - *Undeclared*
    - Table of Contents - *Undeclared*
    - Licensing - *Undeclared*
  - 1: Module 1 - Matter and Measurement - *Undeclared*
    - 1.1: Chemistry- The Study of Matter - *CK-12 License*
    - 1.2: Classifying Matter According to Its State—Solid, Liquid, and Gas - *CK-12 License*
    - 1.3: Classifying Matter According to Its Composition - *CK-12 License*
    - 1.4: Differences in Matter- Physical and Chemical Properties - *CK-12 License*
    - 1.5: Changes in Matter - Physical and Chemical Changes - *CK-12 License*
    - 1.6: Conservation of Mass - There is No New Matter - *CK-12 License*
    - 1.7: Element Symbols and Chemical Formulas - *CK-12 License*
    - 1.8: Looking for Patterns - The Periodic Table - *CK-12 License*
    - 1.9: Energy - *CK-12 License*
    - 1.10: Scientific Notation - Writing Large and Small Numbers - *CK-12 License*
    - 1.11: Significant Figures - Writing Numbers to Reflect Precision - *CK-12 License*
    - 1.12: Significant Figures in Calculations - *CK-12 License*
    - 1.13: The Basic Units of Measurement - *CK-12 License*
    - 1.14: Problem Solving and Unit Conversions - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 1.15: Solving Multi-step Conversion Problems - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 1.16: Units Raised to a Power - *CK-12 License*
    - 1.17: Density - *CK-12 License*
  - 2: Module 2 - Atoms and Bonding - *Undeclared*
    - 2.1: Indivisible - The Atomic Theory - *CK-12 License*
    - 2.2: The Nuclear Atom - *CK-12 License*
    - 2.3: The Properties of Protons, Neutrons, and Electrons - *CK-12 License*
    - 2.4: Elements- Defined by Their Number of Protons - *CK-12 License*
    - 2.5: Ions - Losing and Gaining Electrons - *CK-12 License*
    - 2.6: Isotopes - When the Number of Neutrons Varies - *CK-12 License*
    - 2.7: Atomic Mass - The Average Mass of an Element's Atoms - *CK-12 License*
    - 2.8: The Bohr Model - Atoms with Orbits - *CK-12 License*
    - 2.9: Quantum-Mechanical Orbitals and Electron Configurations - *CK-12 License*
    - 2.10: Electron Configurations and the Periodic Table - *CK-12 License*
    - 2.11: Representing Valence Electrons with Dots - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 2.12: Lewis Structures of Ionic Compounds- Electrons Transferred - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 2.13: Covalent Lewis Structures- Electrons Shared - *Unknown License*

    - 2.14: Writing Lewis Structures for Covalent Compounds - *Unknown License*
    - 2.15: Predicting the Shapes of Molecules - *Unknown License*
    - 2.16: Electronegativity and Polarity - Polar Bonds and Polar Molecules - *CK-12 License*
    - 2.17: Writing Formulas for Ionic Compounds - *CK-12 License*
    - 2.18: Naming Ionic Compounds - *CK-12 License*
    - 2.19: Naming Molecular Compounds - *CK-12 License*
  - 3: Module 3 - Stoichiometry - *Undeclared*
    - 3.1: Avogadro's Number and the Mole - *CK-12 License*
    - 3.2: Mole Ratios Within Compounds - *CK-12 License*
    - 3.3: Molar Mass of Molecules - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 3.4: Mass Percent Composition of Compounds - *CK-12 License*
    - 3.5: Mass Percent Composition from a Chemical Formula - *CK-12 License*
    - 3.6: The Chemical Equation - *CK-12 License*
    - 3.7: Balancing Chemical Equations - *CK-12 License*
    - 3.8: Mole-to-Mole Stoichiometry - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 3.9: Gram-to-Gram Stoichiometry - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 3.10: Limiting Reactant - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 3.11: Theoretical Yield and Percent Yield - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 3.12: Enthalpy Change is a Measure of the Heat Evolved or Absorbed - *CK-12 License*
  - 4: Module 4 - Gases and Liquids - *Undeclared*
    - 4.1: Pressure - The Result of Constant Molecular Collisions - *CK-12 License*
    - 4.2: Boyle’s Law - Pressure and Volume - *CK-12 License*
    - 4.3: Charles’s Law- Volume and Temperature - *CK-12 License*
    - 4.4: Gay-Lussac's Law- Temperature and Pressure - *CK-12 License*
    - 4.5: Avogadro’s Law- Volume and Moles - *CK-12 License*
    - 4.6: The Ideal Gas Law- Pressure, Volume, Temperature, and Moles - *CK-12 License*
    - 4.7: Dalton's Law of Partial Pressure - *CK-12 License*
    - 4.8: Intermolecular Forces - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 4.9: Properties of Liquids - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 4.10: Phase Transitions - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 4.11: Phase Diagrams - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 4.12: Water - A Remarkable Molecule - *CK-12 License*
  - 5: Module 5 - Solution Chemistry - *Undeclared*
    - 5.1: Solutions - Homogeneous Mixtures - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 5.2: Specifying Solution Concentration- Mass Percent - *CK-12 License*
    - 5.3: Specifying Solution Concentration- Molarity - *CK-12 License*
    - 5.4: Solution Dilution - *CC BY-SA 4.0*
    - 5.5: Solution Stoichiometry - *CC BY-SA 4.0*
    - 5.6: Electrolytes - *Undeclared*
    - 5.7: Molecular Definitions of Acids and Bases - *CK-12 License*
    - 5.8: Acids- Properties and Examples - *CK-12 License*
    - 5.9: Bases- Properties and Examples - *CK-12 License*
    - 5.10: Strong and Weak Acids and Bases - *CK-12 License*
    - 5.11: Conjugate Acids and Bases - *CK-12 License*
    - 5.12: Reactions of Acids and Bases - *Public Domain*
    - 5.13: Acid–Base Titration - *CK-12 License*
    - 5.14: Water - Acid and Base in One - *CK-12 License*
    - 5.15: The pH and pOH Scales - Ways to Express Acidity and Basicity - *CK-12 License*
    - 5.16: Buffers- Solutions that Resist pH Change - *CK-12 License*
  - Back Matter - *Undeclared*
    - Index - *Undeclared*
    - Glossary - *Undeclared*
    - Detailed Licensing - *Undeclared*
    - Detailed Licensing - *Undeclared*

Detailed Licensing

Overview

Title: Bellingham Technical College CHEM 121

Webpages: 92

Applicable Restrictions: Noncommercial

All licenses found:

- CK-12 License: 59.8% (55 pages)
- Undeclared: 18.5% (17 pages)
- CC BY-NC-SA 3.0: 10.9% (10 pages)
- CC BY 4.0: 4.3% (4 pages)
- Unknown License: 3.3% (3 pages)
- CC BY-SA 4.0: 2.2% (2 pages)
- Public Domain: 1.1% (1 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)

By Page

- Bellingham Technical College CHEM 121 - *Undeclared*
    - Front Matter - *Undeclared*
        - TitlePage - *Undeclared*
        - InfoPage - *Undeclared*
        - Table of Contents - *Undeclared*
        - Licensing - *Undeclared*
    - 1: Module 1 - Matter and Measurement - *Undeclared*
        - 1.1: Chemistry- The Study of Matter - *CK-12 License*
        - 1.2: Classifying Matter According to Its State—Solid, Liquid, and Gas - *CK-12 License*
        - 1.3: Classifying Matter According to Its Composition - *CK-12 License*
        - 1.4: Differences in Matter- Physical and Chemical Properties - *CK-12 License*
        - 1.5: Changes in Matter - Physical and Chemical Changes - *CK-12 License*
        - 1.6: Conservation of Mass - There is No New Matter - *CK-12 License*
        - 1.7: Element Symbols and Chemical Formulas - *CK-12 License*
        - 1.8: Looking for Patterns - The Periodic Table - *CK-12 License*
        - 1.9: Energy - *CK-12 License*
        - 1.10: Scientific Notation - Writing Large and Small Numbers - *CK-12 License*
        - 1.11: Significant Figures - Writing Numbers to Reflect Precision - *CK-12 License*
        - 1.12: Significant Figures in Calculations - *CK-12 License*
        - 1.13: The Basic Units of Measurement - *CK-12 License*
        - 1.14: Problem Solving and Unit Conversions - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
        - 1.15: Solving Multi-step Conversion Problems - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
        - 1.16: Units Raised to a Power - *CK-12 License*
        - 1.17: Density - *CK-12 License*
    - 2: Module 2 - Atoms and Bonding - *Undeclared*
        - 2.1: Indivisible - The Atomic Theory - *CK-12 License*
        - 2.2: The Nuclear Atom - *CK-12 License*
        - 2.3: The Properties of Protons, Neutrons, and Electrons - *CK-12 License*
        - 2.4: Elements- Defined by Their Number of Protons - *CK-12 License*
        - 2.5: Ions - Losing and Gaining Electrons - *CK-12 License*
        - 2.6: Isotopes - When the Number of Neutrons Varies - *CK-12 License*
        - 2.7: Atomic Mass - The Average Mass of an Element's Atoms - *CK-12 License*
        - 2.8: The Bohr Model - Atoms with Orbits - *CK-12 License*
        - 2.9: Quantum-Mechanical Orbitals and Electron Configurations - *CK-12 License*
        - 2.10: Electron Configurations and the Periodic Table - *CK-12 License*
        - 2.11: Representing Valence Electrons with Dots - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
        - 2.12: Lewis Structures of Ionic Compounds- Electrons Transferred - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
        - 2.13: Covalent Lewis Structures- Electrons Shared - *Unknown License*